

Understanding

PURE MATHEMATICS

A.J. Sadler D.W.S. Thorning

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{r=0}^n 2^{-r} = 2$$

$$\sum_{r=0}^{\infty} 2^{-r} = 1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{16} + \frac{1}{32} + \frac{1}{64} + \dots$$

OXFORD

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford OX2 6DP

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide in

Oxford New York

Auckland Bangkok Buenos Aires Cape Town Chennai
Dar es Salaam Delhi Hong Kong Istanbul Karachi Kolkata
Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Mumbai Nairobi
São Paulo Shanghai Taipei Tokyo Toronto

Oxford is a registered trade mark of Oxford University Press
in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 1987

First published 1987

Reprinted 1988, 1989, 1990 (twice), 1991, 1992, 1993, 1994, 1995,
1996 (twice), 1998, 1999 (twice), 2001, 2002 (twice), 2003, 2004

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data

Sadler, A.J.

Understanding pure mathematics.

I. Mathematics—Examinations, questions, etc.

I. Title II. Thorning, D.W.S.

510'.76 QA43

ISBN 0-19-914243-2 School Edition

ISBN 0-19-914259-9 Trade Edition

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press. Within the U.K., exceptions are allowed in respect of any fair dealing for the purpose of research or private study, or criticism or review, as permitted under the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act, 1988, or in the case of reprographic reproduction in accordance with the terms of licences issued by the Copyright Licensing Agency. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside these terms and in other countries should be sent to the Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above.

Printed by Bell & Bain Ltd., Glasgow

Contents

Introductory work

- [The number line](#) 1
- [Inequalities](#) 2
- [Basic algebraic manipulation](#) 5
- [Surd](#) 8
- [Quadratics](#) 10
- [Trigonometric ratios of acute and obtuse angles](#) 13
- [Solution of triangles](#) 16
- [Three-dimensional trigonometry](#) 22

1 Functions

- [Basic concepts](#) 29
- [Composite functions](#) 34
- [The inverse of a function](#) 34
- [Ordered pairs](#) 38
- [The graph of a function](#) 39
- [Some further considerations](#) 43

2 Vectors

- [Basic concepts](#) 47
- [Position vectors and unit vectors](#) 52
- [The scalar product](#) 58
- [Geometrical proofs by vector methods](#) 63
- [The vector equation of a straight line](#) 65

3 Coordinate geometry I

- [Loci](#) 71
- [Distance between two points](#) 72
- [Mid-point of a line joining two points](#) 74
- [Gradient of a line joining two points](#) 77
- [Parallel and perpendicular lines](#) 79
- [The equation \$y = mx + c\$](#) 81
- [Finding the cartesian equation of a straight line](#) 87
- [Relationships shown as linear graphs](#) 89
- [Intersection of lines](#) 94

4 Trigonometry I

- [Trigonometric ratios of any angle](#) 99
- [Trigonometric graphs](#) 101
- [Graph sketching](#) 106
- [Solving trigonometric equations](#) 110

- [Pythagorean relationships](#) 114
- [Secant, cosecant and cotangent](#) 115
- [Compound angles](#) 118
- [Circular measure](#) 124

5 Algebra I

- [Indices](#) 131
- [Variation](#) 133
- [Elementary theory of logarithms](#) 136
- [Quadratics](#) 141
- [Polynomials in general](#) 152

6 Matrices

- [Basic concepts](#) 159
- [Transformations](#) 163
- [Further considerations](#) 170
- [General reflections and rotations](#) 178

7 Permutations and combinations

- [Successive operations](#) 188
- [Permutations](#) 189
- [Combinations](#) 198
- [Selections of any size from a group](#) 203
- [Division into groups](#) 204

8 Series and the binomial theorem

- [Arithmetic progressions](#) 208
- [Geometric progressions](#) 212
- [Summation of other series and proof by induction](#) 217
- [The binomial theorem for a positive integral index](#) 222
- [The binomial theorem for any rational index](#) 228

9 Probability

- [Simple probability](#) 235
- [Sum and product laws](#) 238
- [Further conditional probability](#) 246
- [Probability involving permutations and combinations](#) 247

10 Calculus I: differentiation

- [The gradient of a curve](#) 255
- [Differentiation of \$ax^n\$](#) 258
- [Maximum, minimum and points of inflexion](#) 262
- [Small changes](#) 269
- [More about points of inflexion](#) 272

11 Sketching functions I

- [General methods](#) 275
- [Further considerations](#) 282
- [Simple transformations](#) 284
- $\frac{1}{f(x)}$ 288

12 Calculus II: integration

- [The reverse of differentiation](#) 293
- [The area under a curve](#) 298
- [Volume of revolution](#) 305
- [Two applications](#) 308
- [Mean value of a function](#) 312

13 Calculus III: further techniques

- [Function of a function](#) 317
- [Integration of \$f'\(x\)/f\(x\)^n\$](#) 320
- [Related rates of change](#) 322
- [Parameters](#) 325
- [Product rule](#) 328
- [Quotient rule](#) 329
- [Implicit functions](#) 331

14 Sketching functions II

- [Rational functions](#) 335
- [Inequalities](#) 344

15 Trigonometry II

- [Sum and product formulae](#) 351
- $a \cos x \pm b \sin x$ 353
- [Inverse trigonometric functions](#) 356
- [General solutions](#) 361
- [Small angles](#) 365
- [Differentiation of trigonometric functions](#) 367
- [Integration of trigonometric functions](#) 371
- [Differentiation of inverse trigonometric functions](#) 374

16 Coordinate geometry II

- [Angle between two straight lines](#) 380
- [Distance of a point from a line](#) 382
- [The circle](#) 385
- [The parabola](#) 392
- [The ellipse and the hyperbola](#) 396
- [Polar coordinates](#) 401

17 Three-dimensional work: vectors and matrices

- [Three-dimensional work](#) 409
- [Differentiation and integration of vectors](#) 413
- [Equations of a straight line in 3-D](#) 415
- [Equations of a plane](#) 423
- [3 × 3 matrices](#) 433
- [Sets of linear equations](#) 439

18 Algebra II

- [Partial fractions](#) 451
- [Partial fractions and series](#) 455
- [Complex numbers](#) 460

19 Exponential and logarithmic functions

- [Differentiating the exponential function](#) 477
- [The logarithmic function](#) 481
- [The exponential series](#) 489
- [The logarithmic series](#) 490

20 Calculus IV: further integration

- [Change of variable](#) 496
- [Integration by parts](#) 502
- [General methods](#) 506
- [Differential equations](#) 509

21 Numerical methods

- [The trapezium rule](#) 524
- [Simpson's rule](#) 525
- [Taylor's theorem](#) 527
- [Maclaurin's theorem](#) 528
- [Solution of equations](#) 529
- e^z , $\cos z$ and $\sin z$ for complex z 535

Answers 540**Index** 600

Introductory work

0.1 The number line



When we first learn to count, we use the numbers, 1, 2, 3, 4, ... These counting numbers form the set of **natural numbers** or **positive integers**, Z^+ .

$$Z^+ = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, \dots\}$$

As our use of number progresses, we need to extend this set backwards to include zero and negative numbers. This gives us the set of all integers Z .

$$Z = \{\dots -4, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots\}$$

This set of integers is sufficient for many purposes, but we soon need to introduce fractions. Any number that can be expressed in the form a/b , where a and b can take any integer value except $b = 0$, is called a **rational number**. All the integers are rational as they can be expressed in the form $a/1$. If we extend our set of integers Z to include all rational numbers, we have the set of rational numbers Q .

There is still one group of numbers on our number line that is not included in the set Q . This is the group of numbers that cannot be expressed in the form a/b for integer a and b : these are said to be the **irrational numbers**. One example of an irrational number is $\sqrt{2}$.

To prove that $\sqrt{2}$ is irrational we use the method of **proof by contradiction**, i.e. we assume that what we are trying to prove is not true and then show that this assumption leads to a contradiction.

We initially assume that $\sqrt{2}$ can be written as a fraction a/b in its simplest form (i.e. all cancelling carried out), where a and b are integers.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Suppose that } \sqrt{2} &= \frac{a}{b} \text{ then } 2 = \frac{a^2}{b^2} \\ \text{or } a^2 &= 2b^2 \dots [1]\end{aligned}$$

This means that a^2 is even and so a must be even.

Because a is even, we can write $a = 2c$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Substituting for } a \text{ in [1] gives } (2c)^2 &= 2b^2 \\ 4c^2 &= 2b^2 \\ \therefore 2c^2 &= b^2 \text{ and so } b \text{ must be even.}\end{aligned}$$

Now we have a contradiction because if both a and b are even, the fraction

a/b was not in its simplest form. Thus $\sqrt{2}$ cannot be written in the form a/b and so $\sqrt{2}$ is irrational.

The set of rational numbers \mathbb{Q} together with the set of irrational numbers form the set of **real numbers** \mathbb{R} and complete the number line.

Note: If we express numbers as decimals, a rational number will either have a finite number of decimal places or will recur. An irrational number will have an infinite number of decimal places without recurring.

0.2 Inequalities

The reader should be familiar with the notation $a > b$ and $a \geq b$ standing for 'a is greater than b' and 'a is greater than or equal to b' and with the notation $a < b$ and $a \leq b$ standing for 'a is less than b' and 'a is less than or equal to b'.

If we wish to consider a section of the number line, we can define that section by using set notation and the inequality symbols.

The section  can be written

$\{x \in \mathbb{R} : -3 \leq x \leq 4\}$ and this is read as 'the set of all real x such that x is greater than or equal to -3 and less than or equal to 4 '.

$\{x \in \mathbb{R} : -3 \leq x \leq 4\}$ can also be written $\{x : x \in \mathbb{R}, -3 \leq x \leq 4\}$

If we do not wish to include the integer -3 in our set, we would write $\{x \in \mathbb{R} : -3 < x \leq 4\}$.

This would be illustrated as follows:



The open circle indicates that -3 is not included in the section.

If we only want to consider the integer values from -3 to $+4$, we would write this as $\{x \in \mathbb{Z} : -3 \leq x \leq 4\}$ and the set could be listed: $\{-3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4\}$.

The notation $\{x : x \text{ obeys some rule}\}$ can also be used for a set with one or more elements missing. For example, the set of all real numbers except the number 1 would be written $\{x \in \mathbb{R} : x \neq 1\}$. In a similar way $\{x \in \mathbb{Z} : x \neq 0, x \neq 1\} = \{\dots, -5, -4, -3, -2, -1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 \dots\}$

Note: The set $\{x \in \mathbb{R} : x < a\}$ is sometimes written $\{x : x < a\}$ or simply as $x < a$. In such cases it should be assumed that the inequalities are for real x .

Inequalities can be simplified using a method similar to that used to solve equations. However, simplifying an inequality will give a range of possible values for the unknown rather than a finite number of solutions.

Example 1

Simplify the following inequality $6x - 3 \leq 21 - 2x$.

$$\begin{aligned} & 6x - 3 \leq 21 - 2x \\ \text{Re-arranging gives } & 6x + 2x \leq 21 + 3 \\ & \therefore 8x \leq 24 \\ \text{so } & x \leq 3 \end{aligned}$$

The answer may be left in this form or it can be expressed as the solution set $\{x \in \mathbb{R} : x \leq 3\}$ or diagrammatically:



One important difference between the techniques used to simplify inequalities and those used when solving equations arises when we multiply or divide the inequality by a negative number. In such cases we must reverse the inequality sign.

Consider the true statements $4 > 3$, $3 > -2$, $-4 < -2$. If we multiply each statement by -1 and reverse the inequality sign, we obtain the statements $-4 < -3$, $-3 < 2$, $4 > 2$ which are also true. (The reader should verify that the statements obtained by multiplying by -1 and not reversing the inequality signs are not true).

Example 2

Simplify the following inequalities and illustrate the solutions with a diagram: (a) $8 - 2x \leq 3$, (b) $-5 < 2x + 3 \leq 7$.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{(a) } 8 - 2x \leq 3 & \text{(b) } -5 < 2x + 3 \leq 7 \\ -2x \leq 3 - 8 & -5 < 2x + 3 \quad \text{and} \quad 2x + 3 \leq 7 \\ -2x \leq -5 & -5 - 3 < 2x \quad \quad \quad 2x \leq 7 - 3 \\ 2x \geq 5 & -8 < 2x \quad \quad \quad 2x \leq 4 \\ x \geq 2\frac{1}{2} & -4 < x \quad \quad \quad \text{and} \quad x \leq 2 \\ & \text{i.e. } -4 < x \leq 2 \end{array}$$

**The modulus sign**

We write $|x|$ to mean the magnitude or modulus of x , i.e. we are only interested in the size of x and can disregard its sign.

So $|-7| = 7$; $|-3| = 3$; $|2| = 2$ etc.

This enables us to write inequalities of the type $-1 < x < 1$ as $|x| < 1$
or $-3 \leq x \leq 3$ as $|x| \leq 3$ etc.

Notice that $|x| < a$ means that x must lie between $+a$ and $-a$,

i.e. $x > -a$ and $x < a$

whereas $|x| > a$ means that x must either be greater than $+a$ or less than $-a$, i.e. $x > a$ or $x < -a$

Example 3Express the following as inequalities of x and illustrate the solutions with a diagram:

(a) $|2x - 3| \leq 7$, (b) $|3x + 1| > 8$.

(a) $|2x - 3| \leq 7$

$2x - 3 \geq -7$ and $2x - 3 \leq 7$

$2x \geq -4$ and $2x \leq 10$

$x \geq -2$ and $x \leq 5$

So $-2 \leq x \leq 5$



(b) $|3x + 1| > 8$

$3x + 1 < -8$ or $3x + 1 > 8$

$3x < -9$ or $3x > 7$

$x < -3$ or $x > \frac{7}{3}$

Notice that we do *not* combine the *two* ranges of part (b) in the form $-3 > x > \frac{7}{3}$.**Exercise A**

1. State whether each of the following statements are true or false.

(a) $4 > 5$ (b) $5 < 2$ (c) $3 > 1$ (d) $2 < 5$

(e) $-3 > -2$ (f) $-3 < -2$ (g) $2 > -2$ (h) $-4 < -5$

(i) $\{x \in \mathbb{Z}^+ : x \neq 2, x \neq 3\} = \{1, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, \dots\}$

(j) $\{x \in \mathbb{Z} : x \neq 2\} = \{\dots, -4, -3, -2, -1, 0, 3, 4, \dots\}$

(k) $\{x \in \mathbb{Z} : -1 \leq x \leq 2\} = \{-1, 0, 1, 2\}$

(l) $\{x \in \mathbb{Z} : -3 < x \leq 4\} = \{-3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4\}$

(m) $\{x \in \mathbb{Z} : -2 < x \leq 5\} = \{-1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$

(n) $\{x \in \mathbb{R} : -2 < x \leq 5\} = \{-1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$

(o) $\{x \in \mathbb{Z} : x \leq 2\} = \{x \in \mathbb{Z} : x < 3\}$

(p) $\{x \in \mathbb{R} : x \leq 2\} = \{x \in \mathbb{R} : x < 3\}$

2. List the elements of the following sets:

(a) $\{x \in \mathbb{Z} : -2 < x < 4\}$ (b) $\{x \in \mathbb{Z} : -2 \leq x \leq 4\}$

(c) $\{x \in \mathbb{Z} : -3 \leq x < 2\}$ (d) $\{x \in \mathbb{Z} : -3 < x \leq 2\}$

(e) $\{x \in \mathbb{Z}^+ : x < 5\}$ (f) $\{x \in \mathbb{Z}^+ : x \leq 5\}$

3. Give the following sets of numbers in the form $\{x \in \text{a set of numbers} : x \text{ satisfies some inequality}\}$.

(a) $\{-3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2\}$

(b) $\{-5, -4, -3, -2, -1\}$

(c) $\{\dots, -4, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1\}$

4. Simplify each of the following inequalities and draw a diagram for each solution set for $x \in \mathbb{R}$.

(a) $2x \leq 6$ (b) $2x + 1 < 5$ (c) $3x - 1 \geq 11$

(d) $4 - x < 6$ (e) $4 - 3x > 7$ (f) $2x - 4 \geq -1$

(g) $5x - 3 \leq 11 - 2x$ (h) $2x + 1 > 3x - 4$ (i) $-5 \leq 2x - 3 \leq 7$

- (j) $-7 \leq 3x + 2 \leq 5$ (k) $1 < 2x + 7 < 11$ (l) $1 < 7x + 15 < 36$
 (m) $4 \leq 2 - x < 7$ (n) $-9 < 3 - 2x \leq 1$

5. Find the solution sets of the following inequalities:

- (a) $|x - 2| \leq 5$ (b) $|2x - 1| \leq 5$ (c) $|2x - 5| > 7$
 (d) $|4x - 1| < 15$ (e) $|5x - 1| \geq 4$ (f) $|3x - 1| > 5$

0.3 Basic algebraic manipulation

The following examples and Exercise B are intended to revise basic algebraic processes. The ability to manipulate algebraic expressions correctly is an essential skill for advanced mathematics.

Example 4

Simplify the following:

(a) $12x + 3y - 4x$ (b) $2cd^2 - 5cd^2 + 6d^2c + 4c^2d$

(a) $12x + 3y - 4x = 8x + 3y$ (b) $2cd^2 - 5cd^2 + 6d^2c + 4c^2d = 3cd^2 + 4c^2d$

Example 5

Expand the following and simplify where possible:

(a) $5x(x - 7)$ (b) $14(x - 3) - 5(x - 9)$ (c) $(3x - 2)(5x + 3)$

(d) $(2x + 3)^2$ (e) $3x(x^2 + 4x - 2) - 3(x^2 - 5x)$

(a) $5x(x - 7) = 5x^2 - 35x$ (b) $14(x - 3) - 5(x - 9) = 14x - 42 - 5x + 45 = 9x + 3$ (c) $(3x - 2)(5x + 3) = 15x^2 + 9x - 10x - 6 = 15x^2 - x - 6$

(d) $(2x + 3)^2 = (2x + 3)(2x + 3) = (2x + 3)(4x^2 + 12x + 9) = 8x^3 + 24x^2 + 18x + 12x^2 + 36x + 27 = 8x^3 + 36x^2 + 54x + 27$ (e) $3x(x^2 + 4x - 2) - 3(x^2 - 5x) = 3x^3 + 12x^2 - 6x - 3x^2 + 15x = 3x^3 + 9x^2 + 9x$

Example 6

Factorise the following:

(a) $12x^2 + 8xy$ (b) $x^2 + 2x - 24$ (c) $2x^2 - x - 6$ (d) $4x^3 - 9x$

(e) $3a + 6 + xa + 2x$

(a) $12x^2 + 8xy = 4x(3x + 2y)$ (b) $x^2 + 2x - 24 = (x - 4)(x + 6)$ (c) $2x^2 - x - 6 = (2x + 3)(x - 2)$

(d) $4x^3 - 9x = x(4x^2 - 9) = x(2x - 3)(2x + 3)$ (e) $3a + 6 + xa + 2x = 3(a + 2) + x(a + 2) = (a + 2)(3 + x)$

Example 7Divide $2x^3 - 11x + 6$ by $(x - 2)$ **METHOD 1**

$$\begin{array}{r}
 2x^2 + 4x - 3 \\
 x - 2 \overline{) 2x^3 - 11x + 6} \\
 \underline{2x^3 - 4x^2} \\
 4x^2 - 11x \\
 \underline{4x^2 - 8x} \\
 -3x + 6 \\
 \underline{-3x + 6} \\
 0
 \end{array}$$

The quotient is $2x^2 + 4x - 3$ **METHOD 2**

$$\begin{aligned}
 \frac{2x^3 - 11x + 6}{x - 2} &= \frac{2x^2(x - 2) + 4x^2 - 11x + 6}{x - 2} \\
 &= \frac{2x^2(x - 2)}{x - 2} + \frac{4x^2 - 11x + 6}{x - 2} \\
 &= \frac{2x^2(x - 2)}{x - 2} + \frac{4x(x - 2) - 3x + 6}{x - 2} \\
 &= \frac{2x^2(x - 2)}{x - 2} + \frac{4x(x - 2) - 3(x - 2)}{x - 2} \\
 &= 2x^2 + 4x - 3
 \end{aligned}$$

The quotient is $2x^2 + 4x - 3$ **Example 8**Find the remainder when $x^2 + 3x$ is divided by $x^2 + x - 12$ **METHOD 1**

$$\begin{array}{r}
 1 \\
 x^2 + x - 12 \overline{) x^2 + 3x} \\
 \underline{x^2 + x - 12} \\
 2x + 12
 \end{array}$$

Remainder is $2x + 12$ **METHOD 2**

$$\begin{aligned}
 \frac{x^2 + 3x}{x^2 + x - 12} &= \frac{1(x^2 + x - 12) + 2x + 12}{x^2 + x - 12} \\
 &= 1 + \frac{2x + 12}{x^2 + x - 12}
 \end{aligned}$$

Remainder is $2x + 12$ **Example 9**

Express as single fractions:

(a) $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{2}{(x+3)}$

(b) $\frac{1}{(x+3)^2} - \frac{2}{(x+3)}$

(c) $\frac{(2x+6)}{7} \times \frac{1}{(x^2-9)}$

(d) $\frac{5x^2}{(x^2+6x-7)} \div \frac{x}{(x^2-1)}$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{(a)} \quad & \frac{1}{2} + \frac{2}{(x+3)} \\
 &= \frac{1(x+3) + 2(2)}{2(x+3)} \\
 &= \frac{x+7}{2(x+3)}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{(b)} \quad & \frac{1}{(x+3)^2} - \frac{2}{(x+3)} \\
 &= \frac{1 - 2(x+3)}{(x+3)^2} \\
 &= \frac{1 - 2x - 6}{(x+3)^2} \\
 &= \frac{-2x - 5}{(x+3)^2}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{(c)} \quad & \frac{(2x+6)}{7} \times \frac{1}{(x^2-9)} \\
 &= \frac{2(x+3)}{7} \times \frac{1}{(x+3)(x-3)} \\
 &= \frac{2}{7(x-3)}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{(d)} \quad & \frac{5x^2}{(x^2+6x-7)} \div \frac{x}{(x^2-1)} \\
 &= \frac{5x^2}{(x^2+6x-7)} \times \frac{(x^2-1)}{x} \\
 &= \frac{5x^2}{(x+7)(x-1)} \times \frac{(x+1)(x-1)}{x} \\
 &= \frac{5x(x+1)}{(x+7)}
 \end{aligned}$$

Improper algebraic fractions

When the highest power of x in the numerator is equal to or greater than the highest power of x in the denominator, the fraction is said to be **improper**. These improper fractions can be rearranged into expressions that are not improper by long division (method 1 above) or by algebraic 'juggling' (method 2 above). The following example shows these methods.

Example 10

Rearrange the following into expressions that do not involve improper algebraic fractions.

$$(a) \frac{x^2 + 3}{x^2 - 4x + 5} \quad (b) \frac{x^2 + x - 4}{x + 3}$$

(a) By long division

$$\begin{array}{r} x^2 - 4x + 5 \overline{) x^2 + 3} \\ \underline{x^2 - 4x + 5} \\ 8x - 2 \\ \underline{8x - 4} \\ 2 \end{array}$$

$$\therefore \frac{x^2 + 3}{x^2 - 4x + 5} = 1 + \frac{4x - 2}{x^2 - 4x + 5}$$

(b) By long division

$$\begin{array}{r} x + 3 \overline{) x^2 + x - 4} \\ \underline{x^2 + 3x} \\ -2x - 4 \\ \underline{-2x - 6} \\ 2 \end{array}$$

$$\therefore \frac{x^2 + x - 4}{x + 3} = x - 2 + \frac{2}{x + 3}$$

By algebraic 'juggling'

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{x^2 + 3}{x^2 - 4x + 5} &= \frac{1(x^2 - 4x + 5) + 4x - 2}{x^2 - 4x + 5} \\ &= \frac{1(x^2 - 4x + 5)}{x^2 - 4x + 5} + \frac{4x - 2}{x^2 - 4x + 5} \\ &= 1 + \frac{4x - 2}{x^2 - 4x + 5} \end{aligned}$$

By algebraic 'juggling'

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{x^2 + x - 4}{x + 3} &= \frac{x(x + 3) - 2(x + 3) + 2}{x + 3} \\ &= \frac{x(x + 3)}{x + 3} - \frac{2(x + 3)}{x + 3} + \frac{2}{x + 3} \\ &= x - 2 + \frac{2}{x + 3} \end{aligned}$$

Exercise B

1. Simplify the following:

(a) $2x + 6y + 9x$ (b) $7x - 4x - 8$ (c) $5p^2 + 8p - 3p^2 - 3$
 (d) $x^2y + 2xy^2 + 3x^2y$ (e) $15a^2 - 2ab - 7a^2$

2. Expand the following and simplify where possible:

(a) $3x(x - 4)$ (b) $3(x + 4) - 2(x - 6)$ (c) $5(x + 3) + 4(2x - 3)$
 (d) $2x(y - 3) + y(3x - 4)$ (e) $(x + 3)(x - 5)$ (f) $(2x + 3)(x - 4)$
 (g) $(2x - 3)^2$ (h) $(3x - 1)^2$ (i) $5x(x^2 - 3x - 4) - 2(x + 3)^2$

3. Factorise the following:

(a) $16x^2 + 24xy$ (b) $15x^2 + 10xy + 20x$ (c) $x^2 + 3x - 10$
 (d) $x^4 + 5x - 14$ (e) $2x^2 - 7x - 15$ (f) $6x^2 - x - 2$
 (g) $4x^2 + 4x - 15$ (h) $x^2 - 9$ (i) $16x^2 - 49y^2$
 (j) $2x^3 - 18x$ (k) $ax + 3x + 2a + 6$ (l) $xa - 2xb + ya - 2yb$

4. Divide:

- (a) $x^3 + 2x^2 - x - 2$ by $(x - 1)$ (b) $2x^3 + 9x^2 - 4x - 21$ by $(2x - 3)$
 (c) $x^4 + x^3 + 7x - 3$ by $(x^2 - x + 3)$ (d) $6x^4 + 14x^3 - 9x^2 - 7x + 3$ by $(2x^2 - 1)$

5. Find the remainder when:

- (a) $3x^2 + 13x - 1$ is divided by $x^2 + 4$
 (b) $x^3 + 2x^2 - 6x - 5$ is divided by $x^2 + 4x + 1$
 (c) $x^4 + 2x^3 + 10x^2 + 13x + 11$ is divided by $x^3 + x^2 + x + 1$
 (d) $2x^5 - x^4 - 11x^3 - 15x + 5$ is divided by $2x + 5$

6. Express as single fractions:

- (a) $\frac{x}{4} + \frac{2x}{3}$ (b) $\frac{x}{5} + \frac{x-1}{3}$ (c) $\frac{2x-1}{3} - \frac{x-4}{2}$
 (d) $\frac{1}{3} + \frac{2}{x+1}$ (e) $\frac{5}{2x+3} - \frac{1}{4}$ (f) $\frac{1}{(x+2)^2} - \frac{3}{(x+2)}$
 (g) $\frac{3}{x} - \frac{2}{x+4}$ (h) $\frac{1}{2(x+4)} + \frac{3}{(x+4)^2} + \frac{1}{2}$ (i) $\frac{1}{2(x+4)} - \frac{3x}{(x+4)^2} + \frac{1}{2}$
 (j) $\frac{4x}{3} \div \frac{2x}{7}$ (k) $\frac{2(x+4)}{5} \times \frac{1}{(x^2-16)}$ (l) $\frac{5x-20}{3x} \times \frac{1}{2x-8}$
 (m) $\frac{3}{2x-8} + \frac{1}{x-4} + \frac{3}{2x}$ (n) $\frac{3}{x} - \frac{2}{x(x-1)}$ (o) $\left(\frac{2}{x+4} - \frac{3}{x}\right) \div \frac{x}{x^2-16}$

7. Using the method of long division (see Example 10), rearrange the following into expressions that do not involve improper algebraic fractions:

- (a) $\frac{x^2 + 6x - 2}{x^2 + 4x + 1}$ (b) $\frac{2x^2 + 5}{x^2 + 1}$ (c) $\frac{5x^2 + 2x - 11}{x^2 + x - 2}$ (d) $\frac{x^3 - 5x^2 + 9x - 7}{x^2 - 2x + 3}$

8. Using the method of algebraic 'juggling' (see Example 10), rearrange the following into expressions that do not involve improper algebraic fractions:

- (a) $\frac{x^2 + 3x + 3}{x^2 + 4}$ (b) $\frac{x+2}{x+5}$ (c) $\frac{2x^2 - 4x + 11}{x^2 - 2x + 8}$
 (d) $\frac{4x+1}{2x+3}$ (e) $\frac{x^3 + x^2 + 3x + 5}{x^2 + 3}$ (f) $\frac{x^2 - 2x - 1}{x+1}$
 (g) $\frac{x^3 + 3x^2 - 5x - 4}{x^2 + 2x - 4}$ (h) $\frac{x^4 + x^3 + 5x^2 + 10x - 14}{x^3 + 7}$

0.4 Surds

$\sqrt{25} = 5$, $\sqrt[3]{8} = 2$ and $\sqrt{121} = 11$: these are expressions which can be evaluated exactly.

Surds are such expressions as $\sqrt{7}$, $\sqrt[3]{42}$, $\sqrt{110}$ which cannot be evaluated exactly. They are **irrational**.

Surds often arise in calculations. For example, using Pythagoras' theorem to find the hypotenuse of a right-angled triangle with its other sides 5 and 6 cm:

$$\begin{aligned}(\text{hypotenuse})^2 &= 5^2 + 6^2 \\ &= 25 + 36 \\ \text{hypotenuse} &= \sqrt{61} \text{ cm}\end{aligned}$$



This is an exact answer and it is often preferable to leave an answer in this form, rather than to give a decimal approximation such as 7.8102 ...

Expressions involving surds can often be simplified. The following rules apply:

$$(i) \sqrt{a} \times \sqrt{b} = \sqrt{ab} \quad \text{e.g. } \sqrt{5} \times \sqrt{2} = \sqrt{10}$$

$$(ii) \sqrt{a} \div \sqrt{b} = \sqrt{\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)} \quad \text{e.g. } \sqrt{5} \div \sqrt{2} = \sqrt{\left(\frac{5}{2}\right)}$$

$$(iii) a\sqrt{c} \pm b\sqrt{c} = (a \pm b)\sqrt{c} \quad \text{e.g. } 3\sqrt{2} + 4\sqrt{2} = 7\sqrt{2} \\ \text{and } 3\sqrt{2} - 4\sqrt{2} = -\sqrt{2}$$

It must be carefully noted that

$$\sqrt{a} \pm \sqrt{b} \neq \sqrt{a \pm b} \text{ for non-zero } a \text{ and } b \\ \text{e.g. } \sqrt{16} + \sqrt{9} \neq \sqrt{25}, \text{ and } \sqrt{16} - \sqrt{9} \neq \sqrt{7}.$$

Example 11

Simplify each of the following and hence show that all three expressions are equal:

$$(a) \frac{\sqrt{18}}{3} \quad (b) 3\sqrt{2} - \sqrt{8} \quad (c) \frac{\sqrt{6}}{\sqrt{3}}$$

$$\begin{array}{lll} (a) \quad \frac{\sqrt{18}}{3} & (b) \quad 3\sqrt{2} - \sqrt{8} & (c) \quad \frac{\sqrt{6}}{\sqrt{3}} \\ = \frac{\sqrt{9} \times \sqrt{2}}{3} & = 3\sqrt{2} - \sqrt{4}\sqrt{2} & = \frac{\sqrt{3}\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{3}} \\ = \frac{3\sqrt{2}}{3} & = 3\sqrt{2} - 2\sqrt{2} & = \sqrt{2} \\ = \sqrt{2} & = \sqrt{2} & \end{array}$$

When fractions are involved with surds, it is normal practice to eliminate the surds from the denominator; this is called rationalising the denominator (i.e. clearing it of irrational numbers.)

For expressions of the type $\frac{1}{\sqrt{a}}$,

we multiply the top and bottom by \sqrt{a} , giving $\frac{1}{\sqrt{a}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{a}} \times \frac{\sqrt{a}}{\sqrt{a}} = \frac{\sqrt{a}}{a}$

and for expressions of the type $\frac{1}{b + \sqrt{a}}$

we multiply the top and bottom by $(b - \sqrt{a})$, giving $\frac{1}{b + \sqrt{a}} = \frac{1}{b + \sqrt{a}} \times \frac{b - \sqrt{a}}{b - \sqrt{a}} = \frac{b - \sqrt{a}}{b^2 - a}$

Example 12Rationalise the denominators of the following fractions (a) $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ (b) $\frac{10}{\sqrt{3}-1}$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(a)} \quad \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \times \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{2}} \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(b)} \quad \frac{10}{\sqrt{3}-1} &= \frac{10}{(\sqrt{3}-1)} \times \frac{(\sqrt{3}+1)}{(\sqrt{3}+1)} \\ &= \frac{10(\sqrt{3}+1)}{3-1} \\ &= 5(\sqrt{3}+1). \end{aligned}$$

Exercise C

1. Simplify the following:

(a) $5\sqrt{3} - 3\sqrt{3}$

(b) $\sqrt{12} + 5\sqrt{3}$

(c) $\sqrt{200} + 7\sqrt{2} - \sqrt{72}$

(d) $6\sqrt{3} - \sqrt{12} + \sqrt{48}$

(e) $\sqrt{45} + \sqrt{20} - \sqrt{80}$

(f) $(\sqrt{3} + \sqrt{2})(\sqrt{3} - \sqrt{2})$

(g) $(2\sqrt{5} + \sqrt{7})(2\sqrt{5} - \sqrt{7})$

(h) $(2\sqrt{3} - 3\sqrt{2})(2\sqrt{3} + 3\sqrt{2})$

2. In each of the following state the 'odd one out':

(a) $3\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{12}, \sqrt{18}$

(b) $4\sqrt{3}, \sqrt{48}, \sqrt{12}$

(c) $\sqrt{20}, 2\sqrt{3}, \sqrt{12}$

(d) $\sqrt{20}, 2\sqrt{5}, \sqrt{18}$

(e) $5\sqrt{2}, 2\sqrt{5}, \sqrt{50}$

(f) $\sqrt{6}, 3\sqrt{6}, \sqrt{2\sqrt{3}}$

(g) $\sqrt{3}, \frac{3}{\sqrt{3}}, \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$

(h) $\sqrt{12}, \frac{6}{\sqrt{2}}, 3\sqrt{2}$

(i) $5\sqrt{2}, \frac{5}{\sqrt{2}}, \frac{10}{\sqrt{2}}$

3. Express each of the following in the form $a + b\sqrt{c}$

(a) $(\sqrt{3} + \sqrt{2})^2$

(b) $(2\sqrt{5} + \sqrt{3})^2$

(c) $(3\sqrt{3} + \sqrt{2})(\sqrt{3} - \sqrt{2})$

4. Rationalise the denominators of the following:

(a) $\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$

(b) $\frac{9}{\sqrt{3}}$

(c) $\frac{16}{3\sqrt{2}}$

(d) $\frac{1}{3-\sqrt{2}}$

(e) $\frac{5}{3-\sqrt{3}}$

(f) $\frac{\sqrt{5} + \sqrt{3}}{\sqrt{5} - \sqrt{3}}$

(g) $\frac{\sqrt{3} + 2}{\sqrt{3} - 2}$

(h) $\frac{2\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{3}}{2\sqrt{2} - \sqrt{3}}$

(i) $\frac{4 - 3\sqrt{2}}{5 - 3\sqrt{2}}$

0.5 QuadraticsEquations of the type $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$, ($a \neq 0$), are called quadratic equations. There are three ways of solving such equations.**1. By factorisation**This method should only be used if $ax^2 + bx + c$ is readily factorised by inspection.**Example 13**Solve: (a) $x^2 + 2x - 24 = 0$ (b) $2x^2 - x - 6 = 0$

(a) $x^2 + 2x - 24 = 0$

$\therefore (x+6)(x-4) = 0$

So, either $x+6 = 0$

or $x-4 = 0$

giving $x = -6$ or $x = 4$

(b) $2x^2 - x - 6 = 0$

$\therefore (2x+3)(x-2) = 0$

So, either $2x+3 = 0$

or $x-2 = 0$

giving $x = -\frac{3}{2}$ or $x = 2$

2. By the formula $x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{(b^2 - 4ac)}}{2a}$

Example 14

Solve $x^2 + 4x - 1 = 0$.

Comparing $x^2 + 4x - 1 = 0$ with the general equation

$$ax^2 + bx + c = 0, \text{ gives } a = 1, b = -4 \text{ and } c = -1.$$

Substituting these values in the formula

$$x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{(b^2 - 4ac)}}{2a}$$

$$\text{gives } x = \frac{4 \pm \sqrt{(16 + 4)}}{2}$$

$$= 2 + \sqrt{5} \text{ or } 2 - \sqrt{5} \text{ (these answers are in surds)}$$

$$= 4.24 \text{ or } -0.24 \text{ (these answers are correct to 2 decimal places)}$$

3. By completing the square

This method uses the expansion $(x + b)^2 = x^2 + 2bx + b^2$.

Notice that the last term, (b^2) , is the square of half the coefficient of x , $(2b)$.

Example 15

Solve $x^2 + 3x - 1 = 0$

$$x^2 + 3x - 1 = 0$$

$$\therefore x^2 + 3x = 1$$

Adding the square of half of the coefficient of x to each side of the equation

$$\text{gives } x^2 + 3x + \left(\frac{3}{2}\right)^2 = 1 + \left(\frac{3}{2}\right)^2$$

$$\text{So } \left(x + \frac{3}{2}\right)^2 = \frac{13}{4}$$

$$\therefore x + \frac{3}{2} = \pm \frac{\sqrt{13}}{2} \text{ giving } x = \frac{\sqrt{13} - 3}{2} \text{ or } \frac{-\sqrt{13} - 3}{2}$$

$$\text{or as decimals } x = 0.30 \text{ or } -3.30 \text{ (correct to 2 d.p.)}$$

The method of completing the square, used to solve $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$, can also be used to find the maximum or minimum value of the expression $ax^2 + bx + c$.

For example, consider the expression $x^2 + 3x + 4$:

$$\begin{aligned} x^2 + 3x + 4 &= x^2 + 3x + \left(\frac{3}{2}\right)^2 - \left(\frac{3}{2}\right)^2 + 4 \\ &= \left(x + \frac{3}{2}\right)^2 + \frac{5}{4} \end{aligned}$$

Now $(x + \frac{3}{2})^2$ cannot be negative for any value of x , i.e. $(x + \frac{3}{2})^2 \geq 0$.

Thus $x^2 + 3x + 4$ is always positive and will have a minimum value of $\frac{5}{4}$

when $x + \frac{3}{2} = 0$, i.e. when $x = -\frac{3}{2}$.

Example 16

Find the maximum value of $5 - 2x - 4x^2$ for $x \in \mathbb{R}$.

$$\begin{aligned} 5 - 2x - 4x^2 &= -4(x^2 + \frac{1}{2}x) + 5 \\ &= -4(x^2 + \frac{1}{2}x + \frac{1}{16}) + \frac{1}{4} + 5 \\ &= -4(x + \frac{1}{4})^2 + \frac{21}{4} \\ &= \frac{21}{4} - 4(x + \frac{1}{4})^2 \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Now } (x + \frac{1}{4})^2 \geq 0.$$

Thus $5 - 2x - 4x^2$ has a maximum value of $\frac{21}{4}$, or $5\frac{1}{4}$, when $x = -\frac{1}{4}$.

Exercise D

1. Solve the following equations by factorisation:

(a) $x^2 - x - 12 = 0$	(b) $x^2 + 5x - 24 = 0$	(c) $x^2 + 36 = 13x$
(d) $2x^2 - x - 6 = 0$	(e) $2x^2 - 7x - 4 = 0$	(f) $3x^2 + 5x - 12 = 0$
(g) $x(x + 5) = 6$	(h) $4x^2 - 9x = -3 - x$	(i) $x(x - 1) - 2(x + 5) = 0$
(j) $x - \frac{24}{x} + 2 = 0$	(k) $3x - 5 = \frac{5x - 3}{x}$	(l) $\frac{x(2x - 1)}{(x + 2)} = 12$

2. Solve the following equations by using the formula $x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{(b^2 - 4ac)}}{2a}$,

giving your answers correct to two decimal places:

(a) $x^2 - 3x + 1 = 0$	(b) $x^2 - x - 4 = 0$	(c) $x^2 + 7x + 5 = 0$
(d) $2x^2 + 3x - 1 = 0$	(e) $3x^2 - 6x + 2 = 0$	(f) $4x^2 - 3x - 2 = 0$

3. Solve the following equations by using the formula $x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{(b^2 - 4ac)}}{2a}$,

leaving your answers in surd form:

(a) $x^2 - 3x + 1 = 0$	(b) $2x^2 - 6x + 1 = 0$	(c) $3x^2 - 6x + 1 = 0$
------------------------	-------------------------	-------------------------

4. Solve the following equations by 'completing the square' (leave your answers in surd form):

(a) $x^2 + 6x - 1 = 0$	(b) $x^2 + 4x - 3 = 0$	(c) $x^2 + x - 1 = 0$
(d) $x^2 - x - 3 = 0$	(e) $x^2 - 3x - 5 = 0$	(f) $2x^2 - 6x + 1 = 0$
(g) $3x^2 - 4x - 2 = 0$	(h) $4x^2 - 6x + 1 = 0$	(i) $3x^2 - 6x - 1 = 0$

Each of the expressions given in questions 5–13 has a maximum or minimum value for $x \in \mathbb{R}$.

Find (a) which it is, maximum or minimum, (b) its value, (c) the value of x for which it occurs.

5. $x^2 + 4x - 3$	6. $x^2 - 6x + 1$	7. $3 - 2x - x^2$
8. $x^2 - 5x + 1$	9. $5 + 2x - x^2$	10. $6 - x^2 + 8x$
11. $2x^2 + 3x + 1$	12. $3x^2 + 2x + 2$	13. $1 - 5x - 2x^2$

14. Use the method of 'completing the square' to show that the solutions of

$$ax^2 + bx + c = 0 \text{ are given by } x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{(b^2 - 4ac)}}{2a}$$

0.6 Trigonometric ratios of acute and obtuse angles

Acute angles

Trigonometric ratios of acute angles are usually defined by using a right-angled triangle. Denoting the sides of the triangle by a , b and c :

$$\sin A = \frac{a}{b} \quad \cos A = \frac{c}{b} \quad \tan A = \frac{a}{c}$$

It follows that $\frac{\sin A}{\cos A} = \frac{a}{b} + \frac{c}{b} = \frac{a}{c} = \tan A$

Also $\sin A = \frac{a}{b} = \cos(90^\circ - A)$ and $\cos A = \frac{c}{b} = \sin(90^\circ - A)$



These are general results and should be remembered:

$$\frac{\sin x}{\cos x} = \tan x \quad \sin x = \cos(90^\circ - x) \quad (\text{i.e. } \sin x = \text{cosine of complement})$$

$$\cos x = \sin(90^\circ - x) \quad (\cos x = \text{sine of complement})$$

Particular angles

30° and 60°

Suppose $\triangle PQR$ is equilateral, with sides 2 units and that PM is the perpendicular bisector of QR .

$QM = 1$ unit

Using Pythagoras' theorem $MP^2 + MQ^2 = PQ^2$
 or $MP = \sqrt{2^2 - 1^2}$
 So $MP = \sqrt{3}$

Since $\triangle PQR$ is equilateral, $\angle PQM = 60^\circ$ and $\angle QPM = 30^\circ$.

From $\triangle PQM$ $\sin 30^\circ = \frac{1}{2}$; $\cos 30^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$; $\tan 30^\circ = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$ or $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}$;
 and $\sin 60^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$; $\cos 60^\circ = \frac{1}{2}$; $\tan 60^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{1} = \sqrt{3}$.



45°

Consider a right-angled triangle which is isosceles and in which the equal sides are 1 unit in length.

The equal angles will each be 45° .

Using Pythagoras' theorem $BC^2 = 1^2 + 1^2$ or $BC = \sqrt{2}$.

Hence $\sin 45^\circ = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ or $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$; $\cos 45^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$; $\tan 45^\circ = \frac{1}{1} = 1$.



Although the trigonometric ratios of 30° , 45° and 60° have all been obtained separately, some of these could have been deduced from others:

to find $\cos 60^\circ$, knowing $\sin 30^\circ$, we could say $\cos 60^\circ = \sin(90^\circ - 60^\circ) = \sin 30^\circ = \frac{1}{2}$.

to find $\tan 30^\circ$, knowing $\sin 30^\circ$ and $\cos 30^\circ$ we could say

$$\tan 30^\circ = \frac{\sin 30^\circ}{\cos 30^\circ} = \frac{\frac{1}{2}}{\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \quad \text{and so on.}$$

0° and 90°

In the $\triangle ABC$, as the angle x decreases so does the length of the side BC . As x approaches 0° , BC approaches zero and AC approaches AB in length, i.e. as x tends to zero (written $x \rightarrow 0$), then $BC \rightarrow 0$ and $AC \rightarrow AB$,

but $\sin x = \frac{BC}{AC}$ and as $x \rightarrow 0$, $BC \rightarrow 0$. Thus $\sin 0^\circ = \frac{0}{AC} = 0$,

also $\cos x = \frac{AB}{AC}$ and as $x \rightarrow 0$, $AC \rightarrow AB$. Thus $\cos 0^\circ = \frac{AB}{AB} = 1$,

and $\tan x = \frac{BC}{AB}$ and as $x \rightarrow 0$, $BC \rightarrow 0$. Thus $\tan 0^\circ = \frac{0}{AB} = 0$.

Similarly, as $x \rightarrow 0^\circ$, so $\angle C \rightarrow 90^\circ$. Thus, considering the trigonometric ratios of $\angle C$ as $x \rightarrow 0^\circ$:

$\sin 90^\circ = \frac{AB}{AB} = 1$, $\cos 90^\circ = \frac{0}{AC} = 0$ and $\tan 90^\circ = \frac{\sin 90^\circ}{\cos 90^\circ} = \frac{1}{0} = \infty$ (infinity).

These results should be memorised:

Angle	sin	cos	tan
0°	0	1	0
30°	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$
45°	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$	1
60°	$\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\sqrt{3}$
90°	1	0	∞

Example 17

Show that $\cos^2 30^\circ + \cos 60^\circ \sin 30^\circ = 1$.

The left-hand side is $\cos^2 30^\circ + \cos 60^\circ \sin 30^\circ$
 $= \cos 30^\circ(\cos 30^\circ) + \cos 60^\circ \sin 30^\circ$
 $= \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \times \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2} = \frac{3}{4} + \frac{1}{4}$
 $= 1$ as required.

Obtuse angles

Trigonometric ratios of obtuse angles cannot be defined by means of a right-angled triangle.

The sine, cosine or tangent of an obtuse angle is the sine, cosine or tangent of the **supplement** of the angle, with the appropriate sign.

If θ is an obtuse angle:

$\sin \theta = +\sin(180^\circ - \theta)$ i.e. sine of the supplementary angle,

$\cos \theta = -\cos(180^\circ - \theta)$ i.e. $-$ cosine of the supplementary angle,

$\tan \theta = -\tan(180^\circ - \theta)$ i.e. $-$ tangent of the supplementary angle.

A full definition of the trigonometric ratios of angles of any size is to be found in section 4.1.



Example 18

Write each of the following as a trigonometric ratio of an acute angle

(a) $\sin 155^\circ$, (b) $\cos 140^\circ$, (c) $\tan 130^\circ$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(a) } \sin 155^\circ &= +\sin(180^\circ - 155^\circ) \\ &= +\sin 25^\circ \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(b) } \cos 140^\circ &= -\cos(180^\circ - 140^\circ) \\ &= -\cos 40^\circ \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(c) } \tan 130^\circ &= -\tan(180^\circ - 130^\circ) \\ &= -\tan 50^\circ \end{aligned}$$

Example 19

If $\sin 35^\circ = 0.5736$ write down the values of (a) $\sin 145^\circ$, (b) $\cos 125^\circ$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{(a) } \sin 145^\circ = +\sin(180^\circ - 145^\circ) & \text{(b) } \cos 125^\circ = -\cos(180^\circ - 125^\circ) \\ = +\sin 35^\circ & = -\cos 55^\circ \\ = +0.5736 & = -\sin 35^\circ \\ & = -0.5736 \end{array}$$

Example 20

Given that $\sin \theta = \frac{7}{25}$ and that θ is an acute angle, find: (a) $\cos \theta$, (b) $\tan \theta$.

First sketch a right-angled triangle containing an angle θ and with two sides of length 7 and 25 units, such that $\sin \theta = \frac{7}{25}$.



Using Pythagoras' theorem, the third side of the triangle = $\sqrt{(25^2 - 7^2)}$
= 24

Since θ is acute, all trigonometric ratios of θ will be positive, hence

$$\text{(a) } \cos \theta = \frac{24}{25} \qquad \text{(b) } \tan \theta = \frac{7}{24}.$$

Example 21

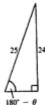
Given that $\sin \theta = \frac{7}{25}$ and that θ is an obtuse angle, find (a) $\cos \theta$, (b) $\tan \theta$.

As θ is obtuse, sketch a right-angled triangle containing an angle $(180^\circ - \theta)$ and with two sides of length 24 and 25 units.

As $\sin \theta$ and $\sin(180^\circ - \theta)$ are numerically equal, $\sin(180^\circ - \theta) = \frac{7}{25}$.

Using Pythagoras' theorem, the third side of the triangle = $\sqrt{(25^2 - 24^2)}$
= 7

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{(a) } \cos \theta = -\cos(180^\circ - \theta) & \text{(b) } \tan \theta = -\tan(180^\circ - \theta) \\ = -\frac{7}{25} & = -\frac{7}{24} \end{array}$$



Exercise E

All the questions in this exercise should be answered *without* the use of a calculator or tables

- Write each of the following as trigonometrical ratios of acute angles:
 - $\sin 130^\circ$
 - $\cos 130^\circ$
 - $\tan 130^\circ$
 - $\sin 140^\circ$
 - $\cos 170^\circ$
 - $\cos 160^\circ$
 - $\tan 100^\circ$
 - $\sin 95^\circ$
- Write down the values of the following, leaving surds in your answers:
 - $\sin 30^\circ$
 - $\cos 30^\circ$
 - $\tan 45^\circ$
 - $\sin 45^\circ$
 - $\tan 60^\circ$
 - $\sin 90^\circ$
 - $\cos 90^\circ$
 - $\sin 150^\circ$
 - $\sin 135^\circ$
 - $\cos 120^\circ$
 - $\sin 180^\circ$
 - $\cos 180^\circ$
 - $\tan 135^\circ$
 - $\cos 150^\circ$
 - $\tan 120^\circ$
 - $\sin 120^\circ$
- Show that:
 - $\sin^2 30^\circ + \sin^2 45^\circ + \sin^2 60^\circ = \frac{3}{2}$
 - $\sin 60^\circ \cos 30^\circ + \cos 60^\circ \sin 30^\circ = 1$
 - $\sin^2 45^\circ + \cos^2 45^\circ = 1$
- If $\sin 20^\circ = 0.342$ write down the values of:
 - $\sin 160^\circ$
 - $\cos 70^\circ$
 - $\cos 110^\circ$
- If $\sin 40^\circ = 0.643$ and $\cos 40^\circ = 0.766$ write down the values of:
 - $\sin 50^\circ$
 - $\cos 50^\circ$
 - $\sin 140^\circ$
 - $\sin 130^\circ$
 - $\cos 140^\circ$
 - $\cos 130^\circ$
- If $\sin A = 0.98$ and $\cos A = 0.2$, find the value of $\tan A$.
- If $\sin B = 0.954$ and $\cos B = 0.3$, find the value of $\tan B$.
- If $\sin \theta = \frac{3}{4}$ and θ is acute, find the value of (a) $\cos \theta$ (b) $\tan \theta$.
- If $\sin \theta = \frac{3}{4}$ and θ is obtuse, find the value of (a) $\cos \theta$ (b) $\tan \theta$.
- If $\sin \theta = \frac{1}{2}$ and θ is obtuse, find the value of (a) $\cos \theta$ (b) $\tan \theta$.
- Find the value of x in each of the following, given that x is acute:
 - $\sin 50^\circ = \cos x$
 - $\cos 30^\circ = \sin x$
 - $\cos(40^\circ + x) = \sin 30^\circ$
 - $\sin(20^\circ + x) = \cos 50^\circ$
 - $\cos(3x - 10^\circ) = \sin 10^\circ$
 - $\cos(2x + 40^\circ) = \sin 40^\circ$

0.7 Solution of triangles**Cosine rule**

Consider $\triangle ABC$ in which CN is the perpendicular from C to BA (produced if necessary—see Case 2). Let the sides of the triangle be a , b and c , the angle CAB be A and $AN = x$, $CN = h$.

Case 1

Using Pythagoras' theorem

$$\triangle CBN \quad a^2 = h^2 + (c - x)^2$$

$$\triangle CAN \quad b^2 = h^2 + x^2$$

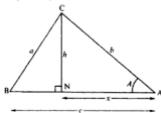
Eliminating h^2

$$a^2 = b^2 - x^2 + (c - x)^2$$

$$\text{So} \quad a^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2cx$$

$$\text{From } \triangle ANC \quad x = b \cos A$$

$$\text{Hence} \quad a^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2bc \cos A$$



Case 2

Using Pythagoras' theorem

$$\triangle CBN \quad a^2 = h^2 + (c + x)^2$$

$$\triangle CAN \quad b^2 = h^2 + x^2$$

 Eliminating h^2

$$a^2 = b^2 - x^2 + (c + x)^2$$

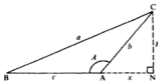
 So $a^2 = b^2 + c^2 + 2cx$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{From } \triangle ANC \quad x &= b \cos(180^\circ - A) \\ &= -b \cos A \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Hence } a^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2bc \cos A$$

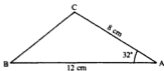
This is the **cosine rule** and it is frequently used to determine a side or angle of a given triangle.

$$a^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2bc \cos A$$


Example 22

Find the length of the side BC in each of the following triangles:

(a)

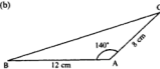


By the cosine rule

$$\begin{aligned} BC^2 &= 12^2 + 8^2 - 2(12)(8) \cos 32^\circ \\ &= 144 + 64 - 192(0.8480) \\ &= 208 - 162.8 \end{aligned}$$

 giving $BC = 6.72$ cm

(b)



By the cosine rule

$$\begin{aligned} BC^2 &= 12^2 + 8^2 - 2(12)(8) \cos 140^\circ \\ &= 144 + 64 - 192(-0.7660) \\ &= 208 + 147.1 \end{aligned}$$

 giving $BC = 18.8$ cm

Example 23

 Find the angle θ in the given triangle.

 By the cosine rule $7^2 = 5^2 + 4^2 - 2(4)(5) \cos \theta$

$$\begin{aligned} \cos \theta &= \frac{25 + 16 - 49}{40} \\ &= -0.2 \end{aligned}$$

We now need to find the angle whose cosine is -0.2 . Since the cosine of the angle is negative, the angle must be obtuse.

Using a calculator, press the inverse cosine button (marked \cos^{-1} or arc cos) to give

$$\cos^{-1}(-0.2) = 101.54^\circ \text{ (correct to 2 d.p.)}$$

Alternatively using tables of cosines, search for 0.2 and read off the appropriate angle ($78^\circ 28'$).

$$\begin{aligned} \text{As } \theta \text{ must be obtuse } \theta &= 180^\circ - 78^\circ 28' \\ &= 101.54^\circ. \end{aligned}$$



Sine rule

Consider the triangle ABC in which the sides are a , b and c and the angles are A , B and C .

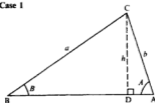
The sine rule states that

$$\frac{a}{\sin A} = \frac{b}{\sin B} = \frac{c}{\sin C}$$



Proof: Let CD be the perpendicular from C to AB (produced if necessary—see Case 2) and let CD = h .

Case 1



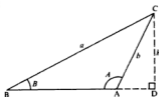
From $\triangle BCD$ $\sin B = \frac{h}{a}$
or $h = a \sin B \dots [1]$

From $\triangle ACD$ $\sin A = \frac{h}{b}$
or $h = b \sin A \dots [2]$

Thus, eliminating h from equations [1] and [2] gives $a \sin B = b \sin A$ or $\frac{a}{\sin A} = \frac{b}{\sin B}$

It can similarly be proved that $\frac{a}{\sin A} = \frac{c}{\sin C}$ hence $\frac{a}{\sin A} = \frac{b}{\sin B} = \frac{c}{\sin C}$.

Case 2



From $\triangle BCD$ $\sin B = \frac{h}{a}$
or $h = a \sin B \dots [1]$

From $\triangle ACD$ $\sin(180^\circ - A) = \frac{h}{b}$
or $h = b \sin(180^\circ - A)$
 $= b \sin A \dots [2]$

Example 24

Find the length of the side BC in the given triangle.

By the sine rule $\frac{BC}{\sin 55^\circ} = \frac{8.3}{\sin 72^\circ}$
So $BC = \frac{8.3 \sin 55^\circ}{\sin 72^\circ}$
 $BC = 7.15 \text{ cm.}$



Example 25

Find the angle x in the given triangle.

By the sine rule $\frac{8}{\sin 70^\circ} = \frac{6}{\sin x}$

So $\sin x = \frac{6 \sin 70^\circ}{8} = 0.7048$



By calculator or tables $\sin^{-1} 0.7048 = 44.81^\circ$ but we must remember that $(180^\circ - 44.81^\circ)$ would also have a sine of 0.7048, and so

$$x = 44.81^\circ \text{ or } 180^\circ - 44.81^\circ \\ = 44.81^\circ \text{ or } 135.19^\circ$$

In this example the obtuse value of the angle can be discarded as it is not possible when one angle of the triangle is already known to be 70° .

$$\text{Thus } x = 44.81^\circ$$

In some cases both answers will be possible.

Example 26

Find the angle x in the given triangle.

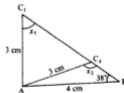
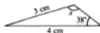
By the sine rule $\frac{3}{\sin 38^\circ} = \frac{4}{\sin x}$

So $\sin x = \frac{4 \sin 38^\circ}{3} = 0.8209$

$$\text{hence } x = 55.17^\circ \text{ or } (180^\circ - 55.17^\circ) \text{ i.e. } 124.83^\circ$$

In this case both answers are possible and there are two triangles that could be drawn from the original information.

If $x_1 = 55.17^\circ$ and $x_2 = 124.83^\circ$, then these are triangles ABC_1 and ABC_2 as shown on the right.

*Note on the solution of triangles*

Suppose we had to solve the $\triangle ABC$ shown (i.e. find all unknown sides and angles). We would first find c , using the cosine rule, and then have a choice as to which angle, A or B , we would find next. If we use the sine rule, we should then have to decide whether or not the obtuse angle answer is applicable. It is therefore best to find the angle opposite the smaller side first (i.e. angle B) as this must be smaller than the angle opposite the larger side and will therefore be acute.

Alternatively, angle A or B could be found by using the cosine rule.



Area of a triangle

In addition to the rule: $\text{area} = \frac{\text{base} \times \text{perpendicular height}}{2}$ for finding the area of a triangle, there are two other useful formulae:

$$1 \text{ Area} = \frac{1}{2}ab \sin C \quad (\text{or } \frac{1}{2}bc \sin A \text{ or } \frac{1}{2}ac \sin B).$$

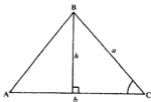
Proof: Consider $\triangle ABC$ in which h is the length of the perpendicular from B to AC .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Area} &= \frac{1}{2}AC \times h \\ &= \frac{1}{2}b \times (BC \sin C) \\ &= \frac{1}{2}ab \sin C \end{aligned}$$

The other two variations of the formulae can then be obtained from this by use of the sine rule.

$$2 \text{ Area} = \sqrt{s(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)}$$

where $s = \frac{a+b+c}{2}$, the semi-perimeter.



This second formula was first stated by the Greek Mathematician Hero and is called Hero's formula. (The proof is not given here).

Example 27

Find the areas of the given triangles:

(a)



$$\begin{aligned} \text{Area} &= \frac{1}{2} \times 5 \times 6 \times \sin 50^\circ \\ &= 11.5 \text{ cm}^2 \end{aligned}$$

(b)



$$s = \frac{4 + 7 + 9}{2} = 10$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Area} &= \sqrt{10(10-4)(10-7)(10-9)} \\ &= \sqrt{180} = 13.4 \text{ cm}^2 \end{aligned}$$

Exercise F

1. Find the length x in each of the following:

(a)



(b)



(c)



(d)



(e)



(f)



2. Find the angle θ in each of the following:

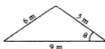
(a)



(b)



(c)



(d)



(e)



(f)



3. Find the areas of the following triangles:

(a)



(b)



(c)



(d)



(e)



(f)



- Solve the triangle ABC given that $\hat{A} = 66^\circ$, $\hat{C} = 44^\circ$ and $a = 7$ cm.
- Solve the triangle ABC given that $\hat{A} = 45^\circ$, $c = 5$ cm and $b = 6$ cm.
- Solve the triangle ABC given that $\hat{C} = 50^\circ$, $c = 8$ cm and $a = 10$ cm.
- From a ship A, two other ships B and C, lie on bearings of 320° and 060° respectively. If B is 5 km from A and C is 3 km from A, find the distance from B to C.
- Three points A, B and C all lie on level ground with B due south of A. The point C lies 250 m from A on a bearing $N55^\circ E$ and C is 400 m from B. Find the bearing of C from B to the nearest degree.
- A ship A is 7 km away from a lighthouse L on a bearing 080° and a ship B is 5 km away from the lighthouse on a bearing 210° . Find the distance and bearing of A from B.
- Three points A, B and C lie in a straight

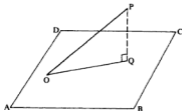
line on level ground with B between A and C. A vertical mast stands at A and is supported by wires attached to its top and to points on the ground. One such wire is fastened at B and another at C. The wire to C makes an angle of 40° with CA and the wire to B makes an angle of 60° with BA. If $BC = 22$ m, find the length of the wires and the height of the mast.

- A gardener encloses a triangular plot of land by using an existing hedge of length 16 m for one side and fencing, of total length 20 m, for the other two sides. If the area of the plot is $24\sqrt{3}$ m² find the lengths of the sides of the triangle.
- From a harbour H two ships A and B are situated $2x$ km due north and x km on a bearing $N \alpha E$ respectively (α being an acute angle). Use the cosine rule to show that the distance between the two ships is given by $x\sqrt{5 - 4 \cos \alpha}$.

0.8 Three-dimensional trigonometry

Angle between a line and a plane

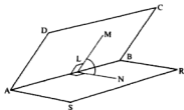
Suppose a line OP meets a plane $ABCD$ at the point O . The angle between the line OP and the plane is then defined as the angle between OP and the line which is the projection of OP on the plane $ABCD$. The projection of OP on the plane $ABCD$ is OQ where PQ is perpendicular to the plane $ABCD$. Hence the required angle is POQ .



Angle between two planes

Suppose two planes $ABCD$ and $ABRS$ intersect in the line AB , as shown.

The angle between the planes is the angle between two lines, both of which are at right-angles to AB , which intersect on AB , and lie one in each plane. The required angle is then MLN .



Line of greatest slope

All lines drawn on an inclined plane are not equally steep. In the diagram ABC is horizontal and parallel to OX .

The vertical distances of A , B and C above O are all equal to h .

Hence, since

$$OA < OB < OC$$

$$\text{then } \frac{h}{OA} > \frac{h}{OB} > \frac{h}{OC}$$

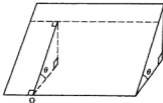
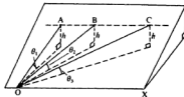
$$\text{thus } \sin \theta_1 > \sin \theta_2 > \sin \theta_3$$

$$\text{i.e. } \theta_1 > \theta_2 > \theta_3$$

The steepest line drawn on the inclined plane will be drawn from O at right-angles to the line ABC .

Since ABC is parallel to the line OX , this line of greatest slope will also be at right-angles to OX .

When we say a plane is inclined at an angle θ to the horizontal, we mean that the line of greatest slope on the plane makes an angle θ with the horizontal plane.



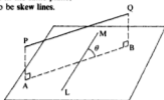
Angle between skew lines

When considering a two-dimensional situation, two lines that are not parallel will intersect. However, in three dimensions two lines which are not parallel to each other will only intersect if the lines themselves are in the same plane, i.e. **coplanar**. Two lines which are not coplanar are said to be **skew lines**.

Consider the skew lines LM and PQ:

AB is a line drawn parallel to PQ so that AB and LM intersect (i.e. AB is parallel to PQ and is coplanar with LM).

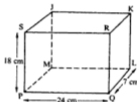
The angle between the skew lines PQ and LM is then defined as the angle θ between the lines AB and LM.



Example 28

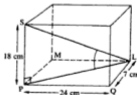
The cuboid shown has $PQ = 24$ cm, $PS = 18$ cm and $QL = 7$ cm. Calculate, to the nearest degree:

- the angle between the line SL and the plane PQLM
- the angle between the planes LMSR and PQRS
- the angle between the skew lines PK and ML.



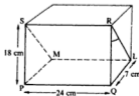
- PL is the projection of SL on the plane PQLM. Hence the angle between SL and the plane PQLM is the angle between SL and LP i.e. $\hat{S}LP$

$$\begin{aligned}\tan \hat{S}LP &= \frac{SP}{PL} \\ &= \frac{18}{\sqrt{7^2 + 24^2}} \\ \therefore \hat{S}LP &= 36^\circ \text{ (to nearest degree)}\end{aligned}$$



- Planes LMSR and PQRS meet in the line RS. RQ is in the plane PQRS and is perpendicular to RS, LR is in the plane LMSR and is perpendicular to RS, so the angle between the planes is $\hat{Q}RL$.

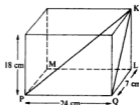
$$\begin{aligned}\tan \hat{Q}RL &= \frac{7}{18} \\ \therefore \hat{Q}RL &= 21^\circ \text{ (to nearest degree)}.\end{aligned}$$



- (c) ML is parallel to PQ, so the angle between the skew lines PK and ML equals the angle between PK and PQ i.e. \widehat{KPQ} .

$$\begin{aligned}\tan \widehat{KPQ} &= \frac{KQ}{PQ} \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{7^2 + 18^2}}{24}\end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \widehat{KPQ} = 39^\circ \text{ (to nearest degree)}$$



Example 29

A particular hillside may be considered to be a plane inclined at 15° to the horizontal. A straight path up the hillside makes an angle of 30° with the line of greatest slope. Find, to the nearest degree, the angle the path makes with the horizontal.

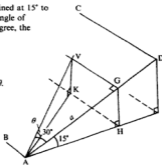
Let ABCD be a portion of the hillside and the path be represented by AV. AK is the projection of AV in the horizontal plane, AH is horizontal and AG is a line of greatest slope on the hillside. Let $AG = a$ and $\widehat{VAK} = \theta$.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{From } \triangle AGH \quad GH &= a \sin 15^\circ \\ \text{hence} \quad VK &= a \sin 15^\circ\end{aligned}$$

$$\text{From } \triangle AGV \quad \cos 30^\circ = \frac{a}{AV} \quad \text{or} \quad AV = \frac{a}{\cos 30^\circ}$$

$$\text{In } \triangle AKV \quad \sin \theta = \frac{VK}{AV} = a \sin 15^\circ \times \frac{\cos 30^\circ}{a}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \sin \theta &= \sin 15^\circ \cos 30^\circ \\ \text{giving} \quad \theta &= 13^\circ \text{ (to nearest degree)}\end{aligned}$$



Example 30

A rectangular-based pyramid PQRST has its vertex T vertically above the mid-point M of the side PQ. If $PQ = 24$ cm, $QR = 5$ cm and $TQ = 20$ cm calculate, to the nearest degree:

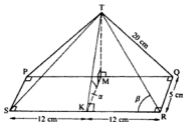
- (a) the angle between the planes RTS and PQRS,
(b) the angle between the skew lines RT and QP.

- (a) Let K be the mid-point of SR. Planes RTS and PQRS meet in RS. TK lies in the plane RTS and is perpendicular to RS, MK lies in the plane PQRS and is perpendicular to RS.

The required angle is \widehat{TRM} , which is marked α on the diagram.

$$\tan \alpha = \frac{TM}{MK} = \frac{\sqrt{20^2 - 12^2}}{5} = \frac{16}{5}$$

$$\text{giving } \alpha = 73^\circ \text{ (to nearest degree)}$$



- (b) RS is parallel to QP, so the angle between the skew lines RT and QP equals the angle between RT and RS i.e. the angle TRS, marked β in the diagram.

$$\text{From } \triangle TRK \quad \tan \beta = \frac{TK}{12}$$

$$\text{but} \quad TK = \sqrt{(5^2 + TM^2)} \quad \text{and} \quad TM^2 = 20^2 - 12^2 = 16^2$$

$$\therefore \quad \tan \beta = \frac{\sqrt{(5^2 + 16^2)}}{12}$$

$$\text{giving} \quad \angle TRS = 54^\circ \quad (\text{to nearest degree})$$

Example 31

A particular hillside may be considered to be a plane inclined at 22° to the horizontal. A man walks 60 m due north up a path which follows a line of greatest slope on the hillside. He then walks due west across the hillside to a point P. From P he follows a straight path leading back to his starting point O and the length of this path is 85 m. Calculate the inclination of the path OP to the horizontal and the total distance the man has walked.

Let OQ be the path due north and let N and M be the feet of the perpendiculars from Q and P to the horizontal plane through the point O. Let $\angle POM = \theta$.

$$\text{From } \triangle OQN \quad QN = 60 \sin 22^\circ$$

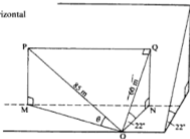
$$\text{hence} \quad PM = 60 \sin 22^\circ$$

$$\text{From } \triangle OPM \quad \sin \theta = \frac{PM}{OP} = \frac{60 \sin 22^\circ}{85}$$

$$\text{or} \quad \theta = 15.3^\circ$$

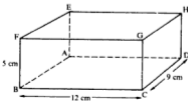
$$\begin{aligned} \text{Total distance walked} &= OQ + QP + PO \\ &= 60 + \sqrt{(85^2 - 60^2)} + 85 \\ &= 205.2 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

The inclination of the path OP to the horizontal is 15.3° and the man walks 205.2 m.

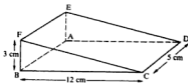


Exercise G

1. The diagram shows a cuboid ABCDEFGH with $CD = 9$ cm, $BC = 12$ cm and $FB = 5$ cm. Find
- the angle between the line EC and the plane ABCD,
 - the angle between the planes EFCD and ABCD,
 - the angle between the skew lines EC and AD.

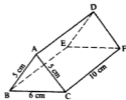


2. The diagram shows a wedge $ABCDEF$ with $ABCD$ a horizontal rectangle and $ABFE$ a vertical rectangle. $BC = 12$ cm, $CD = 5$ cm and $BF = 3$ cm. Find
- the angle between the line FD and the base $ABCD$,
 - the angle between the planes $EPCD$ and $ABCD$,
 - the angle between the lines BE and EC ,
 - the angle between the skew lines EC and FB .

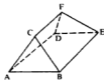


3. $ABCDE$ is a pyramid with $ABCD$ the square horizontal base. $AB = 6$ cm and $AE = BE = CE = DE = 8$ cm. Find
- the height of the pyramid,
 - the angle between the line AE and the base,
 - the angle between the plane EAB and the base.
4. ABC is a horizontal triangle, right-angled at B , and $BCDE$ is a vertical rectangle. $BE = 5$ cm, $BC = 10$ cm and $\angle EAB = 30^\circ$. Find (a) $\angle BAC$, (b) $\angle DAC$, (c) $\angle DAE$.

5. The diagram shows a right triangular prism of length 10 cm. The rectangular base $BCFE$ is horizontal. ABC and DEF are vertical isosceles triangles with $AB = AC = 5$ cm and $BC = 6$ cm. Find
- the height of AD above the base $BCFE$,
 - the angle between the plane DBC and the base,
 - the angle between the line DC and the base.

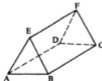


6. The figure $ABCDEF$ shown in the diagram has equilateral triangles ABC and DEF , of side 8 cm, slanting in towards the base such that each triangle makes an angle of 60° with the rectangular base $ABED$. Find
- how much shorter CF is than BE ,
 - the angle between CB and the base to the nearest degree.



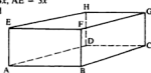
7. From the base of a vertical tower of height 30 m point A lies due south and point B lies in a direction $S60^\circ W$ with A and B both on the same horizontal level as the base of the tower. The top of the tower has angles of elevation of 12° from A and 15° from B . Find the distance from A to B to the nearest metre.

8. A vertical mast PQ has 4 equal wires attached to its top P. The other ends of the wires are attached to points A, B, C and D on the ground, level with Q. If PA makes an angle of 60° with the ground, find the height of the mast and the angle between the plane PAB and the ground if
- ABCD is a square of side 6 m,
 - ABCD is a rectangle with $AB = 6$ m and $BC = 8$ m.
9. A rectangular plot of land ABCD lies in a horizontal plane. A pole of length 3 m is held vertically at C and the top of the pole has an angle of elevation of 16° from B and 25° from D. Find the area of the plot and the elevation of the top of the pole from A (to the nearest degree).
10. VABCD is a pyramid with ABCD as the square base of side 10 m. V is situated vertically above a point P inside ABCD that is 5 m from the line AD and 3 m from the line AB. If $VA = VB = 13$ m find (a) the angle between the plane VAB and the base, (b) the height of the pyramid, (c) the angle between VA and the base, (d) the angle between the plane VDC and the base.
11. Points A, B and C all lie in the same horizontal plane with B on a bearing $N30^\circ W$ from A and C on a bearing $N20^\circ E$ from A. A vertical tower of height 30 m stands at B and the angle of elevation of its top, from A, is 18° . A vertical tower of height 20 m stands at C and the angle of elevation of the top of the tower from A is 20° . Find the distance from B to C to the nearest metre.
12. From an observation point at sea level, an aircraft is observed on a bearing $N30^\circ E$, elevation 20° and at height 600 m. The aircraft then flies due east for 1000 m, without altering its height. What will be its bearing and angle of elevation from the observation point then? (Give answers to the nearest degree.)
13. A hillside forms a plane surface inclined at 25° to the horizontal. A straight path up the hillside makes an angle of 60° with the line of greatest slope. Find, to the nearest degree, the inclination of the path to the horizontal.
14. A road is to be constructed up a hillside which may be considered as a plane surface making an angle of 40° with the horizontal. At what angle to the line of greatest slope must the road be constructed if it is to make an angle of 20° with the horizontal? (Give your answer to the nearest degree.)
15. VABCD is a pyramid with the vertex V situated perpendicularly above the centre of the square base ABCD. If θ is the angle between the edge VA and the base, and ϕ is the angle between the plane VAB and the base, show that $\tan \phi = \sqrt{2} \tan \theta$.
16. The diagram below shows a right triangular prism ABCDEF with the rectangular base ABCD horizontal and triangles ABE and DCF vertical. $AE = EB$, $AB = x$ and $BC = x\sqrt{2}$. The angle between EFCB and the horizontal is θ and the angle between EC and the base is ϕ . Show that $3 \tan \phi = \tan \theta$.



17. The diagram shows a cuboid ABCDEFGH with $AB = 4x$, $AE = 3x$ and $BC = y$. If the angle between the skew lines BH and AD is θ show that

$$y \sin \theta - 5x \cos \theta = 0.$$



18. Two vertical masts BD and CE, each of height h , have their bases B and C on level ground with C to the east of B. A point A lies on the same level as B and C and is due south of B. The angle of elevation of D from A is θ and angle DAE = ϕ . If the angle of elevation of E from A is α show that $\sin \alpha = \sin \theta \cos \phi$.

1

Functions

1.1 Basic concepts

Four children, Ann, Bob, Carol and David, are given a spelling test which is marked out of five; their marks for the test are shown in the arrow diagram on the right.

By choosing any one name from the set of names, we can find the mark that relates to it. Any relationship which takes one element of one set and assigns to it one and only one element of a second set is said to be a **function**.



The first set is said to be the **domain** of the function and the second set is the **co-domain**. We say that each element of the first set is **mapped onto its image** in the second set. The set of all images will be a subset of the co-domain, and is called the **range**.

Thus in the above example.

the domain is {Ann, Bob, Carol, David}

the co-domain is {1, 2, 3, 4, 5}

the range is {3, 4, 5}

Notice that a function can map more than one element of the domain onto the same element of the range, e.g. $Ann \rightarrow 4$ and $Carol \rightarrow 4$. Such functions are said to be **many-to-one**. Functions for which each element of the domain is mapped onto a different element of the range are said to be **one-to-one**.

Relationships which are **one-to-many** can occur, but from our definition above, they are *not* functions. The following diagrams illustrate these facts.

one-to-one function



the domain is {A, B, C}
the co-domain is {W, X, Y, Z}
the range is {W, X, Y}

many-to-one function



the domain is {A, B, C}
the co-domain is {W, X, Y, Z}
the range is {W, X}

one-to-many relationship



Because this is a one-to-many relationship, it is not a function.

If every element of the co-domain is the image of at least one element of the domain, then the function maps the domain *onto* the co-domain. Otherwise the function maps the domain *into* the co-domain.



Fig. A



Fig. B



Fig. C



Fig. D

Figure A shows a one-to-one function mapping $\{A, B, C\}$ into $\{W, X, Y, Z\}$

Figure B shows a one-to-one function mapping $\{A, B, C\}$ onto $\{W, X, Y\}$

Figure C shows a many-to-one function mapping $\{A, B, C\}$ into $\{W, X, Y, Z\}$

Figure D shows a many-to-one function mapping $\{A, B, C\}$ onto $\{W, X\}$

For most functions which concern us, the domain will be a set of numbers.

Suppose a function has the set X as the domain and is such that it doubles any element x of the domain to give the corresponding element of the range.

This function would be written $f: x \rightarrow 2x$ or $f(x) = 2x$, either form being acceptable.

As this function would map the number 2 onto its image, the number 4, we could write this fact as $f: 2 \rightarrow 4$ or as $f(2) = 4$.

Other letters such as g or h may be used in place of f if we wish to distinguish between functions.

Example 1

Draw arrow diagrams for the functions

(a) $f: x \rightarrow 2x$ (b) $g: x \rightarrow 3x + 1$ (c) $h: x \rightarrow x^2$

for the domain $\{-1, 0, 1\}$ and state the range of each function.

(a) $f: x \rightarrow 2x$



range is $\{-2, 0, 2\}$

(b) $g: x \rightarrow 3x + 1$



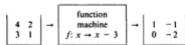
range is $\{-2, 1, 4\}$

(c) $h: x \rightarrow x^2$



range is $\{0, 1\}$

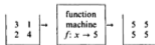
It is sometimes helpful to think of functions as 'machines'. A box of numbers (the domain) is put into the machine. The machine then alters each number according to some rule and outputs the new numbers into a second box (the range).



This machine subtracts 3 from each number.

The domain is $\{1, 2, 3, 4\}$

The range is $\{-2, -1, 0, 1\}$



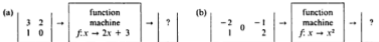
This machine changes each number to the number 5.

The domain is $\{1, 2, 3, 4\}$

The range is $\{5\}$

Example 2

State the range of each of the function machines for the domains shown.



(a) $\{0, 1, 2, 3\} \xrightarrow{x \rightarrow 2x + 3} \{3, 5, 7, 9\}$; the range is $\{3, 5, 7, 9\}$

(b) $\{-2, -1, 0, 1, 2\} \xrightarrow{x \rightarrow x^2} \{4, 1, 0\}$; the range is $\{0, 1, 4\}$

Note that it is usual to state the elements of the range in ascending order of magnitude. Therefore the first element of the domain will not necessarily be mapped onto the first element of the range.

Example 3

The functions f and g are given as $f(x) = x + 3$ for $x \geq 0$ and $g(x) = x^2$ for $-2 \leq x \leq 3$. State the range of each of these functions.

If $x \geq 0$, then $x + 3 \geq 3$. Thus the range of f will be $f(x) \geq 3$.

If $-2 \leq x \leq 3$, then $0 \leq x^2 \leq 9$. Thus the range of g will be $0 \leq g(x) \leq 9$.

Example 4

If $f(x) = 4x - 3$ and $g(x) = x^2$ for the domain of all real x , find:

(a) $f(2)$, (b) $f(-2)$, (c) $g(-3)$, (d) the possible values of a if $f(a) = g(a)$.

(a) $f(2) = 4(2) - 3 = 5$

(b) $f(-2) = 4(-2) - 3 = -11$

(c) $g(-3) = (-3)^2 = 9$

(d) $f(a) = 4a - 3$ and $g(a) = a^2$

Thus, if $f(a) = g(a)$

we have $4a - 3 = a^2$

$0 = a^2 - 4a + 3$ giving $a = 1$ or 3

If the domain of a function is not stated, it should be assumed to be the set of all real numbers for which the function is defined.

Example 5

The following functions map an element x of the domain onto its image y , i.e. $f: x \rightarrow y$. For each of the three functions below, state (i) the domain for which the function is defined, (ii) the corresponding range of the function, (iii) whether the function is one-to-one or many-to-one.

(a) $f: x \rightarrow x + 3$ (b) $f: x \rightarrow \sqrt{x}$ (c) $f: x \rightarrow \frac{1}{x^2}$

(a) $f: x \rightarrow x + 3$

(i) The function is defined for all real x , so the domain is \mathbb{R} .

(ii) For this domain, the range will contain all elements of \mathbb{R} , so the range is \mathbb{R} .

(iii) Each element of the range is obtained from only one element of the domain, so the function is one-to-one.

(b) $f: x \rightarrow \sqrt{x}$.

- (i) The function is not defined for negative x , so the domain is $\{x \in \mathbb{R}: x \geq 0\}$.
- (ii) For this domain, the range will contain all positive numbers in \mathbb{R} . Remember that the symbol $\sqrt{\quad}$ is defined to mean the positive square root. The range is therefore $\{y \in \mathbb{R}: y \geq 0\}$.
- (iii) Each element of the range is obtained from only one element of the domain, so the function is one-to-one.

(c) $f: x \rightarrow \frac{1}{x^2}$

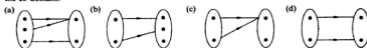
- (i) The function is defined for all real x except $x = 0$. We write the domain as $\{x \in \mathbb{R}: x \neq 0\}$.
- (ii) For this domain, the range will contain neither zero nor any negative numbers because x^2 (and hence $1/x^2$) will be positive. The range is therefore $\{y \in \mathbb{R}: y > 0\}$.
- (iii) Here the elements of the range can be obtained from more than one element of the domain, e.g. $f(3) = \frac{1}{9}$ and $f(-3) = \frac{1}{9}$, so the function is many-to-one.

Exercise 1A

1. State which of the following arrow diagrams show functions.



2. State which of the following arrow diagrams show: (i) a one-to-one function mapping into the co-domain, (ii) a one-to-one function mapping onto the co-domain, (iii) a many-to-one function mapping into the co-domain.



3. State the range of each of the following 'function machines' for the domains shown.

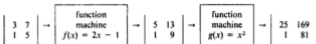
(a) $\begin{bmatrix} -2 & 0 & -1 \\ 1 & & 2 \end{bmatrix} \rightarrow f: x \rightarrow 3x - 2 \rightarrow \begin{bmatrix} ? \\ ? \end{bmatrix}$

(b) $\begin{bmatrix} -2 & 0 & -1 \\ 1 & & 2 \end{bmatrix} \rightarrow f: x \rightarrow 2x^2 - 1 \rightarrow \begin{bmatrix} ? \\ ? \end{bmatrix}$

4. Draw arrow diagrams for the functions $f: x \rightarrow x + 2$, $g: x \rightarrow x^2 + 1$ and $h: x \rightarrow (x + 1)^2$ for the domain $\{-2, -1, 0, 1, 2\}$ and state the range of each function for this domain.
5. Draw arrow diagrams for the functions $f: x \rightarrow |x|$, $g: x \rightarrow |x| - 1$ and $h: x \rightarrow |x - 1|$ for the domain $\{-2, -1, 0, 1, 2\}$ and state the range of each function for this domain.
6. If $f(x) = 2x + 3$ find
 (a) $f(2)$, (b) $f(-1)$, (c) $g(6)$, (d) the value of a if $f(a) = a$.
7. If $g(x) = x^2 - 6$ find
 (a) $g(4)$, (b) $g(-4)$, (c) $g(2)$, (d) the possible values of a if $g(a) = a$.
8. If $f(x) = 2x^2$ and $g(x) = 3 - x$ find
 (a) $f(3)$, (b) $f(-3)$, (c) $g(-3)$, (d) the possible values of a if $f(a) = g(a)$.
9. The function f is given by $f(x) = ax + b$. If $f(3) = 3$ and $f(4) = 5$, find a and b .
10. The function g is given by $g(x) = ax^2 - b$. If $g(2) = 5$ and $g(-1) = 2$, find the values of a and b and hence find $g(-4)$.
11. Each of the following functions maps an element x of the domain onto its image y , i.e. $f(x) = y$. Find the range of each function for the given domains and state whether the function is one-to-one or many-to-one.
- (a) $f: x \rightarrow x + 3$ with domain $\{x: 0 \leq x \leq 4\}$,
 (b) $f: x \rightarrow x - 2$ with domain $\{x: 0 \leq x \leq 4\}$,
 (c) $f: x \rightarrow 2x$ with domain $\{x: 0 \leq x \leq 3\}$,
 (d) $f: x \rightarrow 2x$ with domain $\{x: -3 \leq x \leq 3\}$,
 (e) $f: x \rightarrow x^2$ with domain $\{x: -3 \leq x \leq 3\}$,
 (f) $f: x \rightarrow \sqrt{x}$ with domain $\{x: 0 \leq x \leq 25\}$,
 (g) $f: x \rightarrow |x|$ with domain $\{x: -3 \leq x \leq 3\}$,
 (h) $f: x \rightarrow x^2$ with domain \mathbf{R} ,
 (i) $f: x \rightarrow |x|$ with domain \mathbf{R} ,
 (j) $f: x \rightarrow \frac{1}{x}$ with domain $\{x: x \geq 1\}$,
 (k) $f: x \rightarrow x^2 + 4$ with domain \mathbf{R} ,
 (l) $f: x \rightarrow \frac{1}{x-1}$ with domain $\{x \in \mathbf{R}: x \neq 1\}$.
12. The following functions map an element x of the domain onto its image y , i.e. $f: x \rightarrow y$. For each function state
 (i) the domain for which the function is defined,
 (ii) the corresponding range of the function.
- (a) $f: x \rightarrow 2x$, (b) $f: x \rightarrow |x|$, (c) $f: x \rightarrow \frac{1}{x}$, (d) $f: x \rightarrow \frac{1}{x-3}$.
13. f and g are defined as follows: $f: x \rightarrow \begin{cases} 2x & \text{for } 0 \leq x < 3 \\ x^2 & \text{for } 3 \leq x \leq 6 \end{cases}$
 $g: x \rightarrow \begin{cases} 3x & \text{for } 0 \leq x < 3 \\ x^2 & \text{for } 3 \leq x \leq 6 \end{cases}$
- Explain why g is a function but f is not.
14. f and g are defined as follows: $f: x \rightarrow \begin{cases} x^2 + 2 & \text{for } 0 \leq x < 2 \\ 3x & \text{for } 2 \leq x < 4 \end{cases}$
 $g: x \rightarrow \begin{cases} x^2 & \text{for } 0 \leq x < 2 \\ 3x & \text{for } 2 \leq x < 4 \end{cases}$
- Explain why f is a function whereas g is not.

1.2 Composite functions

Consider the functions $f(x) = 2x - 1$ and $g(x) = x^2$. Using the 'machine' analogy, suppose we input the numbers $\{1, 3, 5, 7\}$ into machine f and then take the output from this machine and put it into machine g .



This combined or composite function is written $gf(x)$ or simply gf . Notice that the function f is performed first and so is written nearer to the variable x .

The set $\{1, 3, 5, 7\}$ is the domain for the composite function and $\{1, 25, 81, 169\}$ is the range.

Example 6

If $f(x) = 2x$ and $g(x) = x^2 - 1$, find the range of each of the following functions for the domain $\{-2, -1, 0, 1, 2\}$

(a) $f(x)$, (b) $g(x)$, (c) $fg(x)$, (d) $gf(x)$.

(a) $\{-2, -1, 0, 1, 2\} \xrightarrow{f} \{-4, -2, 0, 2, 4\}$; the range is $\{-4, -2, 0, 2, 4\}$

(b) $\{-2, -1, 0, 1, 2\} \xrightarrow{g} \{3, 0, -1\}$; the range is $\{-1, 0, 3\}$

(c) $\{-2, -1, 0, 1, 2\} \xrightarrow{g} \{3, 0, -1\} \xrightarrow{f} \{6, 0, -2\}$; the range is $\{-2, 0, 6\}$

(d) $\{-2, -1, 0, 1, 2\} \xrightarrow{f} \{-4, -2, 0, 2, 4\} \xrightarrow{g} \{15, 3, -1\}$; the range is $\{-1, 3, 15\}$

Example 7

If $f(x) = 2x$ and $g(x) = 3x + 1$, find

(a) $f(2)$, (b) $g(3)$, (c) $fg(2)$, and express $gf(x)$ as a single function $h(x)$.

$$(a) \quad f(2) = 2(2) \\ = 4$$

$$(b) \quad g(3) = 3(3) + 1 \\ = 10$$

$$(c) \quad g(2) = 3(2) + 1 \\ = 7; \\ \text{so } fg(2) = f(7) \\ = 14$$

$$f(x) = 2x, \text{ so } gf(x) = g(2x) \\ = 3(2x) + 1 \\ = 6x + 1 \quad \therefore h(x) = 6x + 1$$

1.3 The inverse of a function

Consider a function f which maps each element x of the domain X onto its image y in the range Y ,

i.e. $f: x \rightarrow y$ where $x \in X$ and $y \in Y$.

Can we find the inverse function, written f^{-1} , that has domain Y and range X , which maps y back to x ?

i.e. $f^{-1}: y \rightarrow x$

First recall the definition of a function. Any one-to-one or many-to-one relationship is a function. However, if we attempted to find the inverse of a many-to-one function, we would obtain a one-to-many relationship which is not a function. Thus, only a one-to-one function can have an inverse function.

The following diagrams illustrate these points.

domain $X \xrightarrow{f}$ range Y



f is a one-to-one function

domain $Y \xrightarrow{f^{-1}}$ range X



f^{-1} is a one-to-one function

domain $U \xrightarrow{g}$ range V



g is a many-to-one function

domain $V \xrightarrow{g^{-1}}$ range U



g^{-1} is one-to-many and so it is not a function

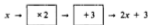
To find the inverse of a one-to-one function, we write the separate operations of the function as a flow chart. We then reverse the flow chart, writing the inverse of each operation.

Example 8

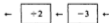
Find the inverses of these functions.

(a) $f(x) = 2x + 3$ (b) $g(x) = 2 - x$ (c) $h(x) = \frac{1}{x} - 3$

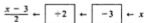
(a) First write the function as a flow chart with input x and output $2x + 3$



Now reverse the flow chart, and write the inverse of each operation



With input x , this will now output the inverse function.



So the inverse function f^{-1} is $x \rightarrow \frac{x - 3}{2}$

Check: $f(2) = 7$, $f^{-1}(7) = 2$.

(b) First write the function as a flow chart.

$$x \rightarrow \boxed{\times (-1)} \rightarrow \boxed{+2} \rightarrow 2 - x$$

Now reverse the flow chart, writing the inverse of each operation.

$$\frac{x-2}{-1} \leftarrow \boxed{\div (-1)} \leftarrow \boxed{-2} \leftarrow x$$

$$\text{but } \frac{x-2}{-1} = -x + 2 = 2 - x$$

So the inverse function g^{-1} , is $x \rightarrow 2 - x$, i.e. g is its own inverse.

$$\text{Check: } g(3) = -1, \quad g^{-1}(-1) = 2 - (-1) = 3.$$

(c) First write the function as a flow chart

$$x \rightarrow \boxed{\text{invert}} \rightarrow \boxed{-3} \rightarrow \frac{1}{x} - 3$$

Now reverse the flow chart (notice that the operation 'invert' is its own inverse)

$$\frac{1}{x+3} \leftarrow \boxed{\text{invert}} \leftarrow \boxed{+3} \leftarrow x$$

So the inverse function h^{-1} is $x \rightarrow \frac{1}{x+3}$

$$\text{Check: } h(2) = -2\frac{1}{3}, \quad h^{-1}(-2\frac{1}{3}) = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{3}} = 2.$$

Example 9If $f: x \rightarrow x + 1$ and $g: x \rightarrow \frac{3}{x}$ find in similar form:(a) f^{-1} , (b) g^{-1} , (c) fg , (d) gg , (e) $(fg)^{-1}$.

(a) $f: x \rightarrow \boxed{+1} \rightarrow x + 1$

$$f^{-1}: x - 1 \leftarrow \boxed{-1} \leftarrow x$$

So $f^{-1}: x \rightarrow x - 1$

$$\text{Check: } f: 3 \rightarrow 4, \quad f^{-1}: 4 \rightarrow 3.$$

(b) $g: x \rightarrow \boxed{\text{invert}} \rightarrow \boxed{\times 3} \rightarrow \frac{3}{x}$

$$g^{-1}: \frac{3}{x} \leftarrow \boxed{\text{invert}} \leftarrow \boxed{\div 3} \leftarrow x$$

So $g^{-1}: x \rightarrow \frac{3}{x}$ (i.e. g is its own inverse)

$$\text{Check: } g: 6 \rightarrow \frac{1}{2}, \quad g^{-1}: \frac{1}{2} \rightarrow 6.$$

$$(c) \quad g: x \rightarrow \frac{3}{x}$$

$$f: \frac{3}{x} \rightarrow \frac{3}{\frac{3}{x}} + 1$$

$$\text{So } fg: x \rightarrow \frac{3}{x} + 1$$

$$(d) \quad g: x \rightarrow \frac{3}{x}$$

$$g: \frac{3}{x} \rightarrow \frac{3}{\frac{3}{x}} = x$$

$$\text{So } gg: x \rightarrow x$$

$$(e) \quad fg: \quad x \rightarrow \boxed{\text{invert}} \rightarrow \boxed{\times 3} \rightarrow \boxed{+1} \rightarrow \frac{3}{x} + 1$$

$$(fg)^{-1}: \frac{3}{x-1} \leftarrow \boxed{\text{invert}} \leftarrow \boxed{+3} \leftarrow \boxed{-1} \leftarrow x$$

$$\text{So } (fg)^{-1}: x \rightarrow \frac{3}{x-1}$$

$$\text{Check: } fg: 3 \rightarrow 2, \quad (fg)^{-1}: 2 \rightarrow 3.$$

The reader may notice similarities between this work on inverse functions and the process of 'changing the subject of a formula' which may have been met in earlier years.

For example, in part (a) of Example 8, we found that for $f(x) = 2x + 3$ then $f^{-1}(x) = \frac{x-3}{2}$. This is similar to making x the subject of $y = 2x + 3$ as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} y &= 2x + 3 \\ \text{rearranging } y - 3 &= 2x \\ \text{then } x &= \frac{y-3}{2} \end{aligned}$$

Inverse functions can be obtained using this technique.

Example 10

Find the inverses of the functions.

$$(a) f(x) = 3x - 1, \quad (b) g(x) = \frac{3}{x-1}.$$

$$(a) \text{ If } f(x) = y, \text{ we require } f^{-1}(y) = x$$

$$\text{If } y = 3x - 1,$$

$$\text{then } x = \frac{y+1}{3}$$

So, given y , we can return to x using the expression $\frac{y+1}{3}$.

$$\text{Thus } f^{-1}(x) = \frac{x+1}{3}$$

$$(b) \text{ If } g(x) = y, \text{ we require } g^{-1}(y) = x$$

$$\text{If } y = \frac{3}{x-1},$$

$$\text{then } \frac{1}{y} = \frac{x-1}{3} \text{ or } x = \frac{3}{y} + 1$$

So, given y , we can return to x using the expression $\frac{3}{y} + 1$.

$$\text{Thus } g^{-1}(x) = \frac{3}{x} + 1$$

Restricting domains

Although we have said that only one-to-one functions have inverses, we can consider the inverse of a many-to-one function if we restrict the function to a domain for which it is one-to-one.

For example, $f: x \rightarrow x^2$ is a many-to-one function for a domain \mathbb{R} , but if we restrict the domain to $\{x \in \mathbb{R}: x \geq 0\}$, the function is then one-to-one and will have an inverse.

Exercise 1B

- If $f(x) = 5x$ and $g(x) = x^2 + 3$ find
(a) $f(3)$, (b) $g(2)$, (c) $gf(3)$, (d) $fg(2)$, (e) $gg(3)$, (f) $ff(3)$.
- If $f(x) = 2x + 1$ and $g(x) = x^2$ find the range of each of the following functions for the domain $\{-3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3\}$
(a) $f(x)$, (b) $g(x)$, (c) $fg(x)$, (d) $gf(x)$.
- If $f(x) = -x$, $g(x) = 1 - x^2$ and $h(x) = |x|$ find the range of each of the following functions for the domain $\{-2, -1, 0, 1, 2\}$:
(a) fg , (b) gf , (c) gh , (d) fh , (e) hg .
- If $f: x \rightarrow 3x$, $g: x \rightarrow 2x - 1$ and $h: x \rightarrow x^2$ express the following as single functions:
(a) fg , (b) gf , (c) gh , (d) hg , (e) fh , (f) fhg , (g) ghf .
- If $f: x \rightarrow 2x$ and $g: x \rightarrow x + 4$ state which of the functions ff , fg , gf or gg corresponds to
(a) $x \rightarrow 2x + 4$, (b) $x \rightarrow x + 8$, (c) $x \rightarrow 2x + 8$.
- If $f: x \rightarrow x^2$ and $g: x \rightarrow x + 2$ state which of the functions ff , fg , gf or gg corresponds to
(a) $x \rightarrow x + 4$, (b) $x \rightarrow x^2 + 2$, (c) $x \rightarrow x^2 + 4x + 4$.
- If $f: x \rightarrow x + 1$, $g: x \rightarrow x^2$ and $h(x) \rightarrow \frac{2}{x}$ express the following in similar form
(a) fg , (b) fh , (c) gh , (d) hg , (e) hfg , (f) hgf .
- Find the inverses of the following functions:
(a) $f: x \rightarrow 3x - 2$ (b) $f: x \rightarrow \frac{x}{2}$ (c) $f: x \rightarrow 5 - x$
(d) $f: x \rightarrow (x + 1)^2$ (e) $f: x \rightarrow \frac{1}{x} + 2$ (f) $f: x \rightarrow 2 - \frac{1}{x}$
(g) $f: x \rightarrow \frac{1}{x + 2}$ (h) $f: x \rightarrow \frac{1}{2x - 6}$
- If $f: x \rightarrow 2x + 3$, $g: x \rightarrow x - 2$ and $h: x \rightarrow \frac{2}{x}$ find in similar form
(a) fg , (b) $(fg)^{-1}$, (c) hg , (d) $(hg)^{-1}$, (e) hgf , (f) $(hgf)^{-1}$.

1.4 Ordered pairs

Consider the sets $A = \{1, 2\}$ and $B = \{2, 3, 4\}$. The diagram on the right represents function $f: x \rightarrow x + 2$ where $x \in A$ and $y \in B$.

Alternatively we could show this relationship by listing the possible values of x and y as **ordered pairs**. For the function above, the ordered pairs would be $(1, 3)$ and $(2, 4)$.



The **cartesian product** of the two sets A and B is written $A \times B$ and is the set of all possible ordered pairs (x, y) where $x \in A$ and $y \in B$. For the sets $A = \{1, 2\}$ and $B = \{2, 3, 4\}$, the cartesian product would be:

$$\{(1, 2), (1, 3), (1, 4), (2, 2), (2, 3), (2, 4)\}$$

Example 11

If $A = \{2, 3\}$ and $B = \{4, 5, 6, 7, 8\}$, write down all the ordered pairs (x, y) such that $x \in A$, $y \in B$ and x is a factor of y .

The required ordered pairs would be $(2, 4)$, $(2, 6)$, $(2, 8)$, $(3, 6)$.

Example 12

Four members of the cartesian product of two sets A and B are $(2, 1)$, $(2, 3)$, $(4, 1)$ and $(4, 5)$. If there are a total of six such ordered pairs in the cartesian product $A \times B$, find:

- the two missing members of $A \times B$,
 - the elements of A and B ,
 - the ordered pairs (x, y) such that $x \in A$, $y \in B$ and x is less than y .
- (a) From the ordered pairs $(2, 1)$, $(2, 3)$, $(4, 1)$ and $(4, 5)$, set A must contain the elements $\{2, 4\}$ and set B must contain $\{1, 3, 5\}$. Thus the two missing members of $A \times B$ are $(2, 5)$ and $(4, 3)$
- (b) $A = \{2, 4\}$ and $B = \{1, 3, 5\}$
- (c) The required ordered pairs are $(2, 3)$, $(2, 5)$, $(4, 5)$.

1.5 The graph of a function

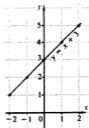
Consider the function $f: x \rightarrow x + 3$ which maps the domain X onto the range Y . If $x \in X$ and $y \in Y$ such that $f: x \rightarrow y$, we can write down the ordered pairs (x, y) . If $X = \mathbb{R}$, then $Y = \mathbb{R}$ and there would be an infinite number of such ordered pairs (x, y) . However, if we restrict the domain X to certain values, say $X = \{-2, -1, 0, 1, 2\}$, we can then list the ordered pairs: $(-2, 1)$, $(-1, 2)$, $(0, 3)$, $(1, 4)$, and $(2, 5)$.

This set of ordered pairs can be plotted as points on a graph. If these points are joined, we obtain the graph of the function $f: x \rightarrow x + 3$ for the domain $\{x \in \mathbb{R} : |x| \leq 2\}$.

We say that the graph of this function has the equation $y = x + 3$; the ordered pair fixing each point gives the x - and y -coordinates of that point on the graph.

As the value of x varies over the whole domain, so each corresponding value of y can be obtained; x and y are called **variables** with x the **independent variable** and y the **dependent variable**.

The equation need not always be given with y as the 'subject'. For example, $y = x + 3$ can be written as $y - x = 3$, $y - x - 3 = 0$, etc.



Clearly, if the domain were the set of all real numbers \mathbb{R} , we could not plot the entire graph of the function. Usually we are only interested in certain values of x or in a particular section of \mathbb{R} for which a graph is required.

The ordered pairs are usually written as a table of values. For the ordered pairs obtained above, the table of values would be

x	-2	-1	0	1	2
y	1	2	3	4	5

Example 13

For each of the following functions

- (i) write down the equation of the function,
 (ii) construct a table of values for the given domain,
 (iii) plot the graph of the function for that domain.

(a) $f: x \rightarrow 2x + 1$ for $|x| \leq 2$, (b) $f: x \rightarrow 3$ for $0 \leq x \leq 4$,

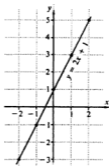
(c) $f: x \rightarrow x^2 + 2x - 2$ for $-4 \leq x \leq 2$.

(a) (i) The equation will be $y = 2x + 1$

(ii)

x	-2	-1	0	1	2
y	-3	-1	1	3	5

(iii)

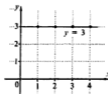


(b) (i) The equation will be $y = 3$.

(ii) In this case y will equal 3 for every value of x .

x	0	1	2	3	4
y	3	3	3	3	3

(iii)



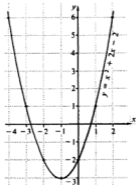
(c) (i) The equation will be

$$y = x^2 + 2x - 2$$

(ii) In this case the equation is more complicated so we will build up each y value gradually.

x	-4	-3	-2	-1	0	1	2
x^2	16	9	4	1	0	1	4
$+2x$	-8	-6	-4	-2	0	2	4
-2	-2	-2	-2	-2	-2	-2	-2
y	6	1	-2	-3	-2	1	6

(iii)



In some cases, the chosen points may be insufficient to draw the graph with certainty, so it will then be necessary to take extra values for x to obtain more points. In Example 13 part (c), we could have included $x = -\frac{1}{2}$ and $x = -1\frac{1}{2}$ to give two more points at the part of the graph which is difficult to draw.

Example 14

State which of the following points lie on the line $y = 2x - 3$:

(2, 1), (-2, -1), (-1, -5).

For a point to lie on a particular line the coordinates of that point must satisfy the equation of that line.

Substituting $x = 2$ into $y = 2x - 3$ gives $y = 1$. \therefore (2, 1) does lie on the line.

Substituting $x = -2$ into $y = 2x - 3$ gives $y = -7$. \therefore (-2, -1) does not lie on the line.

Substituting $x = -1$ into $y = 2x - 3$ gives $y = -5$. \therefore (-1, -5) does lie on the line.

Thus the points (2, 1) and (-1, -5) lie on the line $y = 2x - 3$.

Example 15

Find where the line $y = 2x - 6$ cuts (a) the x -axis (b) the y -axis.

(a) Any point on the x -axis will have a y -coordinate of zero.

Substituting $y = 0$ into $y = 2x - 6$ gives $0 = 2x - 6$

$$\text{i.e. } x = 3$$

$\therefore y = 2x - 6$ cuts the x -axis at (3, 0).

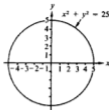
(b) Any point on the y -axis will have an x -coordinate of zero.

Substituting $x = 0$ into $y = 2x - 6$ gives $y = -6$

$\therefore y = 2x - 6$ cuts the y -axis at (0, -6).

It is important to realise that it is possible to write equations and to draw graphs for relationships between x and y that are not functions.

The equation $x^2 + y^2 = 25$ is a relationship between x and y and the graph of all possible ordered pairs (x, y) gives a circle. However this relationship is not a function because every x value does not have one and only one associated y value, e.g. for $x = 0$, y could equal 5 or -5 .



Exercise 1C

- If $A = \{3, 4, 5, 6\}$ and $B = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$, write down all the ordered pairs (x, y) such that $x \in A$, $y \in B$ and x is twice y .
- If $A = \{2, 3, 4\}$, write down all the ordered pairs (x, y) such that $x \in A$, $y \in A$ and x is greater than y .
- If $A = \{-2, -1, 0, 1, 2\}$ and $B = \{0, 1, 2, 3, 4\}$, write down all the ordered pairs (x, y) such that $x \in A$, $y \in B$ and $y = x^2$.
- Three elements of the cartesian product $A \times B$ are $(2, 3)$, $(2, 4)$ and $(3, 5)$. If there are six such ordered pairs in the cartesian product, find
 - the sets A and B ,
 - the other three elements of $A \times B$,
 - set C , a subset of $A \times B$, such that $C = \{(x, y) : x \in A, y \in B \text{ and } x = y\}$.
- If $A = \{1, 2, 3\}$ and $B = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$, find the ordered pairs of set C given that $C = \{(x, y) : x \in A, y \in B \text{ and } y = 2x\}$.
- State which of the following points lie on the line $y = 8 - 3x$, $(2, 2)$, $(-1, 5)$, $(1, 5)$, $(4, -4)$.
- If all of the following points lie on the line $y = 2x - 6$, find the values of a , b , c , d and e : $(5, a)$, $(2, b)$, $(-2, c)$, $(d, 2)$, $(e, 8)$.
- If the point $(2, 2)$ lies on the line $y = ax - 4$, find the value of a .
- If the points $(2, 1)$ and $(-2, -11)$ lie on the line $y = ax + b$, find the values of a and b .
- Find where the following lines cut (i) the y -axis (ii) the x -axis.

(a) $y = x - 4$	(b) $y = 2x - 4$	(c) $y = 12 - 2x$
(d) $y = \frac{1}{2}x + 3$	(e) $y + 2x = 8$	(f) $y + 5x = 3$
(g) $2y - 5x = 12$	(h) $y = x^2 - 3x + 2$	(i) $y = x^2 + x - 6$

For each of the functions in questions 11 to 20, (a) write down the equation of the function, (b) construct a table of values for the given domain, (c) plot the graph of the function for that domain.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 11. $f: x \rightarrow x + 1$ for $ x \leq 3$ | 12. $f: x \rightarrow x - 2$ for $ x \leq 4$ |
| 13. $f: x \rightarrow 2x + 3$ for $ x \leq 3$ | 14. $f: x \rightarrow x$ for $-2 \leq x \leq 4$ |

15. $f: x \rightarrow 5$ for $|x| \leq 3$
 17. $f: x \rightarrow x^2 + 3x - 2$ for $-5 \leq x \leq 2$
 19. $f: x \rightarrow 2x^2 - 4x - 5$ for $-2 \leq x \leq 4$

16. $f: x \rightarrow -2$ for $|x| \leq 3$
 18. $f: x \rightarrow x^2 - 2x - 4$ for $-3 \leq x \leq 5$
 20. $f: x \rightarrow 10 + x - x^2$ for $-3 \leq x \leq 4$

1.6 Some further considerations

Odd and even functions

Any function for which $f(-x) = f(x)$ is called an **even** function.

Two examples of even functions are

$$\begin{array}{ll} f: x \rightarrow x^2 & \text{and } g: x \rightarrow |x| \\ \text{e.g. } f(-3) \rightarrow 9 = f(3) & \text{e.g. } g(-3) \rightarrow 3 = g(3) \end{array}$$

Any function for which $f(-x) = -f(x)$ is called an **odd** function.

Two examples of odd functions are

$$\begin{array}{ll} f: x \rightarrow x & \text{and } g: x \rightarrow x^3 \\ \text{e.g. } f(-3) \rightarrow -3 = -f(3) & \text{e.g. } g(-3) \rightarrow -27 = -g(3) \end{array}$$

(The words even and odd are used because the functions $f: x \rightarrow x^n$ have the property that $f(-x) = f(x)$ for even values of n and the property that $f(-x) = -f(x)$ for odd values of n .)

It should be noted that most functions are neither odd nor even.

Example 16

Show that the function $f(x) = 4x^3 - x$ is an odd function.

$$\begin{aligned} f(-x) &= 4(-x)^3 - (-x) \\ &= -4x^3 + x \\ &= -(4x^3 - x) \\ &= -f(x) \end{aligned}$$

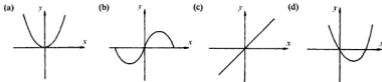
Thus $f(x) = 4x^3 - x$ is an odd function.

Consider the graph of an even function that maps $x \rightarrow y$, i.e. $f(x) = y$. Because the function is even, we know that $f(-x) = y$. Thus for every point (x, y) on the graph of the function, there will also be a point $(-x, y)$. The graph of an even function will therefore be symmetrical about the y -axis.

Consider the graph of an odd function that maps $x \rightarrow y$, i.e. $f(x) = y$. Because the function is odd, we know that $f(-x) = -y$. Thus for every point (x, y) on the graph of the function, there will also be a point $(-x, -y)$. The graph of an odd function will therefore be unchanged under a 180° rotation about the origin.

Example 17

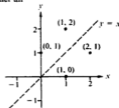
For each of the graphs shown below, state whether they are graphs of odd functions, even functions or neither of these.



- (a) The graph is symmetrical about the y -axis. Therefore it is the graph of an even function.
 (b) The graph is unchanged under a 180° rotation about the origin. Therefore it is the graph of an odd function.
 (c) The graph is unchanged under a 180° rotation about the origin. Therefore it is the graph of an odd function.
 (d) The graph is neither symmetrical about the y -axis nor is it unchanged under a 180° rotation about the origin. Therefore the graph is neither an odd nor an even function.

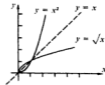
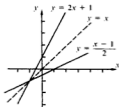
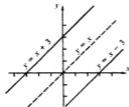
Graphs of inverse functions

If the function f maps $x \rightarrow y$ then f^{-1} maps $y \rightarrow x$. Thus for every point (x, y) on the graph of the function f , there will exist a point (y, x) on the graph of the function f^{-1} . For example, a point $(2, 1)$ on the graph of f will mean there is a point $(1, 2)$ on the graph of f^{-1} . A point $(1, 0)$ on the graph of f will mean there is a point $(0, 1)$ on the graph of f^{-1} and so on.



So we could obtain the graph of f^{-1} by finding the ordered pairs (x, y) for $f: x \rightarrow y$ and plotting them as (y, x) . This will give the same line that we would obtain by reflecting the graph of f in the line $y = x$ as the following graphs illustrate.

- (a) $f: x \rightarrow x + 3$ for $x \in \mathbb{R}$ (b) $g: x \rightarrow 2x + 1$ for $x \in \mathbb{R}$ (c) $h: x \rightarrow x^2$ for $(x \in \mathbb{R}; x \geq 0)$
 $f^{-1}: x \rightarrow x - 3$ for $x \in \mathbb{R}$ $g^{-1}: x \rightarrow \frac{x-1}{2}$ for $x \in \mathbb{R}$ $h^{-1}: x \rightarrow \sqrt{x}$ for $(x \in \mathbb{R}; x \geq 0)$



Exercise 1D

1. Show that each of the following functions are odd functions:

(a) $f(x) = 7x$, (b) $f(x) = x^3 + x$, (c) $f(x) = 2x^3 - 3x$.

2. Show that each of the following functions are even functions:

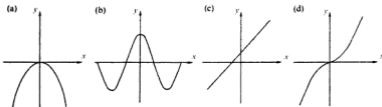
(a) $f(x) = 4x^2$, (b) $f(x) = 2 + x^2$, (c) $f(x) = 3x^2 + 2|x|$.

3. For each of the following functions, state whether they are even, odd or neither of these:

(a) $f(x) = 4 - 3x^2$, (b) $f(x) = 3x^2 + x$, (c) $f(x) = x - \frac{1}{x}$.

(d) $f(x) = x^2 + |x|$, (e) $f(x) = x^3 + |x|$.

4. For each of the following graphs, state whether they are graphs of odd functions, even functions or neither of these.


 5. Find the equations of the lines obtained if each of the following lines is reflected in the line $y = x$.

(a) $y = \frac{x}{3}$, (b) $y = 4 - x$, (c) $y = 2x - 4$, (d) $y = \frac{1}{x+2}$.

Exercise 1E Examination questions

 1. Find the range of the function $f: x \rightarrow |x - 1|$ corresponding to a domain $-3 \leq x \leq 3$. (Cambridge)

 2. The function $f: x \rightarrow \frac{a}{x} + b$ is such that $f(-1) = 1\frac{1}{2}$ and $f(2) = 9$.

 (i) State the value of x for which f is not defined.

 (ii) Find the value of a and of b .

 (iii) Evaluate $f(4)$ and $f^{-1}(4)$.

(Cambridge)

 3. The arrow diagram on the right represents part of the mapping $f: x \rightarrow \frac{72}{ax + b}$.

 (i) Find the value of a and of b .

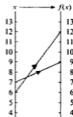
(ii) Find the element that under this mapping has an image of 4.

(Cambridge)

 4. Given the functions $f: x \rightarrow 2x - 3$ and $g: x \rightarrow \frac{8}{x}$, find in similar form

 (i) f^{-1} , (ii) fg , (iii) gf , (iv) $fg \circ f^{-1}$, (v) $(fg)^{-1}$.

(Cambridge)



5. Express in terms of the functions $f: x \rightarrow \sqrt{x}$ and $g: x \rightarrow x + 5$,

- (i) $x \rightarrow \sqrt{x+5}$, (ii) $x \rightarrow x-5$, (iii) $x \rightarrow x+10$,
(iv) $x \rightarrow \sqrt{x+10}$, (v) $x \rightarrow x^2+5$. (Cambridge)

6. Given the functions $f: x \rightarrow 2x - 5$ and $g: x \rightarrow \frac{4}{x}$, express in similar form:

- (i) fg , (ii) g^2 , (iii) g^{17} , ($g^2 = gg$, etc.).
Express in terms of one or both of f and g .

- (iv) $x \rightarrow \frac{1}{2}(x+5)$, (v) $x \rightarrow \frac{4}{2x-5}$, (vi) $x \rightarrow 4x - 15$. (Cambridge)

2 Vectors

2.1 Basic concepts

Suppose an insect walks directly from a point A to a point B, 30 cm from A, and then to point C, 20 cm from B (see Figure 1). The insect has walked 50 cm altogether but it is clearly not 50 cm from its original position, i.e. $AB + BC \neq AC$. However, it is true to say that, in travelling from A to B and then from B to C, the insect arrives at the same point C as it would have done had it travelled directly from A to C. The position of C, relative to A, is not changed by the route taken by the insect. We can write

$$\vec{AB} + \vec{BC} = \vec{AC}$$

where \vec{AB} indicates that both the length and direction of AB are being considered.

Quantities involving both magnitude and direction are called **vector** quantities. Quantities involving only magnitude are called **scalar** quantities.

Thus \vec{AB} is the vector whose length is equal to that of the line AB and whose direction is that from A to B. The vector \vec{BA} would be the same length as \vec{AB} but will be in the opposite direction, i.e. \vec{BA} will be in the direction from B to A. We write $|\vec{AB}|$ or simply AB for the length of the vector \vec{AB} .

Thus, from Figure 1, $|\vec{AB}| = 30$ cm and $|\vec{BC}| = 20$ cm or simply $AB = 30$ cm and $BC = 20$ cm.

If we wish to find the vector \vec{AC} we could, given the necessary bearings, find its length and direction by the use of trigonometry. Taking the directions of \vec{AB} and \vec{BC} as $N60^\circ E$ and $S10^\circ E$ respectively, we first make a rough sketch:

By the cosine rule

$$AC^2 = 30^2 + 20^2 - 2 \times 30 \times 20 \cos 70^\circ$$

$$\therefore AC = 29.83 \text{ cm}$$

By the sine rule

$$\frac{20}{\sin \theta} = \frac{AC}{\sin 70^\circ}$$

$$\therefore \sin \theta = \frac{20 \sin 70^\circ}{29.83}$$

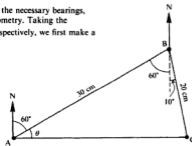
$$\therefore \theta = 39.05^\circ$$

Thus \vec{AC} is of length 29.8 cm and direction $S80.95^\circ E$

Alternatively, a solution could be obtained by making an accurate scale drawing.



Figure 1



Vectors may also be written using single letters written in heavy type:



The arrows on the diagram indicate the directions of the vectors. Thus $\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$.

The length of vector \mathbf{a} is written $|\mathbf{a}|$ or simply as a .

Note: Whilst text books can use heavy type to indicate vectors, this is not easy when writing by hand. The reader is advised to show these single letter vectors underlined.

Thus $\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$ is written as $\underline{c} = \underline{a} + \underline{b}$

Equal vectors

For two vectors to be equal, they must have the same magnitude and the same direction. Thus if we represent vector \mathbf{a} by a line segment of a certain magnitude and direction, then any other line segment of the same magnitude and direction will also equal \mathbf{a} .

Parallel vectors

Two vectors \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{b} are parallel if one is a scalar multiple of the other, i.e. if $\mathbf{a} = \lambda\mathbf{b}$.

If λ is positive, the vectors are parallel and in the same direction: i.e. they are *like* parallel vectors.

If λ is negative, the vectors are parallel and in opposite directions: i.e. they are *unlike* parallel vectors.



Example 1

In the parallelogram OABC, $\overrightarrow{OA} = \mathbf{a}$ and $\overrightarrow{OC} = \mathbf{c}$. The point D lies on AB and is such that AD:DB = 1:2. Express the following vectors in terms of \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{c} :

- (a) \overrightarrow{CB} (b) \overrightarrow{BC} (c) \overrightarrow{AB} (d) \overrightarrow{AD} (e) \overrightarrow{OD} (f) \overrightarrow{DC} .

First draw a diagram:



- (a) \overrightarrow{CB} is the same length as \overrightarrow{OA} and is in the same direction,

$$\therefore \overrightarrow{CB} = \overrightarrow{OA}$$

$$\text{or } \overrightarrow{CB} = \mathbf{a}$$

(b) \overrightarrow{BC} is the same length as \overrightarrow{CB} but is in the opposite direction,

$$\therefore \overrightarrow{BC} = -\overrightarrow{CB}$$

$$\text{or } \overrightarrow{BC} = -\mathbf{a}$$

(c) \overrightarrow{AB} is the same length as \overrightarrow{OC} and is in the same direction,

$$\therefore \overrightarrow{AB} = \mathbf{c}$$

(d) D is one third of the way along AB,

$$\therefore \overrightarrow{AD} = \frac{1}{3}\overrightarrow{AB}$$

$$= \frac{1}{3}\mathbf{c}$$

(e) $\overrightarrow{OD} = \overrightarrow{OA} + \overrightarrow{AD}$

$$= \mathbf{a} + \frac{1}{3}\mathbf{c}$$

(f) $\overrightarrow{DC} = \overrightarrow{DB} + \overrightarrow{BC}$ [or $\overrightarrow{DC} = \overrightarrow{DA} + \overrightarrow{AO} + \overrightarrow{OC}$]

$$= \frac{2}{3}\mathbf{c} + (-\mathbf{a})$$

$$= \frac{2}{3}\mathbf{c} - \mathbf{a}$$

$$= -\frac{1}{3}\mathbf{c} - \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{c}$$

$$= \frac{2}{3}\mathbf{c} - \mathbf{a}$$

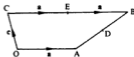
Example 2

OABC is a trapezium with $\overrightarrow{OA} = \mathbf{a}$, $\overrightarrow{OC} = \mathbf{c}$ and \overrightarrow{CB} parallel to and twice as long as \overrightarrow{OA} . The points D and E are the mid-points of AB and CB respectively. Find the following vectors in terms of \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{c} :

(a) \overrightarrow{CA} (b) \overrightarrow{AB} (c) \overrightarrow{ED} .

Hence show that \overrightarrow{CA} is parallel to and twice as long as \overrightarrow{ED} .

First draw a diagram:



$$(a) \quad \overrightarrow{CA} = \overrightarrow{CO} + \overrightarrow{OA} \quad (b) \quad \overrightarrow{AB} = \overrightarrow{AO} + \overrightarrow{OC} + \overrightarrow{CB}$$

$$= -\mathbf{c} + \mathbf{a}$$

$$= -\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{c} + 2\mathbf{a}$$

$$= \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{c}$$

$$(c) \quad \overrightarrow{ED} = \overrightarrow{EB} + \overrightarrow{BD}$$

$$= \overrightarrow{EB} - \frac{1}{2}\overrightarrow{AB}$$

$$= \mathbf{a} - \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{c}) \quad \text{from (b)}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{c})$$

$$\text{Now } \overrightarrow{ED} = \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{c})$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}(-\mathbf{c} + \mathbf{a}) = \frac{1}{2}\overrightarrow{CA} \quad \text{or } 2\overrightarrow{ED} = \overrightarrow{CA}$$

Thus \overrightarrow{CA} is parallel to and twice as long as \overrightarrow{ED} .

Non-parallel vectors

For two non-parallel vectors \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{b} , if $\lambda\mathbf{a} + \mu\mathbf{b} = \alpha\mathbf{a} + \beta\mathbf{b}$ then $\lambda = \alpha$
and $\mu = \beta$

i.e. we may equate the coefficients of vector \mathbf{a} appearing on one side of the equation with those of vector \mathbf{a} appearing on the other side, and similarly for vector \mathbf{b} .

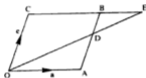
Proof: If $\lambda\mathbf{a} + \mu\mathbf{b} = \alpha\mathbf{a} + \beta\mathbf{b}$
then $\lambda\mathbf{a} - \alpha\mathbf{a} = \beta\mathbf{b} - \mu\mathbf{b}$
 $\mathbf{a}(\lambda - \alpha) = \mathbf{b}(\beta - \mu) \dots [1]$

But $(\lambda - \alpha)$ and $(\beta - \mu)$ are scalars and so statement [1] means that \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{b} are either parallel vectors, which we know they are not,

or $\lambda - \alpha = 0$ and $\beta - \mu = 0$
i.e. $\lambda = \alpha$ and $\beta = \mu$.

Example 3

The diagram shows a parallelogram OABC with $\overrightarrow{OA} = \mathbf{a}$ and $\overrightarrow{OC} = \mathbf{c}$. D is a point on AB such that $AD:DB = 2:1$. OD produced meets CB produced at E. $\overrightarrow{DE} = h\overrightarrow{OD}$ and $\overrightarrow{BE} = k\overrightarrow{CB}$.



Find (a) \overrightarrow{BE} in terms of \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{c} ,
(b) \overrightarrow{DE} in terms of h , \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{c} ,
(c) the values of h and k .

$$(a) \quad \overrightarrow{BE} = k\overrightarrow{CB} \qquad (b) \quad \overrightarrow{DE} = h\overrightarrow{OD} \\ \qquad \qquad \qquad = k\mathbf{a} \qquad \qquad \qquad = h(\mathbf{a} + \frac{1}{3}\mathbf{c})$$

(c) To determine h and k we need a vector equation containing h and k .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now } \overrightarrow{BE} &= \overrightarrow{BD} + \overrightarrow{DE} \\ \text{i.e. } k\mathbf{a} &= -\frac{1}{3}\mathbf{c} + h(\mathbf{a} + \frac{1}{3}\mathbf{c}) \\ \therefore k\mathbf{a} &= -\frac{1}{3}\mathbf{c} + h\mathbf{a} + \frac{1}{3}h\mathbf{c} \\ \text{equating coefficients of } \mathbf{a} \text{ gives } & k = h \\ \text{equating coefficients of } \mathbf{c} \text{ gives } & 0 = -\frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{3}h \\ \therefore & h = \frac{1}{2} \text{ and } k = \frac{1}{2} \end{aligned}$$

Exercise 2A

- A ship is initially at a position A and travels 6 km on a bearing 055° followed by 8 km on a bearing 150° to reach a final position B. Find, by scale drawing, the distance and bearing of B from A.
- An oil tanker travels 200 km on a bearing 160° followed by 300 km on a bearing 200° . Find, by calculation, the final distance (to the nearest km) and bearing

(to the nearest degree) of the tanker from its original position.

- A hiker leaves a position A and walks 550 m in a direction $S60^\circ W$ followed by 700 m in a direction $N10^\circ W$. Find, by calculation, the distance that the hiker is then from A and the direction in which she must walk if she is to return directly to A.

4. Four towns A, B, C and D are such that B is 50 km from A on a bearing 080° , C is 70 km from B on a bearing 120° and D is 40 km from C on a bearing 210° . Find, by scale drawing, the distance and bearing of

(a) D from A, (b) A from D.

5. If $\overrightarrow{AB} = \mathbf{a}$ and $\overrightarrow{CD} = 3\mathbf{a}$ which of the following statements are true?

- (a) \overrightarrow{AB} is parallel to \overrightarrow{CD} ,
 (b) \overrightarrow{AB} is equal to \overrightarrow{CD} ,
 (c) \overrightarrow{AB} is three times as long as \overrightarrow{CD} ,
 (d) \overrightarrow{CD} is three times as long as \overrightarrow{AB} .

6. State which of the following vectors are parallel to the vector $\mathbf{a} + 2\mathbf{b}$.

- (a) $3\mathbf{a} + 6\mathbf{b}$ (b) $3\mathbf{a}$
 (c) $\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$ (d) $\mathbf{a} - 2\mathbf{b}$
 (e) $\sqrt{2}\mathbf{a} + 2\sqrt{2}\mathbf{b}$

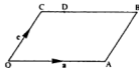
7. State which of the following vectors are parallel to the vector $2\mathbf{a} - 3\mathbf{b}$.

- (a) $\mathbf{a} + 6\mathbf{b}$ (b) $\mathbf{a} - \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{b}$
 (c) $4\mathbf{a} - 6\mathbf{b}$ (d) $2\mathbf{a} + 3\mathbf{b}$
 (e) $3\mathbf{a} - 2\mathbf{b}$

8. Find the values of the scalars h and k in the following vector statements given that \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{b} are not parallel.

- (a) $h\mathbf{a} + 3\mathbf{b} = 2\mathbf{a} + k\mathbf{b}$
 (b) $h\mathbf{a} + k\mathbf{b} = 3\mathbf{b} - 2\mathbf{a}$
 (c) $h\mathbf{a} + 2\mathbf{a} = k\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{b}$
 (d) $\mathbf{a}(h + 3) = \mathbf{b}(k - 1)$
 (e) $h\mathbf{a} - k\mathbf{b} = 5\mathbf{a} - k\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} - k\mathbf{b}$
 (f) $h\mathbf{a} + k\mathbf{a} + 3k\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} + 3h\mathbf{b}$
 (g) $k\mathbf{a} + h\mathbf{a} + k\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{a} - 2h\mathbf{b}$
 (h) $2h\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b} + 12k\mathbf{b} = 2\mathbf{a} - 3k\mathbf{a} + 6h\mathbf{b}$

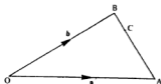
9. The diagram shows a parallelogram OABC with $\overrightarrow{OA} = \mathbf{a}$ and $\overrightarrow{OC} = \mathbf{c}$. D is a point on CB such that $CD:DB = 1:3$.



Express the following vectors in terms of \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{c} .

- (a) \overrightarrow{AB} , (b) \overrightarrow{BA} , (c) \overrightarrow{OB} , (d) \overrightarrow{OD} ,
 (e) \overrightarrow{AD} .

10. The diagram shows a triangle OAB with $\overrightarrow{OA} = \mathbf{a}$ and $\overrightarrow{OB} = \mathbf{b}$. C is a point on AB such that $AC:CB = 3:1$.



Express the following vectors in terms of \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{b} .

- (a) \overrightarrow{AB} , (b) \overrightarrow{AC} , (c) \overrightarrow{CB} , (d) \overrightarrow{OC} .

11. OABC is a trapezium with $\overrightarrow{OA} = \mathbf{a}$, $\overrightarrow{OC} = \mathbf{c}$ and $\overrightarrow{CB} = 3\mathbf{a}$. D is the mid-point of AB. Express the following vectors in terms of \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{c} .

- (a) \overrightarrow{OB} , (b) \overrightarrow{AB} , (c) \overrightarrow{OD} , (d) \overrightarrow{CD} .

12. OAB is a triangle with $\overrightarrow{OA} = \mathbf{a}$ and $\overrightarrow{OB} = \mathbf{b}$. C is a point on AB such that $AC:CB = 1:2$ and D is a point on OB such that $OD:DB = 2:1$. Express the following vectors in terms of \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{b} .

- (a) \overrightarrow{AB} , (b) \overrightarrow{AC} , (c) \overrightarrow{DC} .

13. OABC is a parallelogram with $\overrightarrow{OA} = \mathbf{a}$ and $\overrightarrow{OC} = \mathbf{c}$. D is a point on OC such that $OD:DC = 1:2$ and E is a point on AC such that $AE:EC = 2:1$. Show that OB is parallel to and three times as long as DE.

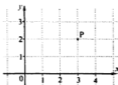
14. OABC is a parallelogram with $\overrightarrow{OA} = \mathbf{a}$ and $\overrightarrow{OC} = \mathbf{c}$. D is the mid-point of CB and OD meets AC at E. If $\overrightarrow{OE} = h\overrightarrow{OD}$ and $\overrightarrow{AE} = k\overrightarrow{AC}$ find:

- (a) \overrightarrow{OE} in terms of h , \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{c} ,
 (b) \overrightarrow{AE} in terms of k , \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{c} ,
 (c) the values of h and k .

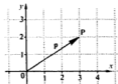
15. OABC is a trapezium with $\overrightarrow{OA} = 3\mathbf{a}$, $\overrightarrow{OC} = \mathbf{c}$ and $\overrightarrow{CB} = 2\mathbf{a}$. D is a point on AB such that $AD:DB = 3:1$ and OD crosses CA at E. If $\overrightarrow{AE} = h\overrightarrow{AC}$ and $\overrightarrow{OE} = k\overrightarrow{OD}$ find the values of h and k .

2.2 Position vectors and unit vectors

As we saw in section 1.5, the position of any point in a plane can be stated in terms of an ordered pair (x, y) , the coordinates of the point. This ordered pair gives the perpendicular distance from the point to each of the coordinate axes. The point P in the diagram has coordinates $(3, 2)$ with respect to the origin O .



We could also define the point P by giving the distance and direction of P from the origin i.e. by stating the vector \vec{OP} . This vector is called the **position vector** of P .

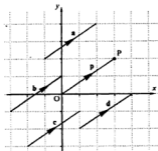


In addition to writing this position vector as \vec{OP} or as a single letter, say \mathbf{p} , it can also be expressed in terms of its horizontal and vertical **components**, in one of the following ways:

- (i) As a column matrix, $\vec{OP} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$
- (ii) By using **unit vectors**. A unit vector is a vector of length one unit in a given direction. If we denote a horizontal unit vector by \mathbf{i} and a vertical unit vector by \mathbf{j} then $\vec{OP} = 3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$.
(If a third dimension is required, we use \mathbf{k} to represent a unit vector at right angles to the plane containing \mathbf{i} and \mathbf{j} . Chapter 17 covers three-dimensional vectors.)

If we represent the vector $3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$ by a line segment of the required length and direction, then any other line segment of the same length and direction will also represent the vector $3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$. Thus in the diagram, \mathbf{a} , \mathbf{b} , \mathbf{c} , \mathbf{d} and \mathbf{p} all equal $3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$. However, with O as the origin, only \mathbf{p} is the **position vector** $3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$ as it is the vector from O to the point $P(3, 2)$.

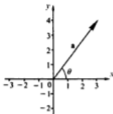
Note also (from Pythagoras' theorem) that a vector $a\mathbf{i} + b\mathbf{j}$ has magnitude $\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$.



Example 4

For each of the vectors shown below:

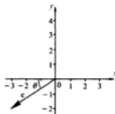
- express the vector in terms of \mathbf{i} and \mathbf{j} , where \mathbf{i} is a unit vector in the Ox direction and \mathbf{j} is a unit vector in the Oy direction,
- find the length of each vector,
- find the angle θ .



- $\mathbf{a} = 3\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}$
- $|\mathbf{a}| = \sqrt{3^2 + 4^2}$
 $= 5$ units
- $\tan \theta = \frac{4}{3}$
 $\therefore \theta = 53.1^\circ$



- $\mathbf{b} = -2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$
- $|\mathbf{b}| = \sqrt{(-2)^2 + 3^2}$
 $= \sqrt{13}$ units
- $\tan \theta = \frac{3}{2}$
 $\therefore \theta = 56.3^\circ$



- $\mathbf{c} = -3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j}$
- $|\mathbf{c}| = \sqrt{(-3)^2 + (-2)^2}$
 $= \sqrt{13}$ units
- $\tan \theta = \frac{2}{3}$
 $\therefore \theta = 33.7^\circ$

Example 5

Find the unit vector in the same direction as the vector $2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$.

$2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$ is a vector of length $\sqrt{5}$ units.

Thus a vector parallel to $2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$ and of length 1 unit will be

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}(2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}) \text{ or } \frac{\sqrt{5}}{5}(2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j})$$

The required unit vector is $\frac{\sqrt{5}}{5}(2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j})$.

Note: Whilst we use \mathbf{i} and \mathbf{j} for the unit vectors in the direction of the x - and y -axes respectively, a unit vector in the direction of some vector \mathbf{a} is usually written $\hat{\mathbf{a}}$.

$$\text{So, } \hat{\mathbf{a}} = \frac{\mathbf{a}}{|\mathbf{a}|}$$

Example 6

Find a vector that is of magnitude 6 units and is parallel to the vector $\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$.

The vector $\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$ has magnitude $\sqrt{1^2 + 1^2} = \sqrt{2}$ units

Thus a vector parallel to $\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$ but of length 6 units will be

$$\frac{6}{\sqrt{2}}(\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j})$$

$$= 3\sqrt{2}\mathbf{i} + 3\sqrt{2}\mathbf{j}$$

Example 7

If A has position vector \mathbf{a} , B has position vector \mathbf{b} and C has position vector \mathbf{c} , find the following vectors in terms of \mathbf{a} , \mathbf{b} and \mathbf{c} :

- (a) \overrightarrow{AB} (b) \overrightarrow{BA} (c) \overrightarrow{BC} (d) \overrightarrow{AC} .

First draw a sketch showing the position vectors:

- (a) $\overrightarrow{AB} = \overrightarrow{AO} + \overrightarrow{OB} = -\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$ or $\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}$
 (b) $\overrightarrow{BA} = \overrightarrow{BO} + \overrightarrow{OA} = -\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a}$ or $\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}$
 (c) $\overrightarrow{BC} = \overrightarrow{BO} + \overrightarrow{OC} = -\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}$ or $\mathbf{c} - \mathbf{b}$
 (d) $\overrightarrow{AC} = \overrightarrow{AO} + \overrightarrow{OC} = -\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{c}$ or $\mathbf{c} - \mathbf{a}$

**Example 8**

Point A has position vector \mathbf{a} , point B has position vector $2\mathbf{b}$ and C is a point such that $\overrightarrow{AC} = 6\mathbf{b} - 3\mathbf{a}$. Show that A, B and C are collinear.

First make a rough sketch with O as this origin:

$$\begin{aligned}\overrightarrow{AB} &= \overrightarrow{AO} + \overrightarrow{OB} \\ &= -\mathbf{a} + 2\mathbf{b} \\ \text{but } \overrightarrow{AC} &= 6\mathbf{b} - 3\mathbf{a} \\ &= 3(-\mathbf{a} + 2\mathbf{b}) \\ &= 3\overrightarrow{AB}\end{aligned}$$

Thus \overrightarrow{AB} and \overrightarrow{AC} are parallel and, as the point A is common to both these vectors, the points A, B and C are collinear.

**Addition and subtraction of vectors in component vector form**

When vectors are expressed in terms of \mathbf{i} and \mathbf{j} , it is easy to add two or more vectors to find their combined or **resultant** vector.

From the vector diagram shown, we know that

$$\overrightarrow{OP} + \overrightarrow{PQ} = \overrightarrow{OQ} \quad \dots [1]$$

Taking \mathbf{i} and \mathbf{j} to be the unit vectors in the directions Ox and Oy respectively, we can see from the diagram that $\overrightarrow{OP} = 2\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}$.

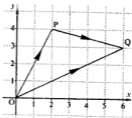
$\overrightarrow{PQ} = 4\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$ and $\overrightarrow{OQ} = 6\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$.

Substitution into [1] gives

$$(2\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}) + (4\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}) = 6\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$$

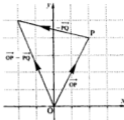
Thus to add vectors expressed in terms of \mathbf{i} and \mathbf{j} , we add the \mathbf{i} components together, $2 + 4 = 6$, and the \mathbf{j} components together, $4 + -1 = 3$.

Applying a similar method for subtraction gives $\overrightarrow{OP} - \overrightarrow{PQ} = (2\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}) - (4\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j})$
 $= -2\mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{j}$



To interpret $\vec{OP} - \vec{PQ}$ we can think of it as $\vec{OP} + (-\vec{PQ})$. The vector $(-\vec{PQ})$ is equal in magnitude to \vec{PQ} but opposite in direction.

So, $\vec{OP} - \vec{PQ}$ means that we must add to \vec{OP} a vector equal in length, but opposite in direction, to that of \vec{PQ} .



Similarly, multiplying a vector expressed in terms of i and j by a scalar is straightforward.

If $\mathbf{a} = 3i + 4j$ then $2\mathbf{a} = 6i + 8j$.

$3\mathbf{a} = 9j + 12j$, etc.

Example 9

If $\mathbf{a} = 3i + 4j$ and $\mathbf{b} = 2i + 8j$ find: (a) $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$, (b) $|\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}|$, (c) $\mathbf{a} - 2\mathbf{b}$, (d) $|\mathbf{a} - 2\mathbf{b}|$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(a) } \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} &= (3i + 4j) + (2i + 8j) \\ &= 5i + 12j \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(b) } |\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}| &= |5i + 12j| \\ &= \sqrt{(5^2 + 12^2)} = 13 \text{ units} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(c) } \mathbf{a} - 2\mathbf{b} &= (3i + 4j) - 2(2i + 8j) \\ &= -i - 12j \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(d) } |\mathbf{a} - 2\mathbf{b}| &= |-i - 12j| \\ &= \sqrt{[(-1)^2 + (-12)^2]} = \sqrt{145} \text{ units} \end{aligned}$$

Example 10

If a point A has position vector $i + 2j$ and B has position vector $5i + j$, find the position vector of the point which divides AB in the ratio 1:–3.

Note first that the ratio involves two numbers of different sign. This indicates that the required point divides AB *externally* rather than *internally*.

The difference between these two cases is illustrated below:

Point P dividing AB internally in the ratio 1:3



In this case the vectors \vec{AP} and \vec{PB} are in the same direction.

Point P dividing AB externally in the ratio 1:3. (By writing this as 1:–3 we need not state that the division is external).



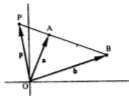
In this case the vectors \vec{AP} and \vec{PB} are in opposite directions. Hence the use of the minus sign in the ratio.

To solve the given question we first draw a diagram showing the points A, B and P, position vectors \mathbf{a} , \mathbf{b} and \mathbf{p} respectively. (Note that the diagram is an aid to calculation and need not be drawn accurately).

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Now } \vec{OP} &= \vec{p} = \vec{OA} + \vec{AP} \\ &= \mathbf{a} + \frac{1}{4}\vec{BA} \\ &= \mathbf{a} + \frac{1}{4}(-\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a}) \\ &= \frac{5}{4}\mathbf{a} - \frac{1}{4}\mathbf{b}\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{But } \mathbf{a} &= \mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} \text{ and } \mathbf{b} = 5\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} \\ \therefore \vec{p} &= \frac{5}{4}(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}) - \frac{1}{4}(5\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}) \\ &= -\mathbf{i} + \frac{9}{4}\mathbf{j}\end{aligned}$$

The point dividing AB in the ratio 1 : -3 has position vector $-\mathbf{i} + \frac{9}{4}\mathbf{j}$.



The general formula for the position vector of a point dividing a line in a given ratio is given by the section theorem:

The point P which divides the line AB in the ratio $\lambda:\mu$ has position vector \mathbf{p} where $\mathbf{p} = \frac{\mu\mathbf{a} + \lambda\mathbf{b}}{\lambda + \mu}$ and \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{b} are the position vectors of A and B respectively.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Applying this formula to example 10 gives } \mathbf{p} &= \frac{-3(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}) + 1(5\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j})}{1 + (-3)} \\ &= -\mathbf{i} + \frac{9}{4}\mathbf{j} \text{ as before.}\end{aligned}$$

Other base vectors in two dimensions

Any vector lying in the plane of the unit vectors \mathbf{i} and \mathbf{j} can be expressed in the form $x\mathbf{i} + y\mathbf{j}$. The unit vectors \mathbf{i} and \mathbf{j} are **base vectors** from which other **coplanar** vectors can be built up. Although it is usually convenient to use \mathbf{i} and \mathbf{j} as the base vectors, any pair of non-parallel coplanar vectors \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{b} could be used instead.

Thus for three coplanar vectors \mathbf{a} , \mathbf{b} and \mathbf{c} , it is possible to express any one of the vectors in terms of the other two.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{i.e. } \mathbf{c} &= \lambda_1\mathbf{a} + \mu_1\mathbf{b} \\ \mathbf{b} &= \lambda_2\mathbf{a} + \mu_2\mathbf{c} \\ \mathbf{a} &= \lambda_3\mathbf{b} + \mu_3\mathbf{c} \quad \text{where } \lambda_1, \mu_1, \lambda_2, \mu_2, \lambda_3 \text{ and } \mu_3 \text{ are} \\ &\quad \text{suitable scalars.}\end{aligned}$$

Example 11

With $\mathbf{a} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$ as base vectors, express $\mathbf{c} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 17 \end{pmatrix}$ and

$\mathbf{d} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$ in the form $\lambda\mathbf{a} + \mu\mathbf{b}$.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{If } \mathbf{c} &= \lambda\mathbf{a} + \mu\mathbf{b} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 17 \end{pmatrix} &= \lambda\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} + \mu\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}\end{aligned}$$

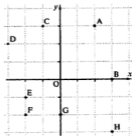
$$\begin{aligned}\text{If } \mathbf{d} &= \lambda\mathbf{a} + \mu\mathbf{b} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} &= \lambda\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} + \mu\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Thus } 5 &= 3\lambda + 2\mu \\ \text{and } 17 &= 5\lambda - \mu \\ \text{Solving simultaneously gives } \lambda &= 3 \text{ and } \mu = -2 \\ \therefore c &= 3a - 2b \end{aligned}$$

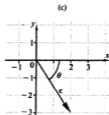
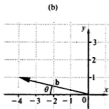
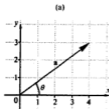
$$\begin{aligned} \text{Thus } 3 &= 3\lambda + 2\mu \\ \text{and } 2 &= 5\lambda - \mu \\ \text{Solving simultaneously gives } \lambda &= \frac{1}{3} \text{ and } \mu = \frac{2}{3} \\ \therefore d &= \frac{1}{3}a + \frac{2}{3}b \end{aligned}$$

Exercise 2B

1. Taking \mathbf{i} and \mathbf{j} to be unit vectors in the directions Ox and Oy respectively, give the position vectors of the points A to H shown in the diagram. Each square in the grid is a unit square and O is the origin.



2. For each of the vectors shown below:
- express each vector in terms of \mathbf{i} and \mathbf{j} where \mathbf{i} is a unit vector in the Ox direction and \mathbf{j} is a unit vector in the Oy direction,
 - find the length of each vector,
 - find the angle θ .



- If $a\mathbf{i} + 8\mathbf{j}$ is parallel to $2\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}$, find the value of a .
- If $\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$ find $\hat{\mathbf{a}}$, a unit vector in the direction of \mathbf{a} .
- If $\mathbf{b} = 3\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$ find $\hat{\mathbf{b}}$, a unit vector in the direction of \mathbf{b} .
- Find a vector that is of magnitude 39 units and is parallel to $5\mathbf{i} + 12\mathbf{j}$.
- Find a vector that is of magnitude $3\sqrt{5}$ units and is parallel to $2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$.
- Find a vector that is of magnitude 2 units and is parallel to $4\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j}$.
- If the point P has position vector $2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$ and point Q has position vector $7\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}$, find: (a) \overrightarrow{PQ} , (b) \overrightarrow{QP} .
- If the point P has position vector $7\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j}$ and point Q has position vector $5\mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{j}$, find: (a) \overrightarrow{PQ} , (b) \overrightarrow{QP} .

11. The point P has position vector $-5\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$ and Q is a point such that $\overrightarrow{PQ} = 7\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$. Find the position vector of Q.
12. The point P has position vector $3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j}$ and Q is a point such that $\overrightarrow{QP} = 2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j}$. Find the position vector of Q.
13. Using $\mathbf{a} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$ as base vectors, express the vectors $\mathbf{c} = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{d} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$ in the form $\lambda\mathbf{a} + \mu\mathbf{b}$.
14. Given that $\mathbf{a} = 3\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{b} = 2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$, find:
(a) $|\mathbf{a}|$, (b) $|\mathbf{b}|$, (c) $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$, (d) $|\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}|$.
15. Given that $\mathbf{a} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}$, find:
(a) $\mathbf{a} + 2\mathbf{b}$, (b) $|\mathbf{a} + 2\mathbf{b}|$, (c) $2\mathbf{a} + 3\mathbf{b}$, (d) $|2\mathbf{a} + 3\mathbf{b}|$.
16. The point A has position vector $3\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$ and point B has position vector $10\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$. Find the position vector of the point which divides AB in the ratio 3:4.
17. The point C has position vector $\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$ and point D has position vector $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$.
Find the position vector of the point which divides CD in the ratio 4: -3.
18. The point K has position vector $3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$ and point L has position vector $\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$. Find the position vector of the point which divides KL in the ratio (a) 4:3, (b) 4:-3.
19. The three points A, B and C have position vectors \mathbf{a} , \mathbf{b} and \mathbf{c} respectively. If $\mathbf{c} = 3\mathbf{b} - 2\mathbf{a}$, show that A, B and C are collinear.
20. The three points A, B and C have position vectors $\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$, $5\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j}$ and $11\mathbf{i} - 6\mathbf{j}$ respectively. Show that A, B and C are collinear.
21. Points A, B, C, D, E and F have position vectors $\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 11 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix}$ respectively. Find which of the points C, D, E and F are collinear with A and B.

2.3 The scalar product

The scalar product of two vectors \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{b} is defined as the product of the magnitudes of the two vectors multiplied by the cosine of the angle between the two vectors.

Writing this scalar product as $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}$ it follows from the definition that

$$\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}| \cos \theta$$

The term **scalar product** is used because $|\mathbf{a}|$, $|\mathbf{b}|$ and $\cos \theta$ are all scalar quantities and so their product will be a scalar quantity.

We read $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}$ as 'a dot b' and for this reason the scalar product may also be referred to as the **dot product**.



Note that the angle between two vectors always refers to the angle between the directions of the vectors when these directions are either both towards their point of intersection or both away from their point of intersection. Thus, in each of the following diagrams, θ is the angle between the two vectors.



Properties of the scalar product

1. From the definition $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}| \cos \theta$, it follows that two perpendicular vectors will have a scalar product of zero.

$$2. \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{a} = |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{a}| \cos 0 \\ = |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{a}|$$

This is usually written $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{a} = |\mathbf{a}|^2$, or just $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{a} = a^2$

3. The scalar product is commutative i.e. $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{a}$

$$\text{Proof: } \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}| \cos \theta \\ = |\mathbf{b}||\mathbf{a}| \cos \theta = \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{a}$$

4. The scalar product is distributive over addition i.e. $\mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}) = \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c}$

Proof: Consider vectors \mathbf{a} , \mathbf{b} , \mathbf{c} and \mathbf{d} with $\mathbf{d} = \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}$

It is clear from the diagram that $OR = OQ + QR$

but $OR = |\mathbf{d}| \cos \beta$, $OQ = |\mathbf{b}| \cos \alpha$ and

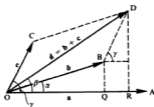
$QR = |\mathbf{c}| \cos \gamma$

$$\therefore |\mathbf{d}| \cos \beta = |\mathbf{b}| \cos \alpha + |\mathbf{c}| \cos \gamma$$

$$\therefore |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{d}| \cos \beta = |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}| \cos \alpha + |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{c}| \cos \gamma$$

So $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{d} = \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c}$

giving $\mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}) = \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c}$ as required.



5. The properties for multiplication by a scalar λ are that:

$$\lambda(\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}) = \mathbf{a} \cdot (\lambda\mathbf{b}) = (\lambda\mathbf{a}) \cdot \mathbf{b} = \lambda|\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}| \cos \theta$$

Example 12

\overrightarrow{OA} and \overrightarrow{OB} are two vectors such that $\overrightarrow{OA} = \mathbf{a} + 2\mathbf{b}$, $\overrightarrow{OB} = 2\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}$ and OA is perpendicular to OB .

(a) Show that $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = \frac{1}{3}(b^2 - a^2)$.

(b) If \mathbf{a} has magnitude 4 units and \mathbf{b} has magnitude 5 units, find the angle between \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{b} .

(a) If OA is perpendicular to OB then $\overrightarrow{OA} \cdot \overrightarrow{OB} = 0$

$$\text{i.e. } (\mathbf{a} + 2\mathbf{b}) \cdot (2\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}) = 0$$

$$\therefore \mathbf{a} \cdot 2\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} + 2\mathbf{b} \cdot 2\mathbf{a} - 2\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{b} = 0$$

$$2a^2 - \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} + 4\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} - 2b^2 = 0$$

$$3\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = 2b^2 - 2a^2$$

$$\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = \frac{1}{3}(b^2 - a^2) \text{ as required.}$$

(b) $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = \frac{1}{3}(b^2 - a^2)$

$$= \frac{1}{3}(25 - 16) = 6 \text{ units}$$

$$\text{but } \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}| \cos \theta$$

$$\therefore 6 = 4 \times 5 \times \cos \theta$$

$$\text{giving } \theta = 72.54^\circ$$

Thus the angle between \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{b} is 72.5° , correct to 1 d.p.

Consider the vectors $\mathbf{a} = x_1\mathbf{i} + y_1\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{b} = x_2\mathbf{i} + y_2\mathbf{j}$.

$$\text{Now } \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = (x_1\mathbf{i} + y_1\mathbf{j}) \cdot (x_2\mathbf{i} + y_2\mathbf{j})$$

$$= x_1x_2\mathbf{i} \cdot \mathbf{i} + x_1y_2\mathbf{i} \cdot \mathbf{j} + y_1x_2\mathbf{j} \cdot \mathbf{i} + y_1y_2\mathbf{j} \cdot \mathbf{j}$$

$$\text{But } \mathbf{i} \cdot \mathbf{i} = \mathbf{j} \cdot \mathbf{j} = 1 \text{ and } \mathbf{i} \cdot \mathbf{j} = \mathbf{j} \cdot \mathbf{i} = 0$$

$$\text{Thus } \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = x_1x_2 + y_1y_2$$

$$\text{Thus, if } \mathbf{a} = x_1\mathbf{i} + y_1\mathbf{j} \text{ and } \mathbf{b} = x_2\mathbf{i} + y_2\mathbf{j}$$

$$\text{then } \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = x_1x_2 + y_1y_2$$

$$= |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}| \cos \theta \text{ where } \theta \text{ is the angle between } \mathbf{a} \text{ and } \mathbf{b}.$$

This result enables us to calculate the angle between two vectors that are given in component form.

Example 13

Find the angle between the vectors \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{b} given that $\mathbf{a} = 3\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{b} = 5\mathbf{i} - 12\mathbf{j}$.

Let θ be the required angle

$$\text{Then } \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}| \cos \theta$$

$$\text{but } \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = (3 \times 5) + (4 \times (-12)), \quad |\mathbf{a}| = \sqrt{(3^2 + 4^2)} \quad \text{and} \quad |\mathbf{b}| = \sqrt{(5^2 + (-12)^2)}$$

$$= -33$$

$$= 5$$

$$= 13$$

$$\text{Thus } -33 = 5 \times 13 \cos \theta$$

$$\text{giving } \theta = 120.51^\circ$$

Thus the angle between \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{b} is 120.5° , correct to 1 d.p.

Example 14

The points A, B, C and D have position vectors $-2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$, $3\mathbf{i} + 8\mathbf{j}$, $7\mathbf{i} + 6\mathbf{j}$ and $7\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j}$ respectively. Show that AC is perpendicular to BD.

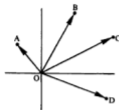
First draw a rough sketch with O as the origin:

$$\begin{aligned}\overline{AC} &= \overline{AO} + \overline{OC} \\ &= -(-2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}) + (7\mathbf{i} + 6\mathbf{j}) \\ &= 9\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\overline{BD} &= \overline{BO} + \overline{OD} \\ &= -(3\mathbf{i} + 8\mathbf{j}) + (7\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j}) \\ &= 4\mathbf{i} - 12\mathbf{j}\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \overline{AC} \cdot \overline{BD} &= (9\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}) \cdot (4\mathbf{i} - 12\mathbf{j}) \\ &= (9 \times 4) + (3 \times (-12)) \\ &= 0\end{aligned}$$

Thus AC is perpendicular to BD.


Projection of one vector onto another

We have already seen that a vector can be expressed in terms of its components in the directions of x - and y -axes. The scalar product can be used to find the component of one vector in the direction of some other vector.

Suppose we wish to find the component of vector \mathbf{p} , in the direction of vector \mathbf{q} . The required component will be the projection of vector \mathbf{p} onto \mathbf{q} i.e. $|\mathbf{p}| \cos \theta$

$$\text{but } |\mathbf{p}| \cos \theta = \frac{\mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{q}}{|\mathbf{q}|}$$

Thus the component of \mathbf{p} in the direction of \mathbf{q} (or the projection of \mathbf{p} onto \mathbf{q}) is given by $\frac{\mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{q}}{|\mathbf{q}|}$. This is also referred to as the **resolved part** of \mathbf{p} in the direction of \mathbf{q} .


Example 15

Find the resolved part of vector $\mathbf{a} = 2\mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{j}$ in the direction of the vector $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Resolved part} &= |\mathbf{a}| \cos \theta \\ &= \frac{\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}}{|\mathbf{b}|} \\ &= \frac{(2 \times 1) + (5 \times 1)}{\sqrt{(1^2 + 1^2)}} \\ &= \frac{7}{\sqrt{2}} \text{ or } \frac{7\sqrt{2}}{2}\end{aligned}$$



Exercise 2C

- If $\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{c} = 2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{d} = 6\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$, find which two of these vectors are perpendicular to each other.
- If $\mathbf{e} = -\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{f} = \mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{g} = -3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{h} = 6\mathbf{i} - 9\mathbf{j}$, find which two of these vectors are perpendicular to each other.
- Find the angle between the vectors \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{b} given that $\mathbf{a} = 3\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{b} = 5\mathbf{i} + 12\mathbf{j}$. (Give your answer to the nearest degree.)
- Find the angle between the vectors \mathbf{c} and \mathbf{d} given that $\mathbf{c} = 5\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{d} = 2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$. (Give your answer to the nearest degree.)
- Find the angle between the vectors \mathbf{e} and \mathbf{f} given that $\mathbf{e} = -\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{f} = 2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$. (Give your answer to the nearest degree.)
- If the angle between the vectors $\mathbf{c} = a\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{d} = 3\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$ is 45° find the two possible values of a .
- If $\mathbf{a} = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$ write down a relationship between x and y for each of the following cases:

(a) \mathbf{a} is of magnitude 5 units,	(b) \mathbf{a} is perpendicular to \mathbf{b} ,
(c) \mathbf{a} is parallel to \mathbf{b} ,	(d) $(\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b})$ is perpendicular to the vector $\begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$.
- The points A, B, C and D have position vectors $5\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$, $-3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$, $-3\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{i} - 6\mathbf{j}$ respectively. Show that AC is perpendicular to BD.
- The points E, F and G have position vectors $2\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{i} + 6\mathbf{j}$ and $-7\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}$. Show that the triangle EFG is right-angled at F.
- The points A, B, C and D have position vectors \mathbf{a} , \mathbf{b} , \mathbf{c} and \mathbf{d} respectively where $\mathbf{a} = -2\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{b} = -2\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{c} = 3\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{d} = 4\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$. If AC is perpendicular to BD, find the value of y .
- The points A, B, C and D have position vectors $-2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$, $7\mathbf{j}$, $3\mathbf{i} + 6\mathbf{j}$ and $x\mathbf{i} + y\mathbf{j}$ respectively. If $|\overrightarrow{AC}| = |\overrightarrow{BD}|$ and AC is perpendicular to BD, find the two possible values of x and the corresponding values of y .
- If $\mathbf{a} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix}$ find:

(a) a unit vector parallel to \mathbf{a} ,	(b) a unit vector perpendicular to \mathbf{a} .
--	---
- If $\mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$ find:

(a) a vector \mathbf{c} , parallel to \mathbf{b} and of magnitude 10 units,	(b) a vector \mathbf{d} , perpendicular to \mathbf{b} and of magnitude $15\sqrt{2}$ units.
---	--
- The points A, B and C have position vectors $4\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$ and $-5\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$ respectively. Find:

(a) \overrightarrow{AB} ,	(b) \overrightarrow{BC} ,	(c) \overrightarrow{CA} ,	(d) the angles of the triangle ABC giving your answers to the nearest degree.
-----------------------------	-----------------------------	-----------------------------	---
- If $\overrightarrow{OA} = 2\mathbf{a} + 3\mathbf{b}$ and $\overrightarrow{OB} = 3\mathbf{a} - 2\mathbf{b}$ show that $\overrightarrow{OA} \cdot \overrightarrow{OB} = 6a^2 + 5\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} - 6b^2$.
- If $\overrightarrow{OC} = 2\mathbf{a} + 3\mathbf{b}$ and $\overrightarrow{OD} = 2\mathbf{a} - 3\mathbf{b}$ show that $\overrightarrow{OC} \cdot \overrightarrow{OD} = 4a^2 - 9b^2$.
- If $\overrightarrow{OA} = 3\mathbf{a} + 2\mathbf{b}$ and $\overrightarrow{OB} = 2\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}$

(a) show that $\overrightarrow{OA} \cdot \overrightarrow{OB} = 6a^2 + \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} - 2b^2$
(b) find $\overrightarrow{OA} \cdot \overrightarrow{OB}$ given that $\mathbf{a} = 2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{b} = 2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$.

18. \vec{OC} and \vec{OD} are two vectors such that $\vec{OC} = \mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}$ and $\vec{OD} = 2\mathbf{a} + 3\mathbf{b}$. If OC is perpendicular to OD show that $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = 3b^2 - 2a^2$.
- If \mathbf{a} has magnitude 7 units and \mathbf{b} has magnitude 5 units, find the angle between \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{b} giving your answer to the nearest degree.
19. Find the resolved part of the vector $\mathbf{a} = 4\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$ in the direction of the vector $\mathbf{b} = 3\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}$.
20. Find the component of the vector $\mathbf{c} = 3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j}$ in the direction of the vector $\mathbf{d} = 2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j}$.
21. Find the length of the projection of the vector $\mathbf{e} = 5\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$ onto the vector $\mathbf{f} = 2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$.
22. The vectors \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{b} are of equal magnitude k ($k \neq 0$) and the angle between \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{b} is 60° . If $\mathbf{c} = 3\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}$ and $\mathbf{d} = 2\mathbf{a} - 10\mathbf{b}$,
- show that \mathbf{c} and \mathbf{d} are perpendicular vectors
 - find the magnitudes of \mathbf{c} and \mathbf{d} in terms of k .

2.4 Geometrical proofs by vector methods

The vector properties covered in this chapter and the skills we have now acquired in manipulating and interpreting vector expressions can be used to prove certain geometrical facts as the following example and the questions of Exercise 2D will show.

Example 16

(The mid-points of the sides of any quadrilateral form the vertices of a parallelogram).

O is the origin and points A, B and C have position vectors \mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b} and \mathbf{c} respectively. Points P, Q, R and S are the mid-points of OA, AB, BC and CO respectively. Find the following vectors in terms of \mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b} and \mathbf{c}

(a) \vec{AB} , (b) \vec{BC} , (c) \vec{PQ} , (d) \vec{QR} , (e) \vec{SR} , (f) \vec{PS} .

Hence show that $PQRS$ is parallelogram.

First make a rough sketch:



$$(a) \vec{AB} = \vec{AO} + \vec{OB} \\ = -\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$$

$$(b) \vec{BC} = \vec{BO} + \vec{OC} \\ = -\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}$$

$$(c) \vec{PQ} = \vec{PA} + \vec{AQ} \\ = \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{a} + \frac{1}{2}(-\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) \\ = \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{b}$$

$$(d) \vec{QR} = \vec{QB} + \vec{BR} \\ = \frac{1}{2}(-\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) + \frac{1}{2}(-\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}) \\ = -\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{a} + \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{c}$$

$$(e) \vec{SR} = \vec{SC} + \vec{CR} \\ = \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{c} + \frac{1}{2}(-\mathbf{c} + \mathbf{b}) \\ = \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{b}$$

$$(f) \vec{PS} = \vec{PO} + \vec{OS} \\ = -\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{a} + \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{c}$$

Parts (c), (d), (e) and (f) above show that $\vec{PQ} = \vec{SR}$ and $\vec{QR} = \vec{PS}$, i.e. the opposite sides of quadrilateral $PQRS$ are equal and parallel. Thus $PQRS$ is a parallelogram.

Exercise 2D

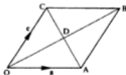
1. (The diagonals of a parallelogram bisect each other).

In the diagram, OABC is a parallelogram with $\vec{OA} = \mathbf{a}$ and $\vec{OC} = \mathbf{c}$.



If G is the mid-point of AC and H is the mid-point of OB, find the following vectors in terms of \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{c}

- (a) \vec{OB} , (b) \vec{OH} , (c) \vec{AG} , (d) \vec{OG} .
Hence show that G and H are concurrent.
2. (The diagonals of a rhombus bisect each other at right angles).
The diagram shows a parallelogram OABC with $\vec{OA} = \mathbf{a}$ and $\vec{OC} = \mathbf{c}$; AC and OB intersect at the point D such that $\vec{OD} = h\vec{OB}$ and $\vec{AD} = k\vec{AC}$.



Show that $h = k = \frac{1}{2}$.

If the parallelogram is a rhombus, i.e. $|\mathbf{a}| = |\mathbf{c}|$, show that AC is perpendicular to OB. (Hint: find $\vec{AC} \cdot \vec{OB}$).

3. (The medians of a triangle intersect at a point that is two-thirds of the way along each median measured from the vertex). (Method one).
OAB is a triangle with $\vec{OA} = \mathbf{a}$ and $\vec{OB} = \mathbf{b}$; C is the mid-point of OB, D is the mid-point of AB and E is the mid-point of OA.
(a) If F is a point on OD such that $\vec{OF} = \frac{1}{3}\vec{OD}$ find \vec{OF} in terms of \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{b} .

(b) If G is a point on AC such that $\vec{AG} = \frac{1}{3}\vec{AC}$ find \vec{OG} in terms of \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{b} .

(c) If H is a point on EB such that $\vec{BH} = \frac{1}{3}\vec{BE}$, find \vec{OH} in terms of \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{b} .

(d) Hence show that F, G, and H are concurrent.

4. (The medians of a triangle intersect at a point that is two-thirds of the way along each median measured from the vertex). (Method 2).

OAB is a triangle with $\vec{OA} = \mathbf{a}$ and $\vec{OB} = \mathbf{b}$; C is the mid-point of OB, D is the mid-point of AB and E is the mid-point of OA; OD and AC intersect at F.

If $\vec{AF} = h\vec{AC}$ and $\vec{OF} = k\vec{OD}$ show that:

- (a) $h = k = \frac{2}{3}$,
(b) B, F and E are collinear with $\vec{BF} = \frac{1}{3}\vec{BE}$.
5. (Cosine rule and Pythagoras' theorem).

OAB is a triangle and θ is the angle between \vec{OA} and \vec{OB} .

- (a) By finding $\vec{AB} \cdot \vec{AB}$ show that $AB^2 = OA^2 + OB^2 - 2(OA)(OB)\cos\theta$
(b) If triangle OAB is right-angled at O show that $AB^2 = OA^2 + OB^2$
6. (If a straight line is drawn parallel to one side of a triangle, it divides the other two sides in the same ratio).
In the triangle OAB, a line is drawn parallel to AB, cutting OA at C and OB at D.
If $\vec{CD} = \lambda\vec{AB}$, $\vec{OC} = h\vec{OA}$ and $\vec{OD} = k\vec{OB}$, show that $h = k = \lambda$.

7. (The angle in a semicircle is a right angle).
AB is the diameter of a circle centre O; C is a point on the circumference of the circle. If $\vec{OA} = \mathbf{a}$ and $\vec{OC} = \mathbf{c}$ prove that angle ACB is a right angle.

8. (Apollonius' theorem: the sum of the squares on two sides of a triangle is equal to twice the square on half the third side plus twice the square on the median which bisects the third side).

OAB is a triangle and point C is the mid-point of AB. Show that:

- (a) $4\vec{OC} \cdot \vec{OC} = OA^2 + OB^2 + 2\vec{OA} \cdot \vec{OB}$
(b) $4\vec{AC} \cdot \vec{AC} = OA^2 + OB^2 - 2\vec{OA} \cdot \vec{OB}$
(c) $2OC^2 + 2AC^2 = OA^2 + OB^2$

2.5 The vector equation of a straight line

A straight line is uniquely defined if we are given the position of one point that lies on the line and the direction of the line. In terms of vectors this means that a line is defined if we know:

- (i) a vector that is parallel to the line,
and (ii) the position vector of a point on the line.

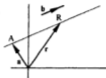
Consider the line which passes through a point A, position vector \mathbf{a} , and is parallel to a vector \mathbf{b} .

To find the vector equation of this line, we consider some general point R on the line.

Suppose that R has position vector \mathbf{r} .

$$\begin{aligned} \overrightarrow{AR} \text{ is parallel to } \mathbf{b}. \quad \text{Thus} \quad \overrightarrow{AR} &= \lambda \mathbf{b} \\ \text{but} \quad \overrightarrow{AR} &= -\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{r} \\ \therefore \quad -\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{r} &= \lambda \mathbf{b} \\ \text{or} \quad \mathbf{r} &= \mathbf{a} + \lambda \mathbf{b} \end{aligned}$$

The equation $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{a} + \lambda \mathbf{b}$ is the vector equation for a line that is parallel to a vector \mathbf{b} and which passes through a point with position vector \mathbf{a} . The position vector \mathbf{r} of any point lying on the line will satisfy this equation.



Example 17

Find the vector equation of the straight line that is parallel to the vector $2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$ and which passes through the point with position vector $3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$.

The vector equation is $\mathbf{r} = 3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + \lambda(2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j})$ where \mathbf{r} is the position vector of some general point on the line and λ is a scalar.

Example 18

Find the vector equation of the straight line that passes through the points

A, B and C given that the position vectors of A, B and C are $\begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 9 \end{pmatrix}$ respectively.

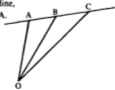
To obtain the vector equation, we need a vector that is parallel to the line, for example \overrightarrow{BC} , and the position vector of one point on the line, say A.

Thus the vector equation of the line is

$$\mathbf{r} = \overrightarrow{OA} + \lambda \overrightarrow{BC}$$

$$\text{but } \overrightarrow{OA} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } \overrightarrow{BC} = -\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 9 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Thus the required vector equation is $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$



It should be noticed in Example 18 that $\mathbf{r} = \overline{OB} + \lambda\overline{BC}$, $\mathbf{r} = \overline{OC} + \lambda\overline{BA}$, $\mathbf{r} = \overline{OB} + \lambda\overline{AC}$, etc. would all have given vector equations of the line. Although each equation might appear different, each would give the position vector of any point on the line by the substitution of a suitable value for λ .

Example 19

Show that the point with position vector $\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$ lies on the line L , vector equation $\mathbf{r} = 4\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j})$.

The position vector of any point on a line must satisfy the equation of the line.

Thus if $\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$ lies on L , there must exist some value of λ such that:

$$\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} = 4\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j})$$

Equating coefficients of \mathbf{i} and \mathbf{j} gives $1 = 4 + \lambda$ and $2 = -1 - \lambda$ respectively.

The first of these two equations gives $\lambda = -3$ which is consistent with $2 = -1 - \lambda$.

Thus the point with position vector $\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$ does lie on the line L .

Example 20

Find the position vector of the point of intersection of the lines L_1 and L_2 given that L_1 and L_2 have vector equations $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j})$ and $\mathbf{r} = 6\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + \mu(\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j})$ respectively.

If the required point has position vector \mathbf{p} , then this must satisfy the vector equations of both lines

$$\text{i.e.} \quad \mathbf{p} = 2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j})$$

$$\text{and} \quad \mathbf{p} = 6\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + \mu(\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j})$$

$$\therefore 2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}) = 6\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + \mu(\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j})$$

Thus, equating coefficients: $2 + \lambda = 6 + \mu$ and $1 + 3\lambda = -1 - 4\mu$

Solving these equations simultaneously gives $\lambda = 2$ and $\mu = -2$ and hence $\mathbf{p} = 4\mathbf{i} + 7\mathbf{j}$.

The given lines intersect at the point with position vector $4\mathbf{i} + 7\mathbf{j}$.

Example 21

Find the vector equation of the straight line that passes through the point with position vector $2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$ and which is perpendicular to the line $\mathbf{r} = 3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j})$.

The given line is parallel to the vector $\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j}$. If the required line is parallel to a vector $a\mathbf{i} + b\mathbf{j}$, it follows that

$$(a\mathbf{i} + b\mathbf{j}) \cdot (\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j}) = 0 \quad (\text{for the 2 lines to be perpendicular})$$

$$\text{so} \quad a - 2b = 0$$

$$\text{hence} \quad a = 2b$$

The required line will therefore be parallel to any vector of the form $b(2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j})$.

Taking $2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$ as one such vector, the required vector equation will be:

$$\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + \lambda(2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}).$$

Example 22

Find the perpendicular distance from the point A, position vector $4\mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{j}$, to the line L, vector equation $\mathbf{r} = -3\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j})$.

Let P be the point where the perpendicular from A meets the line L, and let P have position vector \mathbf{p} . (See diagram on right).

If the value of λ at P is λ_1 then

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{p} &= -3\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \lambda_1(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}) \\ &= (-3 + \lambda_1)\mathbf{i} + (1 + 2\lambda_1)\mathbf{j}\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{but } \overrightarrow{AP} &= -\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{p} \\ &= -(4\mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{j}) + (-3 + \lambda_1)\mathbf{i} + (1 + 2\lambda_1)\mathbf{j} \\ &= (-7 + \lambda_1)\mathbf{i} + (-4 + 2\lambda_1)\mathbf{j}\end{aligned}$$

But \overrightarrow{AP} is perpendicular to L and is therefore perpendicular to the vector $\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$.

$$\text{So } [(-7 + \lambda_1)\mathbf{i} + (-4 + 2\lambda_1)\mathbf{j}] \cdot (\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}) = 0$$

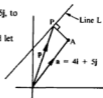
$$\text{i.e. } -7 + \lambda_1 - 8 + 4\lambda_1 = 0$$

$$\text{giving } \lambda_1 = 3$$

$$\therefore \overrightarrow{AP} = -4\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$$

$$\text{and } |\overrightarrow{AP}| = \sqrt{4^2 + 2^2} = 2\sqrt{5} \text{ units}$$

The perpendicular distance from the point A to the line L is $2\sqrt{5}$ units.


Exercise 2E

- State the vector equation of the straight line which is parallel to $2\mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{j}$ and which passes through the point with position vector $3\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$.
- State the vector equation of the straight line which passes through the point A, position vector $\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$, and which is parallel to $4\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$.
- State the vector equation of the straight line which passes through the point B, position vector $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$, and which is parallel to the vector $\begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$.
- State the vector equation of the straight line which is parallel to the vector $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$ and which passes through the point with position vector $\begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$.
- Find the vector that is parallel to the line $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j})$ and is of magnitude $5\sqrt{5}$ units.
- Find the two vectors that are perpendicular to the line $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + \lambda(3\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j})$ and are of magnitude 5 units.
- Show that the point with position vector $\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$ lies on the line with vector equation $\mathbf{r} = 5\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \lambda(2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j})$.
- Points A, B and C have position vectors $\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 9 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$ respectively.

Find which of these points lie on the line with vector equation $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$.

- Points D, E and F have position vectors $5\mathbf{i} - 5\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{i} + 7\mathbf{j}$ respectively. Find which of these points lie on the line with vector equation $\mathbf{r} = 3\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \lambda(-\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j})$.

10. If the point A, position vector $a\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$, lies on the line L, vector equation $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{j} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j})$, find the value of a .
11. Points A and B have position vectors $3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j}$ and $4\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$ respectively.
Find: (a) \overline{AB} in the form of $a\mathbf{i} + b\mathbf{j}$
(b) the vector equation of the straight line that passes through A and B.
12. For each of the following pairs of lines, state whether the lines are parallel and, for those that are not, find the position vector of their point of intersection.
(a) $\mathbf{r} = -2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \lambda(3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j})$, $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + \mu(\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j})$
(b) $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j})$, $\mathbf{r} = 3\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + \mu(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j})$
(c) $\mathbf{r} = 3\mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{j} + \lambda(-\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j})$, $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \mu(\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j})$
(d) $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + \lambda(2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j})$, $\mathbf{r} = 5\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + \mu(2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j})$
13. Show that the lines L_1 , vector equation $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}$, and L_2 , vector equation $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix} + \mu \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$, are perpendicular and find the position vector of their point of intersection.
14. Find the acute angle between the lines with vector equations $\mathbf{r} = 2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j})$ and $\mathbf{r} = 3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + \lambda(4\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j})$, giving your answer to the nearest degree.
15. The lines L_1 and L_2 have vector equations $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{a} + \lambda(\mathbf{a} - 2\mathbf{b})$ and $\mathbf{r} = 3\mathbf{a} + \mu(-\mathbf{a} + 3\mathbf{b})$ respectively. Given that the lines lie in the same plane and are not parallel, find the position vector of their point of intersection in terms of \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{b} .
16. The lines L_1 and L_2 intersect at A and the lines L_1 and L_3 intersect at B. Find \overline{AB} and $|\overline{AB}|$ given that L_1 , L_2 and L_3 have vector equations as follows:
 $L_1: \mathbf{r} = \mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + \lambda(\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j})$
 $L_2: \mathbf{r} = \mathbf{i} + \mu(5\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j})$
 $L_3: \mathbf{r} = 4\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + \eta(2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j})$
17. For each of the following parts, find the perpendicular distance from the given point to the given line:
(a) the point with position vector $\mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{j}$ and the line $\mathbf{r} = -2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \lambda(2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j})$
(b) the point with position vector $2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$ and the line $\mathbf{r} = -2\mathbf{j} + \lambda(4\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j})$
(c) the point with position vector $\begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$ and the line $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$.

Exercise 2F Examination questions

1. (a) E is the centre of the rectangle ABCD and $\overline{AB} = \mathbf{a}$, $\overline{BC} = \mathbf{b}$. Express in terms of \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{b} the vectors:
(i) \overline{AC} (ii) \overline{CD} (iii) \overline{BD} (iv) \overline{EB} (v) \overline{EA} .
- (b) The position vectors of P and Q are $5\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j}$ respectively referred to an origin O of Oj.
Calculate: (i) the position vector of P relative to Q and hence the magnitude of \overline{PQ} .
(ii) the magnitude of $2\overline{OP} - 4\overline{OQ}$. (S.U.J.B)

2. The position vectors of three points A, B and C relative to an origin O are \mathbf{p} , $3\mathbf{q} - \mathbf{p}$, and $9\mathbf{q} - 5\mathbf{p}$ respectively.
 Show that the points A, B and C lie on the same straight line, and state the ratio AB:BC.
 Given that OBCD is a parallelogram and that E is the point such that $\overline{DB} = \frac{1}{2}\overline{DE}$, find the position vectors of D and E relative to O. (Cambridge)
3. Given that $\overline{OA} = \mathbf{a}$, $\overline{OB} = \mathbf{b}$, $\overline{OP} = \frac{1}{3}\overline{OA}$ and that Q is the midpoint of AB, express \overline{AB} and \overline{PQ} in terms of \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{b} .
 PQ is produced to meet OB produced at R, so that $\overline{QR} = n\overline{PQ}$ and $\overline{BR} = kb$. Express \overline{QR} (i) in terms of n , \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{b} ,
 (ii) in terms of k , \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{b} .
 Hence find the value of n and of k . (Cambridge)
4. The points A, B and C have position vectors \mathbf{a} , \mathbf{b} and \mathbf{c} respectively referred to an origin O.
 (a) Given that the point X lies on AB produced so that AB:BX = 2:1, find \mathbf{x} , the position vector of X, in terms of \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{b} .
 (b) If Y lies on BC, between B and C so that BY:YC = 1:3, find \mathbf{y} , the position vector of Y, in terms of \mathbf{b} and \mathbf{c} .
 (c) Given that Z is the mid-point of AC, show that X, Y and Z are collinear.
 (d) Calculate XY:YZ. (London)
5. Given that $\mathbf{a} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}$, $\mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{c} = \begin{pmatrix} -22 \\ -11 \end{pmatrix}$, find:
 (i) a unit vector perpendicular to \mathbf{a} ,
 (ii) the value of the constants m and n for which $m\mathbf{a} + n\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{c}$.
 Evaluate the scalar product of \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{b} and hence find the cosine of the angle between the direction of \mathbf{a} and the direction of \mathbf{b} . (Cambridge)
6. The position vectors of the points A and B with respect to the origin O are $2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$ and $-\mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{j}$ respectively. Find the position vector of the point C such that $\overline{AC} = 2\overline{AB}$.
 Calculate the angle between the vectors \overline{AB} and \overline{OB} . (A.E.B.)
7. The position vectors of points A, B, C relative to an origin O are $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$ respectively.
 Write down the vectors representing \overline{AB} , \overline{AC} and \overline{BC} .
 Use vector methods to calculate: (i) \widehat{BAC} ,
 (ii) \widehat{ABC} .
 State the special property of $\triangle ABC$ and deduce its area. (Cambridge)

8. (a) Show that if $(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) \cdot (\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}) = 0$ then $|\mathbf{a}| = |\mathbf{b}|$.
Give a geometrical example of this fact.
- (b) The diagonals AC, BD of a quadrilateral ABCD bisect each other and are represented by the vectors $3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$ and $2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j}$ respectively. Determine, *without scale drawing*, the shape of the quadrilateral ABCD. (A.E.B.)
9. The position vectors of A and B relative to an origin O are $\begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix} q \\ r \end{pmatrix}$ respectively where $q \neq 0$.
- (a) Find an equation connecting p , q and r in each of the cases
- O, A, B are collinear,
 - $|\overrightarrow{OB}| = |\overrightarrow{AB}|$.
- (b) Use the scalar product of two vectors to obtain an expression for $\cos \angle AOB$ in terms of p , q and r . (Cambridge)
10. Find the position vector of the point of intersection, P, of the line with equation $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + s \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$ and the line joining the points with position vectors $\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$. Find the distance between P and the origin. (A.E.B.)
11. The position vectors of the points A and B with respect to the origin O are $2\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}$ and $6\mathbf{i} + 7\mathbf{j}$ respectively.
- Find a vector equation for the line AB, and show that this line passes through the point with position vector $14\mathbf{i} + 13\mathbf{j}$.
 - The position vector of the point C is $3\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j}$. Find a vector equation for the line OC, and show that OC is at right angles to AB.
 - Find the position vector of the point of intersection of OC and AB, and hence find the perpendicular distance from O to AB. (A.E.B.)

3

Coordinate geometry I

Coordinate geometry is the study of the geometric properties of points, straight lines and curves using algebraic methods. From earlier work the reader is familiar with the idea of a point P in a plane being defined by stating the perpendicular distances from P to two axes. The point P has coordinates (x, y) or, in vector terms P has position vector $\vec{OP} = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$ or $x\mathbf{i} + y\mathbf{j}$, where O is the origin.

3.1 Loci

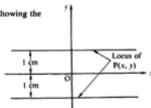
Consider the x - y plane, i.e. the plane containing the coordinate axes Ox and Oy . If $P(x, y)$ is a point whose position is fixed by some law, then the set of all such points obeying the law is said to be the **locus** of P .



Example 1

The point $P(x, y)$ is 1 cm from the x -axis. Draw a diagram showing the locus of P .

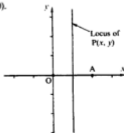
The set of all such points $P(x, y)$ would together form two lines, one on each side of the x -axis and 1 cm from it.



Example 2

The point $P(x, y)$ is equidistant from the origin and the point $A(2, 0)$. Draw a diagram showing the locus of P .

The set of all points $P(x, y)$ that are equidistant from the origin and the point $A(2, 0)$ would together form a line, perpendicular to the x -axis and passing through the point $(1, 0)$, i.e. the locus is the perpendicular bisector of OA .

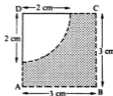


Example 3

ABCD is a square of side 3 cm. The point $P(x, y)$ lies inside the square but is more than 2 cm from D.

Draw a diagram showing ABCD and the locus of P.

The set of all points $P(x, y)$ will form the shaded area shown in the diagram. Notice that broken lines are used for the boundary of the area as the locus does not include these boundary lines.

**Exercise 3A**

1. A point $P(x, y)$ is 2 cm from the origin O. Draw a diagram showing O and the locus of P.
2. Point $P(x, y)$ is more than 2 cm but less than 3 cm away from the origin O. Draw a diagram showing O and the locus of P.
3. A point $P(x, y)$ is equidistant from the point $A(1, 0)$ and $B(0, 1)$. Draw a diagram showing A, B and the locus of P.

In questions 4 to 7, assume that the points A, B, C and D lie in the x - y plane.

4. AB is a straight line of length 3 cm. Draw a diagram showing the line AB and the locus of the point $P(x, y)$ given that P is a distance of 2 cm from the nearest point on AB.
5. AB is a straight line of length 4 cm and point $P(x, y)$ is such that triangle PAB has an area of 6 cm. Explain in words the locus of P.
6. ABCD is a square of side 1 cm. $P(x, y)$ is a point that is 2 cm from the nearest point on the perimeter of ABCD. Draw a diagram showing ABCD and the locus of P.
7. ABCD is a square of side 3 cm. $P(x, y)$ is a point that is 1 cm from the nearest point on the perimeter of ABCD. Draw a diagram showing ABCD and the locus of P.

In the remainder of this chapter we shall obtain certain useful results regarding pairs of points and straight lines lying in the x - y plane.

3.2 Distance between two points

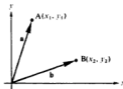
The length of the line joining the point $A(x_1, y_1)$ to $B(x_2, y_2)$ is given by $\sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2}$

Proof: If A and B have coordinates (x_1, y_1) and (x_2, y_2) respectively, it follows that

$$\mathbf{a} = \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ y_1 \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } \mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} x_2 \\ y_2 \end{pmatrix} \text{ where } \mathbf{a} \text{ and } \mathbf{b} \text{ are the position vectors of A and B.}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{But } \overline{AB} &= -\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} \\ &= \mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} x_2 \\ y_2 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ y_1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x_2 - x_1 \\ y_2 - y_1 \end{pmatrix}\end{aligned}$$

Thus, by Pythagoras' theorem,
 $|AB| = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2}$ as required.



Example 4

Find the length of the line joining P(5, 1) to Q(9, -3).

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Using the above result } PQ^2 &= (x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2 \\ &= (9 - 5)^2 + (-3 - 1)^2 \\ &= 16 + 16 \\ &= 32 \\ \therefore PQ &= \sqrt{32} \text{ or } 4\sqrt{2}\end{aligned}$$

The length of PQ is $4\sqrt{2}$ units.

Example 5

The points A, B and C have coordinates (2, 1), (7, 3) and (5, k) respectively. If AB and BC are of equal length, find the possible values of k .

$$\begin{aligned}AB^2 &= (7 - 2)^2 + (3 - 1)^2 \quad \text{and} \quad BC^2 = (5 - 7)^2 + (k - 3)^2 \\ &= 25 + 4 \\ &= 29 \\ &= 4 + k^2 - 6k + 9 \\ &= k^2 - 6k + 13\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Since } AB &= BC \text{ then } AB^2 = BC^2 \\ \text{i.e.} \quad &29 = k^2 - 6k + 13 \\ &0 = k^2 - 6k - 16 \\ \text{giving} \quad &k = 8 \text{ or } -2\end{aligned}$$

The possible values of k are 8 and -2.

Exercise 3B

1. Find the lengths of the straight lines joining each of the following pairs of points:

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| (a) (1, 3) and (4, 7) | (b) (1, 8) and (7, 0) |
| (c) (4, 0) and (-3, 0) | (d) (1, 5) and (-2, 1) |
| (e) (-3, -4) and (2, 8) | (f) (1, 2) and (5, 3) |
| (g) (1, 1) and (2, -1) | (h) (3, 3) and (5, 7) |
| (i) (3, 3) and (5, -1) | (j) (-1, 0) and (2, 3) |
| (k) (7, -3) and (1, -1) | (l) (-7, -1) and (-1, -4) |

2. Find the length of the line AB where A is the point with position vector

$$\begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \text{ and B has position vector } \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix}.$$

3. Find the length of the line CD where C is the point with position vector

$$\begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \text{ and D has position vector } \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix}.$$

- The three points A, B and C have coordinates (1, 0), (4, 4) and (13, 5) respectively. By how many units does the length of AC exceed the length of AB?
- A triangle has vertices at (0, 1), (1, 6) and (5, 2). Prove that the triangle is isosceles.
- Find the lengths of the sides of the triangle with vertices at A(1, 1), B(4, 5) and C(9, -5). Hence prove that the triangle is right-angled, and state which angle, \hat{A} , \hat{B} or \hat{C} is the right angle.
- Find the lengths of the sides of the triangle with vertices at A(2, 7), B(4, 3) and C(10, 6). Hence prove that the triangle is right-angled, and state which angle, \hat{A} , \hat{B} or \hat{C} is the right angle.
- The points A and B have coordinates (1, 1) and (5, -1) respectively. Find, by calculation, which one of the points C(3, 3), D(5, 4) or E(3, -2) lies on the perpendicular bisector of AB.
- Point A has coordinates (3, 2) and point B has coordinates (9, -4). Find, by calculation, which one of the points C(4, -3), D(10, 3) or E(5, -1) does not lie on the perpendicular bisector of AB.
- The three points O, A and B have coordinates (0, 0), (a, 7) and (8, 1) respectively. If OA and OB are of equal length, calculate the two possible values of a.
- The three points D, E and F have coordinates (2, 2) (7, e) and (9, 3) respectively. If DE and DF are of equal length, find the two possible values of e.
- The three points G(4, 0), H(h, 6) and I(7, 1) are such that GH is twice as long as GI. Calculate the two possible values of h.

3.3 Mid-point of a line joining two points

The mid-point of the line joining $A(x_1, y_1)$ to $B(x_2, y_2)$ has coordinates $\left(\frac{x_1 + x_2}{2}, \frac{y_1 + y_2}{2}\right)$

Proof: If A and B have coordinates (x_1, y_1) and (x_2, y_2) respectively, it follows that

$$\mathbf{a} = \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ y_1 \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } \mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} x_2 \\ y_2 \end{pmatrix} \text{ where } \mathbf{a} \text{ and } \mathbf{b} \text{ are the position vectors of A and B.}$$

Let M be the mid-point of AB

$$\begin{aligned} \overrightarrow{OM} &= \overrightarrow{OA} + \frac{1}{2}\overrightarrow{AB} \\ &= \mathbf{a} + \frac{1}{2}(-\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) \\ &= \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) \\ &= \frac{1}{2}\left[\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ y_1 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} x_2 \\ y_2 \end{pmatrix}\right] = \left[\begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{2}(x_1 + x_2) \\ \frac{1}{2}(y_1 + y_2) \end{pmatrix}\right] \end{aligned}$$

Thus M has coordinates $\left(\frac{x_1 + x_2}{2}, \frac{y_1 + y_2}{2}\right)$ as required.



Example 6

Find the coordinates of the mid-point of the straight lines joining the following pairs of points:

(a) (3, 7) and (5, 9) (b) (-2, 5) and (8, -1)

(a) Mid-point of line joining (3, 7) and (5, 9)

$$\text{has coordinates } \left(\frac{3+5}{2}, \frac{7+9}{2} \right).$$

Coordinates of mid-point are (4, 8).

(b) Mid-point of line joining (-2, 5) and (8, -1)

$$\text{has coordinates } \left(\frac{-2+8}{2}, \frac{5+(-1)}{2} \right).$$

Coordinates of mid-point are (3, 2).

Example 7

The points P(4, -3), Q(-3, 4), R(-2, 7) and S are the vertices of a parallelogram PQRS. Find (a) the coordinates of the mid-point of the diagonal PR, (b) the coordinates of S.

(a) If M is the mid-point of the line joining P(4, -3) to R(-2, 7), M has the coordinates

$$\left(\frac{4+(-2)}{2}, \frac{(-3)+7}{2} \right) = (1, 2)$$

Mid-point of PR is the point with coordinates (1, 2)

(b) Since the diagonals of a parallelogram bisect each other, M(1, 2) is also the mid-point of QS.

Suppose the coordinates of S are (x, y).

$$\text{then } (1, 2) = \left(\frac{-3+x}{2}, \frac{4+y}{2} \right)$$

$$\text{i.e. } 1 = \frac{-3+x}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad 2 = \frac{4+y}{2}$$

$$\therefore x = 5 \qquad \therefore y = 0.$$

The coordinates of S are (5, 0).

In addition to finding the mid-point of a line joining two points it is also possible to determine the coordinates of a point dividing the line in any given ratio. This can either be done using position vectors (see example 10 page 55) or as shown below.

Example 8

Find the coordinates of the point P which divides the line joining A(3, 2) and B(5, 1) in the ratio -2:3.

(Remember that the different signs of the two numbers in the ratio implies that the point P divides AB *externally*, see page 55).

First sketch the situation, with the required point P having coordinates (x, y) .

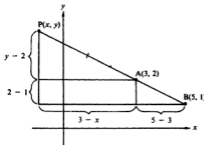
It then follows that $\frac{y-2}{2-1} = \frac{2}{1}$

$$\text{giving } y = 4$$

$$\text{and } \frac{3-x}{5-3} = \frac{2}{1}$$

$$\text{giving } x = -1$$

Thus the point P has coordinates $(-1, 4)$.



Exercise 3C

1. Find the coordinates of the mid-points of the straight lines joining each of the following pairs of points:

(a) $(3, 4)$ and $(7, 10)$

(b) $(2, 8)$ and $(10, 4)$

(c) $(0, 5)$ and $(6, 3)$

(d) $(4, 3)$ and $(1, 5)$

(e) $(-2, 1)$ and $(6, 5)$

(f) $(-3, 5)$ and $(11, -3)$

(g) $(-3, 8)$ and $(-4, 0)$

(h) $(-2, -1)$ and $(5, 6)$

(i) $(-3, -9)$ and $(7, -1)$

(j) $(-3, -9)$ and $(-7, -1)$

(k) $(-2, -6)$ and $(-8, -5)$

(l) $(-3, 4)$ and $(-2, -1)$

2. Find the position vector of the mid-point of the line joining two points whose position vectors are as follows:

(a) $\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix}$

(b) $\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix} -6 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix}$

(c) $\begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$

(d) $2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$ and $4\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$

(e) $2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$ and $10\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$

(f) $\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j}$

3. M is the mid-point of the straight line joining point A(10, 4) to point B. If M has coordinates (7, 3), find the coordinates of B.

4. L(5, 1) is the mid-point of the straight line joining point C(p, -3) to point D(7, q). Find p and q.

5. Find the co-ordinates of the point E, if the point F(-4, 3) is the mid-point of the straight line joining E to G(-6, 10).

6. A triangle has vertices at A(2, 4), B(4, -2) and C(8, 12). L is the mid-point of AB and M is the mid-point of BC.

- Find: (a) the coordinates of point L,
 (b) the coordinates of point M,
 (c) the distance LM.

7. A triangle has vertices at A(9, 9), B(3, 2) and C(9, 4).

- Find: (a) the coordinates of M, the mid-point of BC,
 (b) the length of the median from A to M.

8. Find the lengths of the medians of the triangle that has vertices at A(0, 1), B(2, 7) and C(4, -1).

9. A(1, 1), B(6, 9), C(13, 7) and D are the vertices of the parallelogram ABCD.

- Find: (a) the coordinates of the mid-point of the diagonal AC,
 (b) the coordinates of the mid-point of the diagonal DB,
 (c) the coordinates of D.

10. P(-1, 5), Q(8, 10), R(7, 5) and S are the vertices of the parallelogram PQRS. Calculate the coordinates of S.
11. Points A(2, 5), B(4, -1), C(0, -3) and D(-6, 3) form the quadrilateral ABCD. Points P, Q, R and S are the mid-points of AB, BC, CD and DA respectively.
- Find the coordinates of P, Q, R and S,
 - prove that PQ is the same length as SR,
 - prove that PS is the same length as QR.
12. Find the coordinates of the point that divides the line joining point K(6, 3) to point L(11, 5) in the ratio (a) 2:3, (b) -2:3.
13. Find the coordinates of the point that divides the line joining point M(2, 5) to point N(8, 9) in the ratio (a) 3:5, (b) -3:5.
14. The points A, B, C and D have coordinates (-7, 9), (3, 4), (1, 12) and (-2, -9) respectively. Find the length of the line PQ where P divides AB in the ratio 2:3 and Q divides CD in the ratio 1:-4.

3.4 Gradient of a line joining two points

The gradient of the line joining the points $A(x_1, y_1)$ and $B(x_2, y_2)$ is a measure of the steepness of the line AB and it is the ratio of the change in the y -coordinate to the change in the x -coordinate in going from A to B.

From the diagram

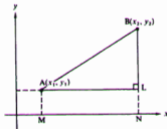
$$\frac{\text{change in } y\text{-coordinate from A to B}}{\text{change in } x\text{-coordinate from A to B}} = \frac{BL}{LA} = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}$$

Thus the gradient of the line joining $A(x_1, y_1)$ to $B(x_2, y_2)$ is $\frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}$

Note that $\frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}$ could be written $\frac{y_1 - y_2}{x_1 - x_2}$ and the same answer would be obtained.

The point to notice is that the same suffix order is used in both the top and the bottom of the fraction.

Neither $\frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_1 - x_2}$ nor $\frac{y_1 - y_2}{x_2 - x_1}$ would give the correct answer.



Example 9

Find the gradient of the lines joining the following pairs of points:

- (a) (4, 1) and (7, 3); (b) (2, -7) and (4, 3); (c) (2, 5) and (6, 1).

- (a) (4, 1) and (7, 3)

$$\begin{aligned} \text{gradient} &= \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1} \\ &= \frac{3 - 1}{7 - 4} \\ &= \frac{2}{3} \end{aligned}$$

- (b) (2, -7) and (4, 3)

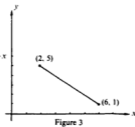
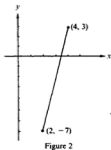
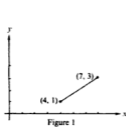
$$\begin{aligned} \text{gradient} &= \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1} \\ &= \frac{3 - (-7)}{4 - 2} \\ &= 5 \end{aligned}$$

- (c) (2, 5) and (6, 1)

$$\begin{aligned} \text{gradient} &= \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1} \\ &= \frac{1 - 5}{6 - 2} \\ &= -1 \end{aligned}$$

In (a) and (b) the gradient is found to be positive whereas in (c) the gradient is negative.

If the points are plotted, the significance of the negative gradient is seen.



In figures 1 and 2, as we proceed along the line in the direction of increasing x , y also increases.

In figure 3 as we proceed along the line in the direction of increasing x , y decreases.

More simply: a positive gradient is associated with going 'uphill' as x increases,
and a negative gradient is associated with going 'downhill' as x increases.

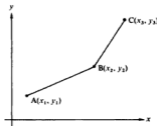
Example 10

Determine whether the points $A(-4, 3)$, $B(-1, 5)$ and $C(8, 11)$ are collinear.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{gradient of } AB &= \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1} \\ &= \frac{5 - 3}{-1 - (-4)} = \frac{2}{3} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{gradient of } BC &= \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1} \\ &= \frac{11 - 5}{8 - (-1)} = \frac{2}{3} \end{aligned}$$

Since the gradient of $AB =$ gradient of BC and B is a point common to the lines AB and BC , the points A , B and C are collinear.



Alternatively, vector methods could be used to show that \vec{AB} is a scalar multiple of \vec{BC} , as in chapter 2.

Exercise 3D

- Find the gradients of the straight lines joining each of the following pairs of points:

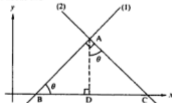
(a) (3, 5) and (5, 9)	(b) (3, 1) and (4, 8)
(c) (3, 8) and (1, 2)	(d) (2, 0) and (6, 1)
(e) (2, 8) and (3, 4)	(f) (6, 7) and (3, -2)
(g) (3, 7) and (6, -2)	(h) (2, 0) and (6, -1)
(i) (5, -1) and (1, -3)	(j) (-2, -2) and (0, 2)
(k) (-1, -4) and (11, 4)	(l) (-1, -1) and (7, -7)
- For each of the parts (a) to (e), state whether the three given points are collinear.

(a) (2, 3), (4, 4), (10, 7).	(b) (2, 0), (3, 1), (8, 7).
(c) (1, -3), (-1, 1), (-4, 7).	(d) (2, -2), (-3, -5), (12, 4).
(e) (5, 3), (6, 1), (10, -5).	
- If the straight line joining $A(3, -5)$ to $B(6, b)$ has a gradient of 4, find the value of b .
- If the straight line joining $C(c, 5)$ to $D(-3, 2)$ has a gradient of $\frac{1}{2}$, find the value of c .
- The three points $A(a, -1)$, $B(8, 1)$ and $C(11, 2)$ are collinear. Find the value of a .
- The points $A(5, 2)$, $B(1, 0)$, $C(c, 5)$, $D(-5, d)$ and $E(e, -2)$ all lie on the same straight line. Find the values of c , d and e .

3.5 Parallel and perpendicular lines

The gradient of a line is a measure of its 'steepness'. Two parallel lines are equally steep so they will have equal gradients, but what about two perpendicular lines?

Suppose two straight lines (1) and (2) intersect at right angles at the point A and cut the x -axis at the points B and C respectively. If AD is the perpendicular from A to the x -axis and $\angle ABD = \theta$, it follows that $\angle DAC = \theta$.



Then gradient of line (1) = $\frac{AD}{DB} = \tan \theta$

gradient of line (2) = $-\frac{AD}{CD}$ (negative as 'downhill' for increasing x)

$$= \frac{-1}{CD/AD} = -\frac{1}{\tan \theta}$$

$$\therefore \text{gradient of line (1)} \times \text{gradient of line (2)} = \tan \theta \times \left(\frac{-1}{\tan \theta} \right) = -1$$

Thus, if two lines are parallel, they have equal gradients
and if two lines are perpendicular, the product of their gradients is -1 .

This condition for perpendicular lines means that if one line has a gradient m , a perpendicular line will have gradient $-\frac{1}{m}$.

Thus, the following pairs of gradients all apply to pairs of perpendicular lines:
 2 and $-\frac{1}{2}$, 3 and $-\frac{1}{3}$, $\frac{2}{3}$ and $-\frac{3}{2}$, $\frac{3}{2}$ and $-\frac{2}{3}$.

Example 11

Given the points $A(1, -1)$, $B(5, 2)$, $P(-1, 10)$, $Q(-1, 3)$ and $R(-9, -3)$, show that AB is parallel to QR and that BP is perpendicular to AB .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{gradient } AB &= \frac{2 - (-1)}{5 - 1} & \text{gradient } QR &= \frac{-3 - 3}{-9 - (-1)} & \text{gradient } BP &= \frac{10 - 2}{-1 - 5} \\ &= \frac{3}{4} & &= \frac{-6}{-8} & &= \frac{8}{-6} \\ & & &= \frac{3}{4} & &= -\frac{4}{3} \end{aligned}$$

Since $\text{gradient } AB = \text{gradient } QR$, AB and QR are parallel.

Since $(\text{gradient } BP) \times (\text{gradient } AB) = -1$, BP is perpendicular to AB .

Example 12

The triangle $P(-4, 3)$, $Q(-1, 5)$, $R(0, -3)$ is right-angled. Find which side is the hypotenuse.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{gradient } PQ &= \frac{5 - 3}{-1 - (-4)} & \text{gradient } QR &= \frac{-3 - 5}{0 - (-1)} & \text{gradient } PR &= \frac{-3 - 3}{0 - (-4)} \\ &= \frac{2}{3} & &= -8 & &= -\frac{6}{4} \end{aligned}$$

$$(\text{gradient } PQ) \times (\text{gradient } PR) = \frac{2}{3} \times \left(-\frac{3}{2}\right) = -1$$

Hence PQ is perpendicular to PR , so $\angle QPR = 90^\circ$ and QR is the hypotenuse.

Exercise 3E

- Write down the gradient of a straight line that is perpendicular to a line of gradient:

(a) 2	(b) 3	(c) -2	(d) $\frac{1}{2}$	(e) $-\frac{1}{2}$
(f) $\frac{2}{3}$	(g) $\frac{3}{2}$	(h) $2\frac{1}{2}$	(i) 4	(j) $-\frac{2}{3}$
- Using the points $A(2, 4)$, $B(8, 7)$, $C(5, -2)$ and $D(19, 5)$, prove that

(a) AB is parallel to CD ,	(b) AC is perpendicular to CD .
--------------------------------	-------------------------------------
- The points $A(6, 8)$, $B(11, 9)$, $C(7, -3)$ and $D(4, 2)$ form the trapezium $ABCD$. Name the pair of sides that are parallel.
- A triangle has vertices at $A(2, 2)$, $B(5, 7)$ and $C(15, 1)$. Find the gradients of the lines AB , BC and AC . Hence show that the triangle is right-angled and state which angle, \hat{A} , \hat{B} or \hat{C} is the right angle.

- The line joining point A(a , 3) to point B(2, -3) is perpendicular to the line joining point C(10, 1) to point B. Find the value of a .
- Points A(0, 3), B(4, 7) and C(10, 5) form the triangle ABC; L is the mid-point of AB and M is the mid-point of BC. Show that LM is parallel to AC.
- A triangle has vertices at D(0, 2), E(8, 6) and F(2, f). If the triangle is right-angled at D, use gradients to find the value of f . What would your answer have been had the triangle been right-angled at F?
- The points A(0, 2), B(8, 0) and C(5, c) form a triangle ABC, right-angled at C. By finding expressions for the gradients of AC and BC, find the two possible values of c .
- Points A(3, 4), B(5, 0), C(-1, -3) and D(-3, 1) form a quadrilateral ABCD. Find (a) the gradients of the lines AB, BC, CD and DA, (b) the lengths of the lines AB and AD. Hence state what type of quadrilateral ABCD is.

3.6 The equation $y = mx + c$

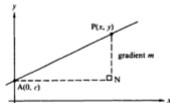
In this chapter we have been discussing points, lines joining points and perpendicular lines, but we saw in chapter 1 that lines on a graph have equations associated with them. We now consider these equations in more detail.

Suppose the point P(x , y) is a point on the straight line which cuts the y -axis at the point A(0, c), and has gradient m .

The gradient of AP is m ,

but AP has gradient $\frac{y - c}{x - 0}$

$$\therefore \frac{y - c}{x - 0} = m$$



giving $y - c = mx$ and this is usually written $y = mx + c$.

This is the general **cartesian** equation of a straight line. The word cartesian is after René Descartes (1596–1650) the Frenchman who first developed the idea of using an ordered pair of coordinates (x , y) to specify a point in a plane relative to a pair of intersecting straight lines.

All straight lines have equations which can be written in the form $y = mx + c$ where m is the gradient and (0, c) is the point at which the line cuts the y -axis.

Example 13

Find the gradient of the following straight lines, and in each case find the coordinates of the point where the line cuts the y -axis.

(a) $y = 3x + 4$ (b) $2y = 3x - 4$ (c) $x + 4y = 2$

(a) Comparing $y = mx + c$
and $y = 3x + 4$
gives $m = 3$ and $c = 4$

Gradient = 3 cutting y -axis at (0, 4).

(b) To compare $y = mx + c$
and $2y = 3x - 4$
we write $y = \frac{3}{2}x - 2$
which gives $m = \frac{3}{2}$ and $c = -2$

Gradient = $\frac{3}{2}$ cutting y -axis at (0, -2).

(c) To compare $y = mx + c$
and $x + 4y = 2$
we write $4y = 2 - x$
or $y = -\frac{1}{4}x + \frac{1}{2}$
which gives $m = -\frac{1}{4}$ and $c = \frac{1}{2}$

Gradient = $-\frac{1}{4}$ cutting y -axis at (0, $\frac{1}{2}$).

Note: Before comparing the given equation with $y = mx + c$, we must first rearrange the equation so that it is in the form $y = mx + c$. However this initial rearrangement is not necessary if we only require the coordinates of the points of intersection with the axes, as the following example shows.

Example 14

Find the point at which the line $3y - 12 = 4x$ cuts (a) the y -axis,
(b) the x -axis. Hence sketch the line $3y - 12 = 4x$.

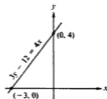
(a) Any point on the y -axis has x -coordinate equal to zero.
Substituting $x = 0$ into the equation of the line gives $3y - 12 = 0$
i.e. $y = 4$

The point on the y -axis is (0, 4).

(b) Any point on the x -axis has y -coordinate equal to zero,
Substituting $y = 0$ into the equation of the line gives $-12 = 4x$
i.e. $x = -3$

The point on the x -axis is (-3, 0).

To sketch the line, we do not need to make an accurate plot on graph paper. A sketch can be made on plain or lined paper and should show the essential characteristics of the line. For a straight line, a sketch can be made by knowing where the line cuts the axes. The sketch of $3y - 12 = 4x$ is shown on the right.

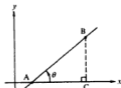


It is also possible to determine the gradient of a line knowing only the angle made with the direction of the positive x -axis.

Consider a line which cuts the x -axis at the point A. Suppose B is another point on the line; BC is drawn as shown in the diagram. Assuming the same scale is used on each axis,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{the gradient of the line} &= \frac{BC}{AC} \\ &= \tan \theta \end{aligned}$$

Thus the gradient of the line is the tangent of the angle between the direction of the positive x -axis and the line, measured anticlockwise.



Note that by measuring the angle anticlockwise from the direction of the positive x -axis, we still obtain negative gradients for lines that are downhill for increasing x ; for such lines, θ is obtuse and $\tan \theta$ is negative for $90^\circ < \theta < 180^\circ$.

It is important to realise that there is no conflict between the cartesian equation of a line and the idea of a vector equation of a line discussed in section 2.5. If a straight line is parallel to some vector \mathbf{b} and passes through a point A having position vector \mathbf{a} , the straight line has a vector equation $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{a} + \lambda \mathbf{b}$.

Consider the straight line $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$.

This line passes through the point having position vector $\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$ and is parallel to the

vector $\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$.

To obtain the cartesian equation of this line, consider the general point P on the line having

position vector $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$.

$$\text{Thus } \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{giving } x = 0 + 2\lambda \quad \dots [1]$$

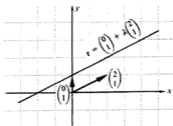
$$\text{and } y = 1 + \lambda \quad \dots [2]$$

$$\text{From [1] } \frac{x-0}{2} = \lambda \text{ and from [2] } \frac{y-1}{1} = \lambda$$

$$\text{Thus } \frac{x-0}{2} = \frac{y-1}{1} (= \lambda).$$

$$\therefore x = 2(y-1) \\ = 2y - 2 \text{ or } y = \frac{1}{2}x + 1$$

Thus the line has gradient $\frac{1}{2}$ as we would expect for a line parallel to a vector $\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$.



In general terms, the vector equation $\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} c \\ d \end{pmatrix}$ gives the

cartesian equation $\frac{x-a}{c} = \frac{y-b}{d}$ ($= \lambda$).

rearranging gives $y = \frac{d}{c}x + \frac{(bc-ad)}{c}$

Thus the gradient of the line with vector equation $\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} c \\ d \end{pmatrix}$ is given

by $\frac{d}{c}$, again as we would expect for a line parallel to the vector $\begin{pmatrix} c \\ d \end{pmatrix}$:



Thus with the cartesian equation written in the form $\frac{x-a}{c} = \frac{y-b}{d}$ the

gradient, $\frac{d}{c}$, is obtained from the denominators.

Example 15

Find:

(a) the cartesian equation of the line with vector equation $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$

(b) the vector equation of the line with cartesian equation $\frac{x-3}{2} = \frac{y-1}{4}$

(c) the vector equation of the line with cartesian equation $2y = 3x - 1$.

(a) Considering the general position vector $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$ gives $x = 2 + \lambda$

and $y = 3 - 2\lambda$

$\therefore \frac{x-2}{1} = \frac{y-3}{-2} (= \lambda)$

i.e. $y = -2x + 7$

(b) Letting $\frac{x-3}{2} = \frac{y-1}{4} = \lambda$ gives $x = 3 + 2\lambda$

and $y = 1 + 4\lambda$

i.e. $\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$

The vector equation of the line is $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$.

Alternatively one can simply remember that a cartesian equation of the

form $\frac{x-a}{c} = \frac{y-b}{d}$ is parallel to the vector $\begin{pmatrix} c \\ d \end{pmatrix}$ and passes through the

point with position vector $\begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \end{pmatrix}$.

(c) We first rearrange $2y = 3x - 1$ into the form $\frac{x-a}{c} = \frac{y-b}{d} (= \lambda)$.

$$\text{If } 2y = 3x - 1$$

$$\text{then } 2y + 1 = 3x$$

$$\frac{2y + 1}{3} = x$$

$$\frac{y + \frac{1}{2}}{\frac{3}{2}} = \lambda$$

$$\text{Thus } x = 0 + 2\lambda$$

$$\text{and } y = -\frac{1}{2} + 3\lambda$$

Thus the vector equation of the line is $r = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$... [1]

Alternatively, we could say that, as $2y = 3x - 1$ has gradient $\frac{2}{3}$, the line is parallel to the vector $\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$ shown on the right. Then, choosing one point on the line, say $(1, 1)$, we obtain the vector equation

$$r = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \quad \dots [2]$$



It is not immediately obvious the equations [1] and [2] represent the same line but each equation does give the position vector of any point on the line by a suitable choice of λ .

By writing the λ in equation [1] as $(\lambda + \frac{1}{2})$ we obtain equation [2].

$$\begin{aligned} r &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix} + (\lambda + \frac{1}{2}) \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

Exercise 3F

1. Find the gradients of the following straight lines:

(a) $y = 3x + 2$ (b) $y = 5x + 4$ (c) $y = -3x + 1$

(d) $y = \frac{1}{2}x + 6$ (e) $y = -\frac{1}{2}x + 3$ (f) $y = 7 - 3x$

(g) $y = 5 + 2x$ (h) $2y = 4x + 3$ (i) $y - 2x = 4$

(j) $y - 3x + 1 = 0$ (k) $2y + 8x + 5 = 0$ (l) $2y - 3x = 7$

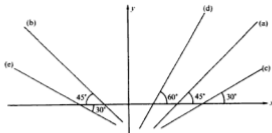
(m) $3x + y = 4$ (n) $\frac{y}{3} + \frac{x}{2} = 1$ (o) $\frac{x}{4} - \frac{2y}{3} = 1$

2. Find where the following straight lines cut the y-axis:

(a) $y = 2x + 3$ (b) $y - 3x = 4$

(c) $2y = 3x - 8$ (d) $3x + 4y - 12 = 0$

(e) $\frac{x}{3} + \frac{y}{2} = 1$ (f) $\frac{x}{4} - \frac{y}{3} = 1$



3. Find the gradients of each of the lines (a) to (e) shown on the graph. (Assume the same scale is used on each axis).
4. Find where the line $y = x - 2$ cuts: (a) the x -axis, (b) the y -axis. Hence sketch the line $y = x - 2$.
5. Find where the line $2y = 6 - 3x$ cuts: (a) the x -axis, (b) the y -axis. Hence sketch the line $2y = 6 - 3x$.
6. Which of the following lines are parallel to the line $y = 2x + 4$?
 (a) $y = 2x - 1$, (b) $2y = x + 3$, (c) $3y - 6x = 1$, (d) $2x + 3y = 4$.
7. Which of the following lines are perpendicular to the line $y = 2x + 4$?
 (a) $y = \frac{1}{2}x - 4$, (b) $y = -\frac{1}{2}x + 7$, (c) $2y = 5 - x$, (d) $2y = x + 5$.
8. The line $y = ax + b$ is parallel to the line $y = 2x - 6$ and passes through the point $(-1, 7)$. Find the values of a and b .
9. The line $y = cx + d$ is perpendicular to the line $y + 2x = 4$ and cuts the line $y + x + 3 = 0$ on the y -axis. Find the values of c and d .
10. Find the cartesian equations of the lines whose vector equations are given below. Give your answers in the form $y = mx + c$.
- (a) $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$ (b) $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$
- (c) $\mathbf{r} = 3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + \lambda(3\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j})$ (d) $\mathbf{r} = 4\mathbf{i} - 5\mathbf{j} + \lambda(2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j})$
11. Find the vector equations of the lines whose cartesian equations are given below:
- (a) $\frac{x-2}{3} = \frac{y-1}{4}$ (b) $\frac{x-5}{1} = \frac{y+3}{-4}$
- (c) $y = 2x + 3$ (d) $3y = 2x - 4$
12. Two straight lines L_1 and L_2 have equations $\frac{x-1}{3} = \frac{y+1}{-2}$ and $\frac{x-4}{4} = \frac{y-1}{6}$ respectively.
- (a) Express each equation in the form $y = mx + c$ and hence show that L_1 and L_2 are perpendicular.
- (b) Express each equation in the form $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{a} + \lambda\mathbf{b}$ and use the scalar product to show that L_1 and L_2 are perpendicular.

3.7 Finding the cartesian equation of a straight line

In the last section we saw that we can find the gradient of a straight line and the value of its y -intercept from its cartesian equation.

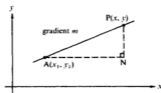
This process can be reversed; it is possible to find the equation of a line given sufficient information about the line.

Equation of a line from its gradient m and a point (x_1, y_1) on it.

Consider a line having gradient m and passing through the point $A(x_1, y_1)$.

Suppose that $P(x, y)$ is any other point on the line.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Gradient of line} &= m \\ &= \frac{PN}{NA} \\ &= \frac{y - y_1}{x - x_1} \end{aligned}$$



or the equation of the line is $y - y_1 = m(x - x_1)$.

Example 16

Find the equation of the straight line that passes through $(-2, 3)$ and has gradient $\frac{1}{2}$.

Let $P(x, y)$ be any point on the line.

Use the equation

$$y - y_1 = m(x - x_1)$$

Substituting for x_1, y_1 and m gives:

$$y - 3 = \frac{1}{2}[x - (-2)]$$

$$5y - 15 = 4x + 8$$

So the required equation of the line is

$$5y = 4x + 23$$

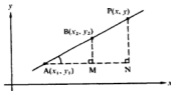
Equation of a line through $A(x_1, y_1)$ and $B(x_2, y_2)$

Consider a line which passes through the points $A(x_1, y_1)$ and $B(x_2, y_2)$ and suppose $P(x, y)$ is any other point on the line.

The gradient of AP is equal to the gradient of AB as ABP is a straight line.

$$\therefore \frac{PN}{NA} = \frac{BM}{MA}$$

$$\text{So } \frac{y - y_1}{x - x_1} = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}$$



This result is easily memorized as the two sides of the equation are both expressions for the gradient of the line.

Example 17

Find the equation of the straight line that passes through (3, -1) and (7, 2).

Let $P(x, y)$ be any point on the line and using

$$\frac{y - y_1}{x - x_1} = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}$$

$$\frac{y - (-1)}{x - 3} = \frac{2 - (-1)}{7 - 3}$$

or $4(y + 1) = 3(x - 3)$
 i.e. $4y = 3x - 13$ is the required equation of the line.

Example 18

Find the equation of the perpendicular bisector of the line joining the points $A(2, -3)$ and $B(6, 5)$.

We can find the coordinates of the mid-point of AB . The gradient of AB , and hence that of the perpendicular bisector, can also be found. Thus, knowing the gradient of the perpendicular bisector and one point on it, we can use $y - y_1 = m(x - x_1)$ to obtain the required equation.

Coordinates of M , the mid-point of AB are

$$\left(\frac{2+6}{2}, \frac{-3+5}{2}\right) = (4, 1)$$

$$\text{gradient of } AB = \frac{5 - (-3)}{6 - 2} = 2$$

$$\therefore \text{gradient of perpendicular bisector} = -\frac{1}{2}$$

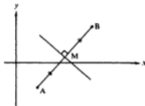
The required line has gradient $-\frac{1}{2}$ and passes through $M(4, 1)$

$$\text{using } y - y_1 = m(x - x_1)$$

$$y - 1 = -\frac{1}{2}(x - 4)$$

or $2y - 2 = -x + 4$
 i.e. $2y = 6 - x$

The equation of the perpendicular bisector is $2y = 6 - x$.

**Equation of a line given a law**

As we saw in section 3.1, a locus is made up of a set of points which obey some law. We can find the equation of the locus by considering a point $P(x, y)$ on the locus and using the law to derive an equation in x and y . This will be the equation of the locus.

Example 19

Find the equation of the locus of the points which are equidistant from $A(3, -2)$ and $B(-4, 1)$.

Suppose $P(x, y)$ is any point on the required locus.

Since P is equidistant from A and B ,

$$PA = PB \text{ and so } PA^2 = PB^2$$

$$\therefore (x - 3)^2 + (y - (-2))^2 = (x - (-4))^2 + (y - 1)^2$$

$$\text{or } (x - 3)^2 + (y + 2)^2 = (x + 4)^2 + (y - 1)^2$$

$$x^2 - 6x + 9 + y^2 + 4y + 4 = x^2 + 8x + 16 + y^2 - 2y + 1$$

$$\text{which gives } 3y = 7x + 2$$

The required locus has equation $3y = 7x + 2$.

Note that this question could have been solved by finding the perpendicular bisector of AB , as in Example 18, since that is the required locus.

Exercise 3G

- Find the equation of the straight line that:
 - passes through $(1, 7)$ and has gradient 3,
 - passes through $(-1, -6)$ and has gradient 5,
 - passes through $(-1, 1)$ and has gradient 2,
 - passes through $(4, 1)$ and is parallel to $2y = x - 3$,
 - passes through $(-2, 9)$ and is perpendicular to $2y = x - 3$.
- Find the equation of the straight line that passes through:
 - $(0, 4)$ and $(3, 10)$
 - $(0, 7)$ and $(7, 0)$
 - $(2, 1)$ and $(-2, -7)$
 - $(6, -2)$ and $(12, 1)$
 - $(1, -2)$ and $(-1, 4)$.
- Find the equation of the locus of the points that are equidistant from the points $A(1, 1)$ and $B(5, 3)$.
- Find the equation of the locus of the points that are equidistant from the points $C(2, 7)$ and $D(8, 1)$.
- If point E has coordinates $(4, 1)$ and point F has coordinates $(2, 7)$ find:
 - the coordinates of the mid-point of EF ,
 - the gradient of EF ,
 - the equation of the perpendicular bisector of EF .
- Find the equation of the straight line that passes through the points L and M where L is the mid-point of the straight line joining $A(-1, 6)$ to $B(5, 4)$ and M is the mid-point of the line joining $C(-5, -1)$ to $D(3, -1)$.
- A triangle has vertices at $A(0, 7)$, $B(9, 4)$ and $C(1, 0)$. Find:
 - the equation of the perpendicular from C to AB ,
 - the equation of the straight line from A to the mid-point of BC .
- Find the equations of the medians of the triangle with vertices at $A(1, 0)$, $B(5, 2)$ and $C(1, 6)$.

3.8 Relationships shown as linear graphs

It is frequently desirable to illustrate the results of an experiment graphically. Suppose it is believed that a relationship of the form $P = aQ + b$ exists between the variable quantities P and Q where a and b are constants. By comparing $P = aQ + b$ with $y = mx + c$, we can see that plotting P on the vertical axis against Q on the horizontal axis will lead to a straight line

graph if the supposed relationship does exist. If experimental values are used, a close approximation to a straight line may be obtained. Furthermore, the gradient of the straight line will be a and the line will cut the vertical axis at $(0, b)$.

Other suspected relationships can be tested in a similar way. In each case, the relationship is compared with $y = mx + c$ to determine what to plot on the vertical y -axis and the horizontal x -axis. The following table shows some typical cases (a and b are constants in each case).

suspected relationship	plot on y -axis	plot on x -axis	gradient	intercept on vertical axis
$P = aQ^2 + b$	P	Q^2	a	$(0, b)$
$P = a + b\sqrt{Q}$	P	\sqrt{Q}	b	$(0, a)$
$P = \frac{a}{Q} + b$	P	$\frac{1}{Q}$	a	$(0, b)$
$P = aQ + bQ^2$	$\frac{P}{Q}$	Q	b	$(0, a)$

Example 20

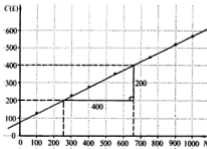
The cost of producing various quantities of a particular article are shown in the table below.

Cost C	£125	£225	£275	£350	£450	£525	£575
Number of articles N	100	300	400	550	750	900	1000

By plotting a suitable graph, show that a relationship of the form $C = aN + b$ exists and find the constants a and b .

If a relationship of the form $C = aN + b$ exists, plotting C against N should give a straight line graph. The gradient of the line will then be a and the intercept on the C -axis will be $(0, b)$.

The graph is shown on the right.



A straight line is obtained so the relationship is of the form $C = aN + b$

The line cuts the C -axis at 75, so $b = 75$.

By drawing a right-angled triangle, the gradient of this line is found to be $\frac{200}{400} = \frac{1}{2}$.

A relationship of the form $C = aN + b$ does exist with $a = \frac{1}{2}$ and $b = 75$.

In some cases the numbers involved may make it impractical to choose scales such that the axes, as drawn on the graph paper, intersect at the point $(0, 0)$. In such cases the gradient can still be found as in example 20 but the intercept made with the axis is determined differently, as the next example shows.

Example 21

In an experiment, the two variables x and y were recorded and the following table obtained.

x	7	8	9	10	11	12
y	40	46	53	60	69	78

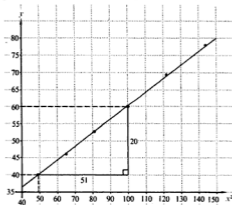
By plotting a suitable graph, show that the figures agree approximately with a relationship of the form $y = ax^2 + b$ and find the constants a and b .

Comparing $y = ax^2 + b$ with $y = mx + c$ we see that it is necessary to plot y against x^2 . The table below shows values of x , y and x^2 .

x	7	8	9	10	11	12
y	40	46	53	60	69	78
x^2	49	64	81	100	121	144

If a scale is chosen so that the axes cross at the origin, the scale will be unnecessarily small giving a less accurate answer.

The straight line graph below shows that the relationship is of the form $y = ax^2 + b$.



Obtain the gradient from the right-angled triangle.

$$\text{gradient} = \frac{17}{4} \approx 0.4$$

$$\text{Hence } a = 0.4$$

The value of b can be found by substituting any pair of values for y and x^2 together with $a = 0.4$ in the equation, for example $y = 60$ and $x^2 = 100$.

$$\therefore 60 = 0.4 \times 100 + b$$

$$b = 60 - 40 = 20$$

The relationship $y = ax^2 + b$ does exist; $a = 0.4$, $b = 20$.

Exercise 3H

1. Some Celsius temperatures and the equivalent Fahrenheit temperatures are shown in the table below:

Celsius (C)	50	60	75	95	100	120
Fahrenheit (F)	122	140	167	203	212	248

By plotting a suitable graph, show that a relationship of the form $F = aC + b$ exists and find the values of the constants a and b .

Find the Fahrenheit temperature equivalent to

(a) 80°C , (b) 40°C , (c) -40°C .

2. The number of units of gas used in a quarter and the bill received for that quarter were noted for a number of households and the results tabulated:

Bill (B)	£26	£30	£36	£50	£74	£82
Number of units (N)	40	50	65	100	160	180

By plotting a suitable graph, show that a relationship of the form $B = aN + b$ exists and find the values of the constants a and b .

Find the quarterly bill for a household that uses 130 units in that quarter.

3. A scientific experiment was carried out to investigate how the electrical resistance of a given wire is dependent on the temperature of the wire. The resistance was measured at various temperatures and the results were tabulated:

Temperature T ($^\circ\text{C}$)	17	28	32	43	47	52	62
Resistance R (ohms)	1.6	1.67	1.69	1.76	1.78	1.81	1.87

By plotting a suitable graph show that a relationship of the form $R = a + bT$ exists and find the resistance of the wire at 0°C .

4. In an experiment to test the volume-temperature law for gases, a certain mass of gas was heated under constant pressure. The volume of the gas at various temperatures was noted and the results are shown in the following table:

Temperature T ($^{\circ}\text{C}$)	11	19	41	52	60	86
Volume V (cm^3)	104	107	115	119	122	131.5

By plotting a suitable graph, show that a relationship of the form $V = aT + b$ exists and find approximate values for the constants a and b . Find the volume of this mass of gas when the temperature is (a) 0°C , (b) 30°C .

5. The force of wind resistance experienced by a particular car moving with velocity V was noted for various values of V and the results were tabulated:

Wind resistance R (in newtons)	26	60	122	135	180	270
Velocity V (in metres/second)	4	10	16	17	20	25

By plotting a suitable graph, show that the figures agree approximately with a relationship of the form $R = a + bV^2$ and find values for the constants a and b .

Find the wind resistance experienced by the car when moving with velocity 15 m/s.

6. In a particular experiment, the two variables x and y were noted and the results were tabulated.

x	1	1.5	2	3	4	6	8	10
y	6	5.2	4.8	4.4	4.2	4	3.9	3.84

By plotting a suitable graph, show that a relationship of the form $y = \frac{a}{x} + b$ exists and find the values of the constants a and b .

7. An experiment involved noting the time period T of pendulums of various length l . The results were as follows:

Length l (cm)	20	30	45	50	75	100
Time Period T (secs)	0.90	1.10	1.35	1.42	1.74	2.01

It is suspected that these two quantities T and l are related by a rule of the form $T = a\sqrt{l}$ where a is a constant. Plot a suitable graph to show this to be the case.

8. In a particular experiment, the two variables x and y were noted and the results were tabulated as follows:

x	2	4	7	8	11	12
y	3	3.6	4.4	4.6	5.2	5.4

By plotting a suitable graph show that the figures agree approximately with a relationship of the form $y^2 = ax + b$ and find values for the constants a and b . Find the value of x when $y = 5$.

9. In a particular experiment, the two variables x and y were noted and the results were tabulated as follows.

x	1	1.5	2	4	5	6	10
y	43	23	16	9.3	8.4	8	7.4

By plotting a suitable graph, show that the figures agree approximately with a relationship of the form $y = \frac{a}{x^2} + b$ and find values for the constants a and b . Find the value of y when $x = 3$.

10. The sum of the first three even numbers is 12, of the first four even numbers is 20 and of the first seven is 56. These and other similar results are shown in the table below

The first n even numbers where n is:	3	4	7	11	12	15	20
The sum (S) of these first n even numbers	12	20	56	132	156	240	420

It is thought that S and n are related by the formula $S = an + bn^2$. By plotting a suitable graph, show that such a relationship does exist and find the values of the constants a and b . Find the sum of the first fifty even numbers.

3.9 Intersection of lines

Any point on a line has coordinates which will satisfy the equation of that line.

In order to find the point in which two lines intersect we have to find a point with coordinates which satisfy both equations. This is equivalent, from an algebraic point of view, to solving the equations of the lines simultaneously.

Example 22

Find the coordinates of the point in which the lines $x - 3y = 1$ and $2x = 5y + 3$ intersect.

Since the point of intersection satisfies both equations.

$$\begin{array}{l} x - 3y = 1 \\ \text{and} \quad 2x = 5y + 3 \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{i.e.} \quad 2x = 6y + 2 \\ \text{i.e.} \quad 2x = 5y + 3 \\ \text{subtracting} \quad 0 = y - 1 \text{ or } y = 1 \end{array}$$

Substituting in one of the original equations

$$x - 3 = 1 \quad \text{or} \quad x = 4$$

Point of intersection is (4, 1)

There are various methods which may be used to solve the equations simultaneously. Examples 23 and 24 demonstrate the method of substitution.

Intersection of straight line and curve

A straight line may intersect a curve at more than one point. Thus solving the equations of the line and the curve simultaneously could give more than one answer.

Example 23

The line $y - 2x + 3 = 0$ intersects the curve $y = x^2 - 2x$ at the points A and B. Find the coordinates of A and B.

The coordinates of the points of intersection satisfy both equations.

$$y - 2x + 3 = 0 \quad \dots [1]$$

$$y = x^2 - 2x \quad \dots [2]$$

Substitute for y from equation [2] into equation [1]:

$$x^2 - 2x - 2x + 3 = 0$$

$$\text{or} \quad x^2 - 4x + 3 = 0$$

$$\therefore (x - 3)(x - 1) = 0$$

$$\text{giving} \quad x = 3 \quad \text{or} \quad 1$$

Substituting for x in equation [1]:

$$y - 6 + 3 = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad y - 2 + 3 = 0$$

$$\text{i.e. } y = 3 \quad \text{i.e. } y = -1$$

The points of intersection are (3, 3) and (1, -1).

Example 24

Find the points at which the curves $y = 3x^2$ and $y = x^2 - 5x - 3$ intersect.

As before, the points of intersection are given by solving simultaneously the equations:

$$\begin{cases} y = 3x^2 & \dots [1] \\ y = x^2 - 5x - 3 & \dots [2] \end{cases}$$

Substituting for y from equation [1] into equation [2]

$$3x^2 = x^2 - 5x - 3$$

$$\text{or} \quad 2x^2 + 5x + 3 = 0$$

$$\therefore (2x + 3)(x + 1) = 0$$

$$\text{giving} \quad x = -\frac{3}{2} \quad \text{or} \quad -1$$

Substituting for x in equation [1]:

$$y = 3\left(-\frac{3}{2}\right)^2 = \frac{27}{4} \quad \text{or} \quad y = 3(-1)^2 = 3$$

The points of intersection are $\left(-\frac{3}{2}, \frac{27}{4}\right)$ and $(-1, 3)$.

Exercise 3I

- Find the coordinates of the points where the following pairs of lines intersect:
 - $x + 2y = 2$ and $3x - 2y = 14$
 - $y + 2x = 5$ and $y = 3x - 5$
 - $y = 2x - 1$ and $y = x + 1$
 - $y = x + 2$ and $2y = 3x + 1$
 - $y = x^2$ and $y + 3x = 4$
 - $y = x^2 + 5x$ and $y - x = 12$
 - $y = x^2 - 4x + 4$ and $y = 2x - 1$
 - $y = x^2 + 1$ and $2y = 5x$
 - $y = x^2 + x - 1$ and $2y + 2 = x^2 + 6x$
 - $y = 4x^2 + 2x - 1$ and $y = x^2 - 3x + 1$
 - $y = x + 1$ and $xy = 6 - 2y$
 - $y = x - 3$ and $y + xy = 5$
- Find the coordinates of the point where the lines $2y - x = 2$ and $y + x = 7$ intersect.
 - Prove that the lines $2y - x = 2$, $y + x = 7$ and $y = 2x - 5$ are concurrent.
- Prove that the three lines $y = 3x$, $y = x + 4$ and $y + 2x = 10$ are concurrent.
- If the three lines $y = x + 4$, $2y + x = 2$ and $y = ax + 8$ are concurrent, find the value of a .
- Explain why the lines $y = 2x - 3$ and $2y - 4x = 1$ do not intersect.
- For each of the following pairs of lines, state whether they intersect or not:
 - $2y + x = 1$ and $4y = 1 - 2x$,
 - $x + y = 3$ and $y = x + 7$,
 - $y = 2x + 3$ and $2y = 5 + x$
- Find the coordinates of the mid-point of the line AB where A and B are the points where the line $y = 2x + 4$ and the curve $y = x^2 - 4$ intersect.
- The line $y = x + 5$ cuts the curve $y = x^2 - 3x$ at two points A and B. Find the coordinates of A and B and the length of the straight line joining these two points.
- Find:
 - the equation of the straight line passing through the point (9, 4) and which is perpendicular to the line $y = 3x - 3$,
 - where this line cuts the line $y = 3x - 3$,
 - the perpendicular distance from (9, 4) to the line $y = 3x - 3$.
- Find:
 - the equation of the perpendicular from (1, 8) to the line $4y = 3x + 4$,
 - the length of the perpendicular from (1, 8) to the line $4y = 3x + 4$.
- The curves $y = 2x^2 - 3x$ and $y = x^2$ intersect at two points. Find the equation of the straight line joining these points.
- Find the coordinates of the vertices of the triangle whose sides are given by the equations $y + x = 11$, $y = x - 1$ and $3y = x - 3$.
- The line $y = ax - 1$ and the curve $y = x^2 + bx - 5$ intersect at the points P(4, -5) and Q. Find the values of a and b and the coordinates of Q.

14. A triangle has vertices at $A(0, 8)$, $B(1, 1)$ and $C(5, 3)$. Show that the triangle is isosceles and find:
- the equation of the straight line through A and C ,
 - the coordinates of the foot of the perpendicular from B to AC ,
 - the length of the perpendicular from B to AC .

Exercise 3J Examination questions

- Three points have coordinates $A(1, 7)$, $B(7, 5)$, and $C(0, -2)$.
Find: (i) the equation of the perpendicular bisector of AB ,
(ii) the point of intersection of this perpendicular bisector and BC .
(Cambridge)
- The perpendicular bisector of the line joining the points $(1, 2)$ and $(5, 4)$ meets the y -axis at the point $(0, k)$. Calculate k . (S.U.J.B.)
- Given that the points $(4, 2)$, $(1, 6)$ and $(5, k)$ lie on a straight line, calculate the value of k .
The line meets the x - and y -axes at A and B , respectively. If O is the origin, calculate the lengths OA and OB , and the area of the triangle AOB .
(S.U.J.B.)
- Three points have coordinates $A(2, 9)$, $B(4, 3)$ and $C(2, -5)$. The line through C with gradient $\frac{1}{2}$ meets the line AB produced at D . Calculate
(i) the coordinates of D ,
(ii) the equation of the line through D perpendicular to the line $5y - 4x = 17$.
(Cambridge)
- Find the coordinates of the point C on the line joining the points $A(-1, 2)$ and $B(-9, 14)$ which divides AB internally so that $\frac{AC}{CB} = \frac{1}{3}$.
Find also the equation of the line through A which is perpendicular to AB .
(London)
- Prove, by calculation, that the triangle formed by the lines $x - 2y + 1 = 0$, $9x + 2y - 11 = 0$ and $7x + 6y - 53 = 0$ is isosceles. Calculate, to the nearest degree, the smallest angle of the triangle. (A.E.B.)
- $ABCD$ is a parallelogram in which the coordinates of A , B and C are $(1, 2)$, $(7, -1)$ and $(-1, -2)$ respectively.
(i) Find the equations of AD and CD .
(ii) Find the coordinates of D .
(iii) Prove that $\angle BAC = 90^\circ$.
(iv) Calculate the area of the parallelogram.
(v) Find the length of the perpendicular from A to BC , leaving your answer in surd form. (J.M.B.)
- P and Q are the points of intersection of the line $\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1$, ($a > 0$, $b > 0$), with the x - and y -axes respectively. The distance PQ is 10 and the gradient of PQ is -2 . Find the value of a and of b . (Cambridge)

9. A point P moves in such a way that its distance from the point $(5, 3)$ is equal to twice its distance from the line $x = 2$. Find the equation of the locus of P . (J.M.B.)
10. Calculate the coordinates of the points of intersection of the straight line $x - y = 3$ and the curve $x^2 - 3xy + y^2 + 19 = 0$. (A.E.B.)
11. Calculate the coordinates of the point of intersection of $\frac{x}{y} + \frac{6y}{x} = 5$ and $2y = x - 2$. (Cambridge)

12.

v	5	10	15	20	25
R	149	175	219	280	359

The table shows corresponding values of variables R and v obtained in an experiment. By drawing a suitable linear graph, show that these pairs of values may be regarded as approximations to values satisfying a relation of the form $R = a + bv^2$, where a and b are constants.

Use your graph to estimate the values of a and b , giving your answers to 2 significant figures. (London)

13. The table shows values of the variables x and y which are believed to be related by the equation $ax^2 + y^2 = b$, where a and b are constants.

x	1	2	3	4	4.5
y	2.96	2.83	2.60	2.24	1.98

Show graphically that, for these values, the equation is approximately satisfied. From your graph estimate

- (i) values for a and b , (ii) the value of y when $x = 2.6$. (A.E.B.)

Trigonometry 1

4.1 Trigonometric ratios of any angle

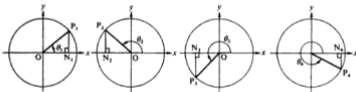
In section 0.6 on page 13, we obtained certain facts:

$$\frac{\sin x}{\cos x} = \tan x, \quad \sin x = \cos(90^\circ - x), \text{ etc.}$$

We also saw how to obtain $\sin x$, $\cos x$ and $\tan x$ for $0^\circ \leq x \leq 180^\circ$. We must now consider the sine, cosine and tangent of angles greater than 180° .

Consider a rotating arm OP of unit length which traces out any angle θ in an **anticlockwise** direction from the line Ox .

The four positions OP_1 , OP_2 , OP_3 and OP_4 shown below correspond to the four angles θ_1 , θ_2 , θ_3 and θ_4 . The x - and y -axes divide each diagram into four **quadrants**: θ_1 is in the first quadrant, θ_2 in the second, θ_3 in the third and θ_4 in the fourth. Perpendiculars are drawn from each position of P to the x -axis.



The trigonometric ratio of any angle is defined as the trigonometric ratio of the **acute** angle between the rotating arm OP and the x -axis with the appropriate sign. The appropriate sign is determined by considering the trigonometric ratio of the acute angle.

So $\cos \theta_2 = \cos P_2\hat{O}N_2$ with the appropriate sign
 $= \frac{ON_2}{OP_2} = \frac{ON_2}{1}$ as OP_2 is of unit length.

But ON_2 is negative.

Hence $\cos \theta_2 = -\cos(180^\circ - \theta_2)$.

Similarly, $\tan \theta_3 = \tan P_3\hat{O}N_3$ with the appropriate sign

$$= \frac{P_3N_3}{ON_3}$$

But ON_3 and P_3N_3 are both negative

so $\tan \theta_3 = +\tan(\theta_3 - 180^\circ)$

By considering the trigonometric ratios of angles in each of the four quadrants, we find that all are positive in the first quadrant, only the sine is positive in the second quadrant, only the tangent is positive in the third quadrant and only the cosine is positive in the fourth quadrant. These results are summarised in the diagram on the right.

$\sin > 0$	all > 0
S	A
T	C
$\tan > 0$	$\cos > 0$

Thus $\sin 320^\circ = -\sin 40^\circ = -0.6428$

The result is negative because only the cosine is positive in the fourth quadrant; we use $\sin 40^\circ$ because 40° is the acute angle that the given angle makes with the x -axis. A calculator gives this answer directly.

Note that if the arm rotates in a clockwise direction, it is said to trace out a negative angle.

Thus $\tan(-30^\circ) = -\tan 30^\circ = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$

The result is negative because only the cosine is positive in the fourth quadrant.

Also $\cos(-30^\circ) = +\cos 30^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$

The result is positive because the cosine is positive in the fourth quadrant.



Example 1

Write each of the following as trigonometric ratios of acute angles.

(a) $\cos 230^\circ$, (b) $\sin 140^\circ$.

(a) $\cos 230^\circ$ (3rd quadrant)
 $= \cos 50^\circ$ with appropriate sign
 $= -\cos 50^\circ$

(b) $\sin 140^\circ$
 $= \sin 40^\circ$ with appropriate sign
 $= +\sin 40^\circ$



Example 2

Evaluate the following without using tables or a calculator. Leave your answers as surds.

(a) $\cos 135^\circ$, (b) $\tan 240^\circ$, (c) $\sin(-45^\circ)$, (d) $\sin 480^\circ$.

(a) $\cos 135^\circ$ (2nd quadrant) $= -\cos 45^\circ = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$

(b) $\tan 240^\circ$ (3rd quadrant) $= +\tan 60^\circ = +\sqrt{3}$

(c) $\sin(-45^\circ)$ (4th quadrant) $= -\sin 45^\circ = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$

(d) $\sin 480^\circ$ In this case, the rotating arm will be in the same position as for 120° .

$$\sin 480^\circ = \sin 120^\circ \text{ (2nd quadrant)} = +\sin 60^\circ = +\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$$



Note that the trigonometric ratio of any angle θ greater than 360° is the same as the trigonometric ratio of $(\theta - 360^\circ)$.

Maximum and minimum values of sine and cosine

The trigonometric ratios of all angles differ from the trigonometric ratios of acute angles only in sign.

From the definition of the sine and cosine:

- the maximum value of $\sin \theta$ is $+1$ (when $\theta = 90^\circ, 450^\circ, \dots$)
- and the minimum value of $\sin \theta$ is -1 (when $\theta = 270^\circ, 630^\circ, \dots$)
- the maximum value of $\cos \theta$ is $+1$ (when $\theta = 0^\circ, 360^\circ, \dots$)
- and the minimum value of $\cos \theta$ is -1 (when $\theta = 180^\circ, 540^\circ, \dots$)

Example 3

Write down the maximum and minimum values of each of the following and state the smallest value of θ , from 0° to 360° , for which these values occur.

(a) $1 - 2 \cos \theta$, (b) $3 \sin \theta - 1$.

(a) $1 - 2 \cos \theta$

Note that $\cos \theta$ varies from $+1$ to -1 , hence $2 \cos \theta$ varies from $+2$ to -2 .

Thus the maximum value of $1 - 2 \cos \theta$ is $1 - (-2) = 3$ and occurs when $\cos \theta = -1$, i.e. $\theta = 180^\circ$.

The minimum value of $1 - 2 \cos \theta$ is $1 - 2 = -1$ and occurs when $\cos \theta = 1$, i.e. $\theta = 0^\circ$.

(b) $3 \sin \theta - 1$

Note that $\sin \theta$ varies from $+1$ to -1 , hence $3 \sin \theta$ varies from $+3$ to -3 .

Thus the maximum value of $3 \sin \theta - 1$ is $3 - 1 = 2$ and occurs when $\sin \theta = 1$, i.e. $\theta = 90^\circ$.

The minimum value of $3 \sin \theta - 1$ is $-3 - 1 = -4$ and occurs when $\sin \theta = -1$, i.e. $\theta = 270^\circ$.

4.2 Trigonometric graphs

Note that, for any angle θ , a single value of $\sin \theta$ (or $\cos \theta$) can be found. The same applies for $\tan \theta$ with the exception of $\theta = \pm 90^\circ, \pm 270^\circ, \dots$ for which values of $\tan \theta$ are not defined.

Thus $\sin \theta$ and $\cos \theta$ are functions which are defined for all positive and negative values of θ ; $\tan \theta$ is a function which is defined for all positive and negative values of θ except $\pm 90^\circ, \pm 270^\circ, \dots$

It is therefore possible to construct tables of values giving ordered pairs for these functions and hence to plot their graphs. Such graphs can then be used to find solutions of trigonometric equations.

Example 4

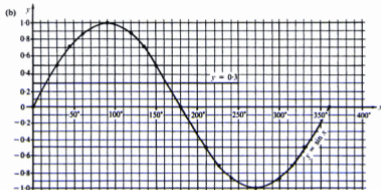
(a) Copy and complete the following table for $y = \sin x$.

x	0°	30°	45°	60°	90°	120°	135°	150°	180°	210°	225°	240°	270°	300°	315°	330°	360°
y	0	0.5	0.71	0.87													

(b) Plot the graph of $y = \sin x$ and use your graph to find approximate solutions to the equation $\sin x = 0.3$, for $0 \leq x \leq 360^\circ$.

(a) The completed table is as follows:

x	0°	30°	45°	60°	90°	120°	135°	150°	180°	210°	225°	240°	270°	300°	315°	330°	360°
y	0	0.5	0.71	0.87	1.0	0.87	0.71	0.5	0	-0.5	-0.71	-0.87	-1.0	-0.87	-0.71	-0.5	0



If $y = \sin x$ and $y = 0.3$, solving these simultaneously gives the solution of the equation $\sin x = 0.3$. We can achieve this on the graph by drawing the line $y = 0.3$ as shown above. The points of intersection of the curve with the line give the solutions:

$$x \approx 17^\circ \quad \text{or} \quad x \approx 163^\circ.$$

Example 5

(a) Copy and complete the following table of values for the function $f: x \rightarrow \tan x$.

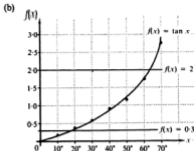
x	0°	10°	20°	30°	40°	50°	60°	70°
$f(x)$	0	0.18						

(b) Plot the graph of the function $f: x \rightarrow \tan x$ for the domain $0^\circ \leq x \leq 70^\circ$ and use your graph to find approximate solutions to the following equations for $0^\circ \leq x \leq 70^\circ$

(i) $\tan x = 0.3$, (ii) $\tan x = 2$.

(a) The completed table is as follows:

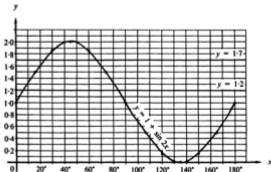
x	0°	10°	20°	30°	40°	50°	60°	70°
$f(x)$	0	0.18	0.36	0.58	0.84	1.19	1.73	2.75



- (i) To solve $\tan x = 0.3$ we require the values of x for which $f(x) = 0.3$.
From the graph, $\tan x = 0.3$ when $x \approx 17^\circ$.
- (ii) To solve $\tan x = 2$ we require the values of x for which $f(x) = 2$.
From the graph, $\tan x = 2$ when $x \approx 63^\circ$.

Example 6

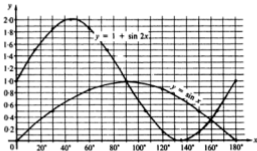
- (a) Plot the graph of $y = 1 + \sin 2x$ for $0^\circ \leq x \leq 180^\circ$
- (b) Obtain approximate solutions from the graph to the equations
(i) $1 + \sin 2x = 1.2$, (ii) $\sin 2x = 0.7$, (iii) $1 + \sin 2x = \sin x$.
- (a) The graph of $y = 1 + \sin 2x$ is plotted from a table of values as before.



- (i) To solve the equation $1 + \sin 2x = 1.2$, we need to draw $y = 1.2$ on the same graph and find the values of x at the points of intersection.
From the graph $x \approx 6^\circ$ or $x \approx 84^\circ$.
- (ii) To solve the equation $\sin 2x = 0.7$ compare it with $y = 1 + \sin 2x$ which we have drawn.
From $\sin 2x = 0.7$, $1 + \sin 2x = 1 + 0.7 = 1.7$.

So the intersection of $y = 1.7$ with $y = 1 + \sin 2x$ will give the required values of x .
From the graph $x \approx 22^\circ$ or $x \approx 68^\circ$.

- (iii) To solve $1 + \sin 2x = \sin x$, we need to draw $y = \sin x$ from a table of values. The points of intersection of these two graphs will give the required values of x .



From the graph $x = 90^\circ$ or $x \approx 160^\circ$.

Exercise 4A

- State in which of the four quadrants each of the angles A to E must lie, given that
 - both $\sin A$ and $\cos A$ are positive,
 - both $\sin B$ and $\cos B$ are negative,
 - $\cos C$ is positive and $\sin C$ is negative,
 - both $\cos D$ and $\tan D$ are negative,
 - $\sin E$ is negative and $\tan E$ is positive.
- Write each of the following as trigonometrical ratios of acute angles.

(a) $\sin 160^\circ$	(b) $\sin 220^\circ$	(c) $\cos 310^\circ$	(d) $\tan 200^\circ$
(e) $\sin 350^\circ$	(f) $\tan 350^\circ$	(g) $\cos 220^\circ$	(h) $\sin (-40^\circ)$
(i) $\cos (-50^\circ)$	(j) $\tan (-130^\circ)$	(k) $\sin (-170^\circ)$	(l) $\cos (-160^\circ)$
(m) $\sin 310^\circ$	(n) $\sin 400^\circ$	(o) $\cos 460^\circ$	(p) $\tan 740^\circ$
- Without using tables or a calculator, write down the values of the following, leaving surds in your answers.

(a) $\sin 150^\circ$	(b) $\cos 210^\circ$	(c) $\cos 300^\circ$	(d) $\sin 330^\circ$
(e) $\tan 300^\circ$	(f) $\tan 225^\circ$	(g) $\sin 270^\circ$	(h) $\cos 270^\circ$
(i) $\sin (-30^\circ)$	(j) $\tan (-135^\circ)$	(k) $\cos 390^\circ$	(l) $\cos 570^\circ$
- Without the use of a calculator or tables, write down (i) the maximum value and (ii) the minimum value of each of the following functions and state the smallest value of θ , from 0° to 360° , for which these values occur.

(a) $\sin \theta$	(b) $2 \sin \theta$	(c) $3 \cos \theta$	(d) $2 + \sin \theta$
(e) $3 - \cos \theta$	(f) $3 + 2 \sin \theta$	(g) $\sin 2\theta$	(h) $\cos 2\theta - 1$

5. (a) Copy and complete the following table for $y = \cos x$. Tables or a calculator may be used where necessary, giving answers correct to two decimal places.

x	0°	30°	45°	60°	90°	120°	135°	150°	180°	210°	225°	240°	270°	300°	315°	330°	360°
y																	

- (b) Plot the graph of $y = \cos x$ for x from 0° to 720° (i.e. twice the interval used in the above table) using a scale of 1 cm to 50° on the x -axis and a scale of 4 cm to 1 unit on the y -axis. Remember that $\cos 390^\circ = \cos 30^\circ$, etc.
6. (a) Copy and complete the following table of values for the function $f: x \rightarrow \sin 3x$. Tables or a calculator may be used where necessary, giving answers correct to two decimal places.

x	0°	10°	20°	30°	40°	50°	60°	70°	80°	90°	100°	110°	120°
$f(x)$													

- (b) Use a scale of 1 cm for 10° on the horizontal x -axis and a scale of 4 cm to 1 unit on the vertical y -axis, plot the graph of the function for the domain $0^\circ \leq x \leq 120^\circ$.
- (c) From your graph, find approximate solutions to the following equations for $0^\circ \leq x \leq 120^\circ$,
 (i) $\sin 3x = 0.6$, (ii) $\sin 3x = -0.6$, (iii) $\sin 3x = 0.7$.
7. (a) Copy and complete the following table of values for the function $f: x \rightarrow 1 + \cos 2x$.

x	0°	15°	30°	45°	60°	75°	90°	105°	120°	135°	150°	165°	180°
$f(x)$													

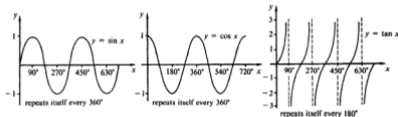
Tables or a calculator may be used where necessary, giving answers correct to two decimal places.

- (b) Plot the graph of the function $f: x \rightarrow 1 + \cos 2x$ for the domain $0^\circ \leq x \leq 180^\circ$ and use your graph to find approximate solutions to the following equations for $0^\circ \leq x \leq 180^\circ$,
 (i) $1 + \cos 2x = 1.3$, (ii) $1 + \cos 2x = 0.8$, (iii) $\cos 2x = -0.7$.
8. (a) Plot the graphs of $y = \cos x$ and $y = 2 \sin x$ on a single pair of axes for $0^\circ \leq x \leq 360^\circ$.
- (b) Use your graph to find approximate solutions of $\cos x = 2 \sin x$ for $0^\circ \leq x \leq 360^\circ$.
9. (a) Plot the graphs of $y = 2 \cos x - 1$ and $y = \sin x$ on a single pair of axes for $0^\circ \leq x \leq 360^\circ$.
- (b) Use your graph to find approximate solutions to the following equations for $0^\circ \leq x \leq 360^\circ$,
 (i) $2 \cos x - 1 = -1.5$, (ii) $2 \cos x = 0.5$, (iii) $2 \cos x - 1 = \sin x$.
10. (a) Plot the graph of $y = 0.5 + \sin x$ and $y = \cos x$ on a single pair of axes for $0^\circ \leq x \leq 360^\circ$.
- (b) Use your graph to find approximate solutions to the followings equations for $0^\circ \leq x \leq 360^\circ$.
 (i) $0.5 + \sin x = 1.1$, (ii) $\sin x = 0.3$, (iii) $0.5 + \sin x = \cos x$.

4.3 Graph sketching

In the last section some graphs of trigonometric functions were plotted accurately in order to obtain solutions to trigonometric equations. However, the information required by some questions may not require us to make an accurate plot of the graphs. For example we may want to know how many solutions a particular equation has in a given interval and not be required to find the solutions themselves. In such cases a *sketch* of the graph showing its basic characteristics would be sufficient.

Sketch graphs of $y = \sin x$, $y = \cos x$ and $y = \tan x$ are shown below for $0^\circ \leq x \leq 720^\circ$. They are not drawn on graph paper and could not be used to obtain solutions to equations with any great degree of accuracy but each sketch does show the essential features of each function.



To make sketch graphs of other trigonometric functions we build up information about the graph until sufficient is known to enable a sketch to be made. This will involve far fewer points than are required for an accurate plot of the graph.

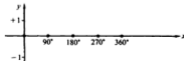
We may consider

- some easily determined points, for example when sketching $y = \sin x$ we can use the facts that $\sin 0^\circ = 0$, $\sin 90^\circ = 1$ etc.,
- the limits (i.e. maximum and minimum values) of the function,
- where the graph crosses the axes,
- whether the graph repeats itself over a certain interval (i.e. is periodic),
- whether the curve has any symmetry.

Example 7

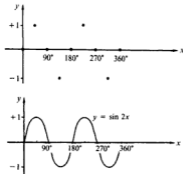
Sketch the graph of $y = \sin 2x$ for $0^\circ \leq x \leq 360^\circ$.

The values of y will range from $+1$ to -1 . The period of the sine function is 360° so our graph should repeat itself after 180° . The values of y for $x = 0^\circ, 90^\circ, 180^\circ, 270^\circ, 360^\circ$ are easily marked.

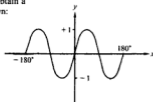


The maximum value of y occurs when
 $\sin 2x = 1$
 i.e. $2x = 90^\circ, 450^\circ \dots$ or $x = 45^\circ, 225^\circ \dots$
 The minimum value of y occurs when
 $\sin 2x = -1$
 i.e. $2x = 270^\circ, 630^\circ \dots$ or $x = 135^\circ, 315^\circ \dots$

Thus the sketch can be completed:



Note that if we continue the sketch backwards to include negative angles, we would obtain a sketch for $-180^\circ \leq x \leq 180^\circ$ as shown:

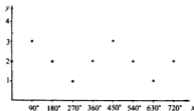


The graph of $y = \sin x$ is symmetrical under a 180° rotation about the origin as we would expect for an odd function (i.e. $\sin(-x) = -\sin x$). Note that $\tan x$ is also an odd function (i.e. $\tan(-x) = -\tan x$) and so its graph would also be symmetrical under a 180° rotation about the origin. However $\cos(-x) = \cos x$ and so the cosine function is even and is therefore symmetrical for a reflection in the y -axis.

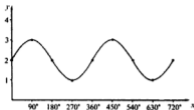
Example 8

Sketch the graph of $y = 2 + \sin x$ for $0^\circ \leq x \leq 720^\circ$

The values of y will range from $+3$ to $+1$,
 i.e. the curve does not cut the x -axis.
 It crosses the y -axis when $x = 0$, i.e. $y = 2$.
 Values of y for $x = 0^\circ, 90^\circ, 180^\circ, \dots$ can easily
 be marked.



The sketch can then be completed:



Example 9

Sketch the graph of $y = \cos(x + 30^\circ)$ for $-90^\circ \leq x \leq 360^\circ$

The values of y will range from $+1$ to -1 . The graph will repeat itself every 360° . In this example the values $x = 90^\circ, 180^\circ, \dots$ will not necessarily give convenient values for y . Instead, consider where the graph cuts the axes.

It crosses the x -axis where $y = 0$

i.e. $x + 30^\circ = 90^\circ, 270^\circ, \dots$

or $x = 60^\circ, 240^\circ, \dots$

It crosses the y -axis where $x = 0$

i.e. $y = \cos 30^\circ = 0.87$

Maximum value of y occurs where

$\cos(x + 30^\circ) = 1$

i.e. $x + 30^\circ = 0^\circ, 360^\circ, \dots$

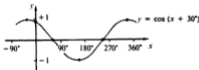
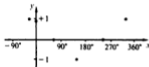
or $x = -30^\circ, 330^\circ, \dots$

Minimum value of y occurs where

$\cos(x + 30^\circ) = -1$

i.e. $x + 30^\circ = 180^\circ, \dots$

$x = 150^\circ, \dots$



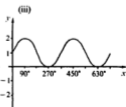
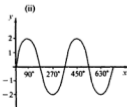
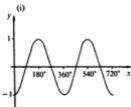
The sketch can then be completed:

Exercise 4B

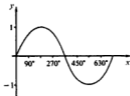
1. For each of the equations (a) to (f) listed below, state which one of the sketch graphs (i) to (vi) applies.

(a) $y = -\tan x$, (b) $y = -\cos x$, (c) $y = 1 + \sin x$, (d) $y = 2 \sin x$,

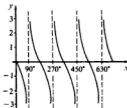
(e) $y = 1 - \cos x$, (f) $y = \sin \frac{1}{2}x$.



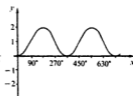
(iv)



(v)



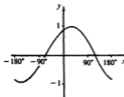
(vi)



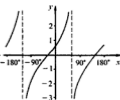
2. For each of the equations (a) to (c) listed below, state which one of the sketch graphs (i) to (iii) applies.

(a) $y = \tan(x + 30^\circ)$, (b) $y = \sin(x - 60^\circ)$, (c) $y = \sin(x + 60^\circ)$.

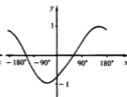
(i)



(ii)



(iii)



3. Make sketch graphs of the following for $0^\circ \leq x \leq 360^\circ$

(a) $y = 2 \cos x$, (b) $y = 1 + \cos x$, (c) $y = \cos 2x$.

4. Make sketch graphs of the following for $0^\circ \leq x \leq 720^\circ$

(a) $y = -\sin x$, (b) $y = 1 - \sin x$, (c) $y = 2 - \cos x$.

5. Make sketch graphs of the following for $-180^\circ \leq x \leq +180^\circ$

(a) $y = \sin(x + 30^\circ)$, (b) $y = \cos(x - 60^\circ)$, (c) $y = 1 - \sin 2x$.

6. On a single diagram sketch the graphs of $y = \cos x$ and $y = \tan x$ for $0^\circ \leq x \leq 360^\circ$. Hence state the number of solutions there are to the equation $\cos x = \tan x$ in the interval $0^\circ \leq x \leq 360^\circ$.

7. On a single diagram sketch the graphs of $y = \cos 2x$ and $y = 2 \cos x$ for $0^\circ \leq x \leq 360^\circ$. Hence state the number of solutions there are to the equation $\cos 2x = 2 \cos x$ in the interval $0^\circ \leq x \leq 360^\circ$.

8. On a single diagram sketch the graphs of $y = 1 + \sin x$ and $y = 2 \cos \frac{1}{2}x$ for $0^\circ \leq x \leq 360^\circ$. Hence state the number of solutions there are to the equation $1 + \sin x = 2 \cos \frac{1}{2}x$ in the interval $0^\circ \leq x \leq 360^\circ$.

4.4 Solving trigonometric equations

In section 4.2 the solutions of some trigonometric equations were found by graphical methods. The solutions obtained were consequently only approximate and the solutions were in the interval for which the graphs were drawn. In general there will be numerous solutions, so that in any particular question we need to be given an interval for which solutions are required, e.g. $0^\circ \leq \theta \leq 360^\circ$. In some cases we may recognize the ratios as those of particular angles (0° , 30° , 45° , 60° ... etc.) but in other cases we shall need to use either a calculator or tables to solve the equations. In all cases, the solutions should be sketched in the correct quadrants and then the answers lying in the required interval given.

Example 10

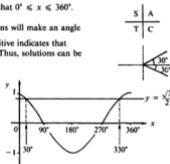
Solve the equation $\cos x = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ for values of x such that $0^\circ \leq x \leq 360^\circ$.

The acute angle with a cosine of $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ is 30° , so solutions will make an angle of 30° with the x -axis. The fact that the cosine is positive indicates that there are solutions in the 1st and the 4th quadrants. Thus, solutions can be sketched as shown on the right.

For the range $0^\circ \leq x \leq 360^\circ$, $x = 30^\circ$ or 330° .

An alternative method is to sketch the graph of $y = \cos x$ for $0^\circ \leq x \leq 360^\circ$ and of $y = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$.

From the graph we see that the solutions must occur at 30° and at $360^\circ - 30^\circ = 330^\circ$.



In the following examples this sketch graph method will not be used.

Example 11

Solve the equation $\tan x = -\sqrt{3}$ for values of x such that $-180^\circ \leq x \leq 180^\circ$.

We first ignore the minus sign and find the acute angle with a tangent of $\sqrt{3}$; this is 60° so solutions will make an angle of 60° with the x -axis.

Using the fact that the tangent is negative indicates that there are solutions in the 2nd and the 4th quadrants. Thus solutions can be sketched as shown on the right.

For the range $-180^\circ \leq x \leq 180^\circ$, $x = -60^\circ$ or 120° .



Example 12

Solve the following equations for $0^\circ \leq x \leq 360^\circ$.

(a) $\cos x = 0.2$, (b) $\sin x = -0.2$.

- (a) We require the acute angle with a cosine of 0.2. This is found either by using the inverse cosine function (written \cos^{-1} or \arccos) on a calculator or by using cosine tables.

$$\cos^{-1} 0.2 = 78.46^\circ$$

i.e. solutions will make an angle of 78.46° with the x -axis. Because the cosine is positive, solutions are found in the 1st and the 4th quadrants. Thus solutions can be sketched as shown on the right.

For the range $0^\circ \leq x \leq 360^\circ$, $x = 78.46^\circ$ or 281.54° .



- (b) There are two possible methods of solution.

METHOD 1 is similar to that used above. We first ignore the minus sign in $\sin x = -0.2$.

From a calculator or tables $\sin^{-1} 0.2 = 11.54^\circ$, i.e. solutions will make an angle of 11.54° with the x -axis. Because the sine is negative, solutions are found in the 3rd and the 4th quadrants. Thus, solutions can be sketched as shown on the right.

For the range $0^\circ \leq x \leq 360^\circ$, $x = 191.54^\circ$ or 348.46° .



METHOD 2 involves finding $\sin^{-1}(-0.2)$ directly from the calculator:

$\sin^{-1}(-0.2) = -11.54^\circ$ as shown on the sketch. We also know that $\sin x$ is negative in the 3rd quadrant, so giving the second solution.

For the range $0^\circ \leq x \leq 360^\circ$, $x = 191.54^\circ$ or 348.46° .



Note Inverse trigonometric functions found on a calculator always give angles that are within a set interval, dependent on the function being used.

For \sin^{-1} and \tan^{-1} the calculator always gives the angle in the range -90° to $+90^\circ$.

For \cos^{-1} the calculator always gives the angle in the range 0° to 180° .

These intervals are used because sine, cosine and tangent are one-to-one functions for these intervals and thus proper inverse functions do exist.

Other solutions to an equation can then be found in the usual way using:

$$\frac{S}{T} \mid \frac{A}{C}$$

The inverse functions \sin^{-1} , \cos^{-1} and \tan^{-1} are discussed in more detail in chapter 15.

Example 13Solve $\cos x = -0.3$ for $-180^\circ \leq x \leq 180^\circ$.**METHOD 1** First ignore the minus sign:

$$\cos^{-1} 0.3 = 72.54^\circ \text{ from a calculator or tables.}$$

Because the cosine is negative, solutions are in the 2nd and the 3rd quadrants. Thus solutions can be sketched as shown on the right.

For the range $-180^\circ \leq x \leq 180^\circ$, $x = 107.46^\circ$ or -107.46° .**METHOD 2**

$$\cos^{-1} (-0.3) = 107.46^\circ \text{ from a calculator}$$

This is the solution in the 2nd quadrant; because the cosine is negative there is also a solution in the 3rd quadrant of -107.46° as shown on the right.For the range $-180^\circ \leq x \leq 180^\circ$, $x = 107.46^\circ$ or -107.46° .

The following examples show the use of method 1 to solve more complicated equations.

Example 14Solve $\sin(x + 10^\circ) = -0.5$ for $0^\circ \leq x \leq 360^\circ$.

$$\sin^{-1} 0.5 = 30^\circ \text{ i.e. solutions will make an angle of } 30^\circ \text{ with the } x\text{-axis.}$$

Because the sine is negative, solutions are in the 3rd and the 4th quadrants:

$$\text{Thus } x + 10^\circ = 210^\circ \text{ or } x + 10^\circ = 330^\circ$$

$$\text{i.e. } x = 200^\circ \text{ or } 320^\circ.$$

**Example 15**Solve $\cos 2x = 0.6$ for $0^\circ \leq x \leq 360^\circ$.

$$\cos^{-1} 0.6 = 53.13^\circ, \text{ i.e. solutions will make an angle of } 53.13^\circ \text{ with the } x\text{-axis.}$$

Because the cosine is positive, solutions are in the 1st and the 4th quadrants:

$$\text{Thus } 2x = 53.13^\circ, 306.87^\circ, 413.13^\circ, 666.87^\circ.$$

Notice that we must consider solutions for $2x$ from 0° to 720° as this will give solutions for x in the interval 0° to 360° as required.

$$\text{i.e. } x = 26.57^\circ, 153.43^\circ, 206.57^\circ, 333.43^\circ.$$

**Example 16**Solve $3(\tan x + 1) = 2$ for $-180^\circ \leq x \leq 180^\circ$.

$$\text{Expanding } 3 \tan x + 3 = 2$$

$$\text{i.e. } \tan x = -\frac{1}{3}$$

$$\tan^{-1} \frac{1}{3} = 18.43^\circ, \text{ i.e. solutions will make an angle of } 18.43^\circ \text{ with the } x\text{-axis.}$$

Because the tangent is negative, solutions are in the 2nd and the 4th quadrants:

$$\text{For the range } -180^\circ \leq x \leq 180^\circ, x = -18.43^\circ \text{ or } 161.57^\circ.$$



Example 17Solve $\sin^2 x + \sin x \cos x = 0$ for $0^\circ \leq x < 360^\circ$.Factorising $\sin x(\sin x + \cos x) = 0$ Thus, either $\sin x = 0$ Now $\sin^{-1} 0 = 0^\circ$ and so solutions can be sketched:

$$x = 0^\circ, 180^\circ, 360^\circ$$

or $\sin x + \cos x = 0$

$$\sin x = -\cos x$$

$$\tan x = -1 \quad (\text{dividing by } \cos x)$$

Now $\tan^{-1} 1 = 45^\circ$ and, because the tangent is negative, solutions will occur in the 2nd and the 4th quadrants:

$$x = 135^\circ \text{ or } 315^\circ$$

Thus for the range $0^\circ \leq x < 360^\circ$, $x = 0^\circ, 135^\circ, 180^\circ, 315^\circ$ or 360° .

Note: It is important that we factorise $\sin^2 x + \sin x \cos x$ in the last example and do not attempt to cancel by $\sin x$. Cancelling would lead to $\sin x = -\cos x$ and so the solutions arising from $\sin x = 0$ would be lost.

Example 18Solve $6 \cos^2 x - \cos x - 1 = 0$ for $0^\circ \leq x < 360^\circ$.Factorising $(3 \cos x + 1)(2 \cos x - 1) = 0$ Thus, either $3 \cos x + 1 = 0$

$$\cos x = -\frac{1}{3}$$

Now $\cos^{-1} \frac{1}{3} = 70.53^\circ$ and, because the cosine is negative, solutions are in the 2nd and the 3rd quadrants:

$$x = 109.47^\circ, 250.53^\circ$$

or $2 \cos x - 1 = 0$

$$\cos x = \frac{1}{2}$$

Now $\cos^{-1} \frac{1}{2} = 60^\circ$ and, because the cosine is positive, solutions are in the 1st and 4th quadrants:

$$x = 60^\circ, 300^\circ$$

Thus for the range $0^\circ \leq x < 360^\circ$, $x = 60^\circ, 109.47^\circ, 250.53^\circ, 300^\circ$.

Note: In some cases, factorising can give a bracket that does not lead to any solutions. For example, if we had to solve

$$(2 \cos x - 1)(\cos x - 2) = 0 \text{ for } 0^\circ \leq x < 360^\circ$$

either $2 \cos x - 1 = 0$

$$\cos x = \frac{1}{2}$$

giving $x = 60^\circ, 300^\circ$ or $\cos x - 2 = 0$

$$\cos x = 2$$

which has no solutions.

Thus $x = 60^\circ$ or 300° are the only solutions.

Exercise 4C

1. Solve the following equations for all values of x from 0° to 360° .

(a) $\sin x = \frac{1}{2}$ (b) $\cos x = -\frac{1}{2}$ (c) $\tan x = 1$

(d) $\tan x = -1$ (e) $\sin x = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ (f) $\cos x = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$

2. Solve the following equations for all values of x from -180° to $+180^\circ$.

(a) $\sin x = -\frac{1}{2}$ (b) $\cos x = \frac{1}{2}$ (c) $\sin x = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$

(d) $\tan x = \sqrt{3}$ (e) $\cos x = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ (f) $\cos x = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$

Solve the following equations for all values of x from 0° to 360° .

3. $\sin x = 0.3$

4. $\cos x = -0.75$

5. $\tan x = -0.75$

6. $\cos^2 x = \frac{1}{2}$

7. $\sin x = 2 \cos x$

8. $2 \sin x - 3 \cos x = 0$

9. $\sin 2x = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$

10. $\cos 2x = \frac{1}{2}$

11. $\sin(x + 20^\circ) = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$

12. $\tan(x - 30^\circ) = 1$

13. $3(\cos x - 1) = -1$

14. $\sin x(1 - 2 \cos x) = 0$

15. $\cos x(2 \sin x + \cos x) = 0$

16. $2 \sin x \cos x + \sin x = 0$

17. $4 \sin x \cos x = 3 \cos x$

18. $4 \cos^2 x + \cos x = 0$

19. $\tan x = 4 \sin x$

20. $(2 \sin x - 1)(\sin x + 1) = 0$

21. $2 \sin^2 x - \sin x - 1 = 0$

22. $2 \tan^2 x - \tan x - 6 = 0$

23. $2 \tan x - \frac{1}{\tan x} = 1$

Solve the following equations for all values of x from -180° to $+180^\circ$.

24. $\cos^2 x = \frac{1}{2}$

25. $\sin 2x = 2 \cos 2x$

26. $\cos(x - 20^\circ) = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$

27. $\cos x(\sin x - 1) = 0$

28. $3 \sin^2 x = 2 \sin x \cos x$

29. $2 \cos^2 x - 5 \cos x + 2 = 0$

30. (a) Factorise the expression $6 \sin \theta \cos \theta + 3 \cos \theta + 4 \sin \theta + 2$

(b) Hence solve the equation $6 \sin \theta \cos \theta + 3 \cos \theta + 4 \sin \theta + 2 = 0$ for $-180^\circ \leq \theta \leq 180^\circ$.

31. (a) Factorise the expression $3 \sin \theta \cos \theta - 3 \sin \theta + 2 \cos \theta - 2$

(b) Hence solve the equation $3 \sin \theta \cos \theta - 3 \sin \theta + 2 \cos \theta = 2$ for $0^\circ \leq \theta \leq 360^\circ$.

4.5 Pythagorean relationships

In section 4.4 we were concerned with the solution of trigonometric equations, i.e. we were finding the particular angles for which the equations were true.

In this section we are dealing with trigonometric **identities** which are true for all angles.

In section 0.6 we showed that $\frac{\sin x}{\cos x} = \tan x$ and this is an identity. It is true for all values of x .

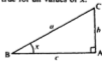
Consider the right-angled triangle ABC.

$$\sin x = \frac{b}{a} \quad \text{and} \quad \cos x = \frac{c}{a}$$

$$\text{hence } \sin^2 x + \cos^2 x = \frac{b^2}{a^2} + \frac{c^2}{a^2} = \frac{b^2 + c^2}{a^2}$$

$$\text{But, by Pythagoras } b^2 + c^2 = a^2, \text{ hence } \sin^2 x + \cos^2 x = \frac{a^2}{a^2} = 1.$$

This is an *identity* and it is true for all values of x .



Example 19

Prove the identity $(\sin \theta + \cos \theta)(1 - \sin \theta \cos \theta) = \sin^3 \theta + \cos^3 \theta$.

Consider the left hand side of the identity

$$\begin{aligned} \text{L.H.S.} &= (\sin \theta + \cos \theta)(1 - \sin \theta \cos \theta) \\ &= \sin \theta - \sin^2 \theta \cos \theta + \cos \theta - \sin \theta \cos^2 \theta \\ &= \sin \theta - (1 - \cos^2 \theta)\cos \theta + \cos \theta - \sin \theta(1 - \sin^2 \theta) \quad \text{using } \sin^2 \theta + \cos^2 \theta = 1 \\ &= \sin \theta - \cos \theta + \cos^3 \theta + \cos \theta - \sin \theta + \sin^3 \theta \\ &= \sin^3 \theta + \cos^3 \theta \\ &= \text{R.H.S. of identity} \end{aligned}$$

Note: (i) In the proof of an identity we should start from one side of the given identity and try to obtain the other side. It is usually best to start from the more complicated side of the identity and attempt to simplify it.

(ii) The sign '=' is sometimes used for identities. Thus Example 19 could have been written:

$$\text{Prove that } (\sin \theta + \cos \theta)(1 - \sin \theta \cos \theta) = \sin^3 \theta + \cos^3 \theta.$$

4.6 Secant, cosecant and cotangent

These three trigonometric ratios can be defined in terms of the sides of a right-angled triangle ABC.

$$\text{secant } x \text{ (written sec } x) = \frac{a}{c} = \frac{1}{\cos x}$$

$$\text{cosecant } x \text{ (written cosec } x) = \frac{a}{b} = \frac{1}{\sin x}$$

$$\text{cotangent } x \text{ (written cot } x) = \frac{c}{b} = \frac{1}{\tan x}$$

The reciprocal relationships with sine, cosine and tangent should be noted. It follows that the cosecant, secant and cotangent of angles greater than 90° will have the same sign as the sine, cosine and tangent of these angles respectively.

Since $\text{cosec } \theta = \frac{1}{\sin \theta}$, the cosec will be positive in the 1st and 2nd quadrants,

$\text{sec } \theta = \frac{1}{\cos \theta}$ thus the secant will be positive in the 1st and 4th quadrants,

$\text{cot } \theta = \frac{1}{\tan \theta}$ thus the cotangent will be positive in the 1st and 3rd quadrants.

**Example 20**

Without using tables or a calculator, find the values of

(a) $\text{cosec } 150^\circ$, (b) $\text{cot } 240^\circ$, (c) $\text{sec } 225^\circ$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(a) cosec } 150^\circ &= \frac{1}{\sin 150^\circ} \\ &= \frac{1}{\sin 30^\circ} \\ &= +2 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(b) cot } 240^\circ &= \frac{1}{\tan 240^\circ} \\ &= \frac{1}{\tan 60^\circ} \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(c) sec } 225^\circ &= \frac{1}{\cos 225^\circ} \\ &= \frac{1}{-\cos 45^\circ} \\ &= -\sqrt{2} \end{aligned}$$

In addition to the reciprocal relationships, it also follows that:

$$\sec x = \operatorname{cosec}(90^\circ - x) \text{ and } \cot x = \tan(90^\circ - x).$$

From the identity $\sin^2 x + \cos^2 x = 1$, two further identities can be obtained.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{(i)} & \sin^2 x + \cos^2 x = 1 \\ & \text{divide by } \cos^2 x \quad \frac{\sin^2 x}{\cos^2 x} + 1 = \frac{1}{\cos^2 x} \\ & \Rightarrow \tan^2 x + 1 = \sec^2 x \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ll} \text{(ii)} & \sin^2 x + \cos^2 x = 1 \\ & \text{divide by } \sin^2 x \quad 1 + \frac{\cos^2 x}{\sin^2 x} = \frac{1}{\sin^2 x} \\ & \Rightarrow 1 + \cot^2 x = \operatorname{cosec}^2 x \end{array}$$

Thus the three pythagorean identities are

$$\begin{array}{l} \sin^2 x + \cos^2 x = 1 \\ 1 + \tan^2 x = \sec^2 x \\ 1 + \cot^2 x = \operatorname{cosec}^2 x \end{array}$$

Example 21

Prove the identity $\tan^2 \theta + \sin^2 \theta = (\sec \theta + \cos \theta)(\sec \theta - \cos \theta)$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{R.H.S.} &= (\sec \theta + \cos \theta)(\sec \theta - \cos \theta) \\ &= \sec^2 \theta - \sec \theta \cos \theta + \cos \theta \sec \theta - \cos^2 \theta \\ &= \sec^2 \theta - \cos^2 \theta \\ &= (1 + \tan^2 \theta) - (1 - \sin^2 \theta) \\ &= 1 + \tan^2 \theta - 1 + \sin^2 \theta \\ &= \tan^2 \theta + \sin^2 \theta = \text{L.H.S.} \end{aligned}$$

Example 22

Prove that $\cot^4 \theta + \cot^2 \theta = \operatorname{cosec}^4 \theta - \operatorname{cosec}^2 \theta$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{L.H.S.} &= \cot^4 \theta + \cot^2 \theta \\ &= \cot^2 \theta(\cot^2 \theta + 1) \\ &= (\operatorname{cosec}^2 \theta - 1)(\operatorname{cosec}^2 \theta) \quad \text{since } \operatorname{cosec}^2 \theta = 1 + \cot^2 \theta \\ &= \operatorname{cosec}^4 \theta - \operatorname{cosec}^2 \theta = \text{R.H.S.} \end{aligned}$$

Example 23

Prove the identity $\sqrt{\left(\frac{1 - \cos \theta}{1 + \cos \theta}\right)} = \operatorname{cosec} \theta - \cot \theta$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{L.H.S.} &= \sqrt{\left(\frac{1 - \cos \theta}{1 + \cos \theta}\right)} \\ &= \sqrt{\left[\left(\frac{1 - \cos \theta}{1 + \cos \theta}\right)\left(\frac{1 - \cos \theta}{1 - \cos \theta}\right)\right]} \\ &= \sqrt{\left[\frac{(1 - \cos \theta)^2}{(1 - \cos^2 \theta)}\right]} = \sqrt{\left[\frac{(1 - \cos \theta)^2}{\sin^2 \theta}\right]} \\ &= \frac{1 - \cos \theta}{\sin \theta} \\ &= \frac{1}{\sin \theta} - \frac{\cos \theta}{\sin \theta} \\ &= \operatorname{cosec} \theta - \cot \theta = \text{R.H.S.} \end{aligned}$$

Equations involving sec, cosec and cot can be solved in a similar way to those involving sin, cos and tan.

Example 24

Solve the equation $4 \cos \theta - 3 \sec \theta = 2 \tan \theta$ for $-180^\circ \leq \theta \leq +180^\circ$.

$$4 \cos \theta - 3 \sec \theta = 2 \tan \theta$$

$$4 \cos \theta - \frac{3}{\cos \theta} = \frac{2 \sin \theta}{\cos \theta}$$

Multiplying by $\cos \theta$ gives

$$4 \cos^2 \theta - 3 = 2 \sin \theta$$

i.e. $4(1 - \sin^2 \theta) - 3 = 2 \sin \theta$ or $4 \sin^2 \theta + 2 \sin \theta - 1 = 0$

hence $\sin \theta = \frac{-2 \pm \sqrt{(4 + 16)}}{8}$

so $\sin \theta = 0.3090$ or -0.8090

Now $\sin^{-1}(0.3090) = 18^\circ$ and $\sin^{-1}(0.8090) = 54^\circ$



Thus for the range $-180^\circ \leq \theta \leq +180^\circ$, $\theta = -126^\circ, -54^\circ, 18^\circ, 162^\circ$.

Exercise 4D

1. Without the use of tables or calculator find the values of

- (a) $\sec 45^\circ$ (b) $\cot 45^\circ$ (c) $\operatorname{cosec} 30^\circ$ (d) $\sec 60^\circ$
 (e) $\operatorname{cosec} 135^\circ$ (f) $\sec 120^\circ$ (g) $\operatorname{cosec} 330^\circ$ (h) $\sec 240^\circ$
 (i) $\cot(-135^\circ)$ (j) $\sec(-60^\circ)$ (k) $\sec(-120^\circ)$ (l) $\operatorname{cosec} 315^\circ$

2. Simplify the following expressions

- (a) $\sqrt{(1 - \sin A)(1 + \sin A)}$,
 (b) $\operatorname{cosec} \theta \tan \theta$,
 (c) $\frac{1}{\sec^2 \theta} + \frac{1}{\operatorname{cosec}^2 \theta}$,
 (d) $\cot \theta / (1 - \cos^2 \theta)$.

3. Prove the following identities.

- (a) $\sin \theta \tan \theta + \cos \theta = \sec \theta$, (b) $\operatorname{cosec} \theta - \sin \theta = \cot \theta \cos \theta$,
 (c) $(\sin \theta + \cos \theta)^2 + (\sin \theta - \cos \theta)^2 = 2$, (d) $(\sin \theta + \operatorname{cosec} \theta)^2 = \sin^2 \theta + \cot^2 \theta + 3$.

4. If $x = 2 \sin \theta$ and $3y = \cos \theta$ show that $x^2 + 36y^2 = 4$.

5. Eliminate θ from each of the following pairs of relationships.

- (a) $x = \sin \theta$, $y = \cos \theta$, (b) $x = 3 \sin \theta$, $y = \operatorname{cosec} \theta$,
 (c) $5x = \sin \theta$, $y = 2 \cos \theta$, (d) $x = 3 + \sin \theta$, $y = \cos \theta$,
 (e) $x = 2 + \sin \theta$, $\cos \theta = 1 + y$.

6. Solve the following equations for all values of θ from -180° to $+180^\circ$.

- (a) $4 - \sin \theta = 4 \cos^2 \theta$, (b) $\sin^2 \theta + \cos \theta + 1 = 0$,
 (c) $5 - 5 \cos \theta = 3 \sin^2 \theta$, (d) $8 \tan \theta = 3 \cos \theta$,
 (e) $\sin^2 \theta + 5 \cos^2 \theta = 3$, (f) $1 - \cos^2 \theta = -2 \sin \theta \cos \theta$.

7. Solve the following equations for all values of θ from 0° to 360° .

- (a) $\sec \theta = 2$, (b) $\cot 2\theta = -\frac{1}{2}$,
 (c) $3 \cot \theta = \tan \theta$, (d) $2 \sin \theta = -3 \cot \theta$,
 (e) $2 \sec^2 \theta - 3 + \tan \theta = 0$, (f) $2 \tan \theta = 3 + 5 \cot \theta$,
 (g) $4 \cot \theta + 15 \sec \theta = 0$, (h) $\operatorname{cosec}^2 \theta = 3 \cot \theta - 1$,
 (i) $2 \tan \theta = 5 \operatorname{cosec} \theta + \cot \theta$.

8. Prove the following identities.

- (a) $\frac{\sin \theta}{1 + \cos \theta} + \frac{1 + \cos \theta}{\sin \theta} = 2 \operatorname{cosec} \theta$,
 (b) $\frac{\operatorname{cosec} \theta}{\cot \theta + \tan \theta} = \cos \theta$,
 (c) $(1 + \cot \theta - \operatorname{cosec} \theta)(1 + \tan \theta + \sec \theta) = 2$,
 (d) $\cos^4 \theta - \sin^4 \theta + 1 = 2 \cos^2 \theta$,
 (e) $\sec^4 \theta - \sec^2 \theta = \tan^4 \theta + \tan^2 \theta$.

9. A vertical mast CO is of height h and stands with its base, O, on level ground. Points A and B lie on the same level as O and are respectively due south and due east of the tower. From A and B the angles of elevation of the top, C, of the tower are α and β respectively. Show that the distance from A to B is given by $h\sqrt{\cot^2 \alpha + \cot^2 \beta}$.

4.7 Compound angles

Sine, cosine, tangent of $(A \pm B)$

In the diagram angles A , and then B , are described in an anticlockwise direction from the line OA.

PN is perpendicular to OB, PM and NR are perpendicular to OA, QN is perpendicular to PM.

Note that $\hat{A} = \hat{RON} = \hat{ONQ}$

$$= 90^\circ - \hat{QNP} = \hat{NPQ}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now } \sin(A + B) &= \frac{MP}{OP} = \frac{MQ + QP}{OP} \\ &= \frac{MQ}{OP} + \frac{QP}{OP} = \frac{RN}{OP} + \frac{QP}{OP} \\ &= \frac{RN}{ON} \times \frac{ON}{OP} + \frac{QP}{PN} \times \frac{PN}{OP} = \sin A \cos B + \cos A \sin B \end{aligned}$$

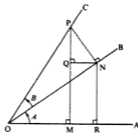
$$\begin{aligned} \text{Similarly } \cos(A + B) &= \frac{OM}{OP} = \frac{OR - RM}{OP} = \frac{OR - NQ}{OP} \\ &= \frac{OR}{ON} \times \frac{ON}{OP} - \frac{NQ}{NP} \times \frac{NP}{OP} = \cos A \cos B - \sin A \sin B \end{aligned}$$

By replacing B by $-B$ we obtain

$$\sin(A - B) = \sin A \cos(-B) + \cos A \sin(-B) = \sin A \cos B - \cos A \sin B$$

$$\text{and } \cos(A - B) = \cos A \cos(-B) - \sin A \sin(-B) = \cos A \cos B + \sin A \sin B$$

Although these results have been obtained for acute angles A and B , they are true for all values of A and B .



$$\begin{aligned} \text{Since } \tan(A + B) &= \frac{\sin(A + B)}{\cos(A + B)} \\ &= \frac{\sin A \cos B + \cos A \sin B}{\cos A \cos B - \sin A \sin B} \\ &= \frac{\tan A + \tan B}{1 - \tan A \tan B} \quad (\text{obtained by dividing each term by } \cos A \cos B) \end{aligned}$$

In a similar way

$$\tan(A - B) = \frac{\tan A - \tan B}{1 + \tan A \tan B}$$

Thus

$$\begin{aligned} \sin(A \pm B) &= \sin A \cos B \pm \cos A \sin B \\ \cos(A \pm B) &= \cos A \cos B \mp \sin A \sin B \\ \tan(A \pm B) &= \frac{\tan A \pm \tan B}{1 \mp \tan A \tan B} \end{aligned}$$

(Alternatively some of these results can be obtained by matrix methods, see page 183, question 6.)

Example 25

Evaluate the following without the use of tables or a calculator: (a) $\cos 75^\circ$, (b) $\tan 15^\circ$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(a) } \cos 75^\circ &= \cos(30^\circ + 45^\circ) \\ &= \cos 30^\circ \cos 45^\circ - \sin 30^\circ \sin 45^\circ \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \times \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \\ \Rightarrow \cos 75^\circ &= \frac{\sqrt{6} - \sqrt{2}}{4} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(b) } \tan 15^\circ &= \tan(45^\circ - 30^\circ) \\ &= \frac{\tan 45^\circ - \tan 30^\circ}{1 + \tan 45^\circ \tan 30^\circ} \\ &= \frac{1 - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}}{1 + 1 \times \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}} \\ \Rightarrow \tan 15^\circ &= \frac{3 - \sqrt{3}}{3 + \sqrt{3}} \end{aligned}$$

Example 26

Given that α and β are acute angles with $\sin \alpha = \frac{7}{25}$ and $\cos \beta = \frac{5}{13}$, find, without using tables or a calculator, $\sin(\alpha + \beta)$ and $\tan(\alpha + \beta)$.



Since $\sin \alpha = \frac{7}{25}$, $\cos \alpha = \frac{24}{25}$ and $\tan \alpha = \frac{7}{24}$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Thus } \sin(\alpha + \beta) &= \sin \alpha \cos \beta + \cos \alpha \sin \beta \\ &= \frac{7}{25} \times \frac{5}{13} + \frac{24}{25} \times \frac{12}{13} \\ &= \frac{119}{325} \end{aligned}$$



Since $\cos \beta = \frac{5}{13}$, $\sin \beta = \frac{12}{13}$ and $\tan \beta = \frac{12}{5}$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{and } \tan(\alpha + \beta) &= \frac{\tan \alpha + \tan \beta}{1 - \tan \alpha \tan \beta} \\ &= \frac{\frac{7}{24} + \frac{12}{5}}{1 - (\frac{7}{24})(\frac{12}{5})} \\ &= \frac{119}{325} \end{aligned}$$

Example 27Solve the equation $\cos \theta \cos 20^\circ + \sin \theta \sin 20^\circ = 0.75$ for values of θ from 0° to 360° .

$$\cos \theta \cos 20^\circ + \sin \theta \sin 20^\circ = 0.75$$

$$\therefore \cos(\theta + 20^\circ) = 0.75$$

Now $\cos^{-1}(0.75) = 41.41^\circ$ and, because the cosine is positive, solutions are in the 1st and the 4th quadrants.

$$\Rightarrow \theta + 20^\circ = 41.41^\circ \text{ or } 318.59^\circ$$

$$\text{i.e. } \theta = 61.41^\circ \text{ or } 338.59^\circ$$

**Example 28**Prove that $\cos(A + B) \cos(A - B) = \cos^2 A - \sin^2 B$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{L.H.S.} &= \cos(A + B) \cos(A - B) \\ &= (\cos A \cos B - \sin A \sin B)(\cos A \cos B + \sin A \sin B) \\ &= \cos^2 A \cos^2 B + \cos A \cos B \sin A \sin B - \sin A \sin B \cos A \cos B - \sin^2 A \sin^2 B \\ &= \cos^2 A \cos^2 B - \sin^2 A \sin^2 B \\ &= \cos^2 A(1 - \sin^2 B) - (1 - \cos^2 A)(\sin^2 B) \\ &= \cos^2 A - \cos^2 A \sin^2 B - \sin^2 B + \cos^2 A \sin^2 B \\ &= \cos^2 A - \sin^2 B = \text{R.H.S.} \end{aligned}$$

Exercise 4E

- Evaluate (a) $\sin 50^\circ \cos 40^\circ + \cos 50^\circ \sin 40^\circ$,
(b) $\cos 75^\circ \cos 15^\circ + \sin 75^\circ \sin 15^\circ$.
- Simplify the following expressions
(a) $\sin A \cos 2A + \cos A \sin 2A$, (b) $\sin 2\theta \cos \theta - \cos 2\theta \sin \theta$,
(c) $\cos 4\theta \cos \theta - \sin 4\theta \sin \theta$, (d) $\sin \theta \sin \theta + \cos \theta \cos \theta$,
(e) $2 \cos \theta \cos \theta + 2 \sin \theta \sin \theta$.
- Without using tables or a calculator find the following, leaving surds in your answer.
(a) $\sin(45^\circ + 30^\circ)$, (b) $\sin 15^\circ$, (c) $\tan 105^\circ$.
- Find (i) the greatest and (ii) the least values that each of the following expressions can take and state the smallest value of θ from 0° to 360° for which these values occur.
(a) $\sin \theta \cos 20^\circ + \cos \theta \sin 20^\circ$, (b) $\sin \theta \cos 20^\circ - \cos \theta \sin 20^\circ$,
(d) $\cos \theta \cos 40^\circ - \sin \theta \sin 40^\circ$.
- The diagram shows the graph of two lines A and B having gradients of $\frac{1}{2}$ and $\frac{3}{4}$ respectively. With α , β and γ as shown in the diagram, find
(a) $\tan \alpha$, (b) $\tan \beta$, (c) $\tan \gamma$.
- A and B are acute angles such that $\sin A = \frac{1}{2}$ and $\cos B = \frac{1}{2}$. Without the use of tables or a calculator find the values of
(a) $\sin(A - B)$, (b) $\tan(A - B)$.
- C and D are both obtuse angles such that $\sin C = \frac{3}{4}$ and $\sin D = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$. Without the use of tables or a calculator, find the values of
(a) $\sin(C + D)$, (b) $\cos(C - D)$.



8. Solve the following equations for $0^\circ \leq \theta \leq 360^\circ$.

(a) $\sin \theta \cos 10^\circ + \cos \theta \sin 10^\circ = -0.5$,

(b) $\cos 40^\circ \cos \theta - \sin 40^\circ \sin \theta = 0.4$,

(c) $\sin(\theta + 45^\circ) = \sqrt{2} \cos \theta$.

9. Prove the following identities.

(a) $\sin(90^\circ - \theta) = \cos \theta$,

(b) $\sin(90^\circ + \theta) = \cos \theta$,

(c) $\cos(90^\circ + \theta) = -\sin \theta$,

(d) $\cos(180^\circ - \theta) = -\cos \theta$,

(e) $\sin(A + B) + \sin(A - B) = 2 \sin A \cos B$,

(f) $\cos(A + B) - \cos(A - B) = -2 \sin A \sin B$,

(g) $\frac{\sin(A + B)}{\sin(A - B)} = \frac{\tan A + \tan B}{\tan A - \tan B}$,

(h) $\frac{\cos(A - B)}{\cos(A + B)} = \frac{1 + \tan A \tan B}{1 - \tan A \tan B}$,

(i) $\sin(A + B) \sin(A - B) = \sin^2 A - \sin^2 B$,

(j) $\frac{\sin(A - B)}{\cos A \cos B} + \frac{\sin(B - C)}{\cos B \cos C} + \frac{\sin(C - A)}{\cos C \cos A} = 0$,

(k) $\cos(45^\circ - \theta) \cos(45^\circ - \phi) - \sin(45^\circ - \theta) \sin(45^\circ - \phi) = \sin(\theta + \phi)$.

Double-angle formulae

From the identity $\sin(A + B) = \sin A \cos B + \cos A \sin B$
by putting $B = A$ we obtain

$$\sin(A + A) = \sin A \cos A + \cos A \sin A$$

or

$$\sin 2A = 2 \sin A \cos A$$

Similarly by using $\cos(A + B) = \cos A \cos B - \sin A \sin B$
 $\cos(A + A) = \cos A \cos A - \sin A \sin A$

$$\begin{aligned} \cos 2A &= \cos^2 A - \sin^2 A \\ &= 1 - 2 \sin^2 A \quad (\text{putting } \cos^2 A = 1 - \sin^2 A) \\ &= 2 \cos^2 A - 1 \quad (\text{putting } \sin^2 A = 1 - \cos^2 A) \end{aligned}$$

Again using $\tan(A + B) = \frac{\tan A + \tan B}{1 - \tan A \tan B}$

putting $B = A$

$$\tan 2A = \frac{2 \tan A}{1 - \tan^2 A}$$

These results are referred to as the **double-angle formulae** because the angle on the left of the identity is double that on the right.

Thus we also have $\sin 8\theta = 2 \sin 4\theta \cos 4\theta$
 $\cos 6\theta = \cos^2 3\theta - \sin^2 3\theta$ etc.

Example 29

Prove that (a) $\frac{\sin 2\theta}{1 + \cos 2\theta} = \tan \theta$, (b) $\operatorname{cosec} 2\theta + \cot 2\theta = \cot \theta$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(a) L.H.S.} &= \frac{\sin 2\theta}{1 + \cos 2\theta} \\ &= \frac{2 \sin \theta \cos \theta}{1 + 2 \cos^2 \theta - 1} \\ &= \frac{2 \sin \theta \cos \theta}{2 \cos^2 \theta} \\ &= \frac{\sin \theta}{\cos \theta} \\ &= \tan \theta = \text{R.H.S.} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(b) L.H.S.} &= \operatorname{cosec} 2\theta + \cot 2\theta \\ &= \frac{1}{\sin 2\theta} + \frac{\cos 2\theta}{\sin 2\theta} \\ &= \frac{1 + \cos 2\theta}{\sin 2\theta} \\ &= \frac{1 + 2 \cos^2 \theta - 1}{2 \sin \theta \cos \theta} \\ &= \frac{2 \cos^2 \theta}{2 \sin \theta \cos \theta} = \frac{\cos \theta}{\sin \theta} \\ &= \cot \theta = \text{R.H.S.} \end{aligned}$$

Half-angle formulae

From the above double-angle formula for the cosine, it follows that

$$\cos \theta = 2 \cos^2 \frac{\theta}{2} - 1$$

hence $2 \cos^2 \frac{\theta}{2} = 1 + \cos \theta$

or $\cos^2 \frac{\theta}{2} = \frac{1}{2}(1 + \cos \theta)$

and similarly, as

$$\cos \theta = 1 - 2 \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2}$$

$$2 \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2} = 1 - \cos \theta$$

or $\sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2} = \frac{1}{2}(1 - \cos \theta)$

Hence, given the value of $\cos \theta$ we can find $\sin \frac{\theta}{2}$ and $\cos \frac{\theta}{2}$.

Exercise 4F

In this exercise, a calculator or tables should *not* be used for questions 1 to 9.

- Simplify the expressions (a) $\frac{\sin 2A}{\cos A}$, (b) $2 \tan A \cos^2 A$,
(c) $2 \sin^2 A + \cos 2A$.
- If $\cos A = -\frac{3}{4}$ find $\cos 2A$.
- Angle B is acute and $\tan B = \frac{3}{4}$. Find
(a) $\sin B$ (b) $\cos B$ (c) $\sin 2B$ (d) $\cos 2B$.
- If $\sin C = 1/\sqrt{5}$ find $\sin 2C$, $\cos 2C$ and $\tan 2C$ if
(a) C is acute, (b) C is obtuse.

5. Eliminate θ from each of the following pairs of expressions.

- (a) $x + 1 = \cos 2\theta$, $y = \sin \theta$, (b) $x = \cos 2\theta$, $y = \cos \theta - 1$,
 (c) $y - 3 = \cos 2\theta$, $x = 2 - \sin \theta$.

6. Angle D is acute and $\tan D = \frac{3}{4}$. Find

- (a) $\sin D$, (b) $\sin 2D$, (c) $\sin(\frac{1}{2}D)$.

7. Angle E lies between 0° and 360° . Find $\sin(\frac{1}{2}E)$ given that $\cos E$ is

- (a) $\frac{1}{5}$, (b) $-\frac{1}{5}$.

8. (a) Obtain an expression for $\sin 3\theta$ involving powers of $\sin \theta$.

- (b) If $\sin \theta = \frac{1}{5}$ find the value of $\sin 3\theta$.

9. (a) Obtain an expression for $\cos 3\theta$ involving power of $\cos \theta$.

- (b) If $\sin \theta = 1/\sqrt{5}$ and θ is obtuse, find the value of $\cos 3\theta$.

10. In triangle ABC, $\hat{BAC} = \theta$ and $\hat{ABC} = 2\theta$. If $BC = x$ show that $AC = 2x \cos \theta$.

11. In triangle DEF, $\hat{EDF} = \theta$ and $\hat{DEF} = 4\theta$. If $EF = x$ show that $DF = 4x \cos \theta \cos 2\theta$.

12. The three points A, B and C all lie on horizontal ground and form a triangle right-angled at C with $\hat{BAC} = \alpha$. A point V lies vertically above B and the angle of elevation of V from A is α . If the length of AV is $2x$, show that $BC = x \sin 2\alpha$.

13. Solve the following equations for $-180^\circ \leq x \leq 180^\circ$

- (a) $\sin 2x + \sin x = 0$, (b) $\sin 2x - 2 \cos^2 x = 0$,
 (c) $3 \cos 2x + 2 + \cos x = 0$, (d) $\sin 2x = \tan x$.

14. Solve the following equation for $0 \leq x \leq 360^\circ$

- (a) $2 \sin x \cos x = \cos 2x$, (b) $3 \sin 2x - \cos x = 0$,
 (c) $3 \sin x + \cos 2x = 2$, (d) $5 - 13 \sin x = 2 \cos 2x$.

15. Prove the following identities

- (a) $\cos^2 A + \cos 2A = 2 - 3 \sin^2 A$, (b) $\tan 2A - 2 \tan A \sin^2 A = \sin 2A$,

- (c) $\cos^4 A - \sin^4 A = \cos 2A$, (d) $\frac{1 - \cos 2\theta}{1 + \cos 2\theta} = \tan^2 \theta$,

- (e) $\frac{\sin \theta + \sin 2\theta}{1 + \cos \theta + \cos 2\theta} = \tan \theta$, (f) $\tan 3\theta = \frac{3 \tan \theta - \tan^3 \theta}{1 - 3 \tan^2 \theta}$

16. Prove the following identities

- (a) $2 \operatorname{cosec} 2\theta = \operatorname{cosec} \theta \sec \theta$, (b) $\tan A + \cot A = 2 \operatorname{cosec} 2A$,

- (c) $\frac{1 + \tan^2 A}{1 - \tan^2 A} = \sec 2A$, (d) $\cot 2A = \operatorname{cosec} 2A - \tan A$,

- (e) $\frac{\sin 2\theta}{1 - \cos 2\theta} = \cot \theta$, (f) $\tan \theta - \cot \theta = -2 \cot 2\theta$,

- (g) $\operatorname{cosec} 2\theta + \cot 2\theta = \cot \theta$.

17. Each of the following expressions can be written in the form $a \sin 2\theta + b \cos 2\theta + c$. Find the values of a , b and c in each case.

- (a) $2 \cos^2 \theta + 4 \sin \theta \cos \theta$, (b) $-2 \sin \theta \cos \theta - 4 \sin^2 \theta$,
 (c) $3 \cos^2 \theta + \sin^2 \theta - 6 \sin \theta \cos \theta$.

18. Prove that

- (a) $\tan \frac{\theta}{2} = \frac{\sin \theta}{1 + \cos \theta}$, (b) $\sin \theta = \frac{2 \tan(\theta/2)}{1 + \tan^2(\theta/2)}$.

4.8 Circular measure

Radians

Angles are usually measured in degrees and parts of a degree. A radian is a larger unit which is often used in trigonometry. It is defined as the angle subtended at the centre of a circle by an arc equal to the radius of the circle. In the diagram, suppose that OP is of length 1 unit and that the arc PQ is also of length 1 unit, then the angle POQ is 1 radian. Since the circumference of this circle is 2π units, the angle at O subtended by the whole circumference is 2π radians.

hence 1 revolution = $360^\circ = 2\pi$ radians

$$\text{or } \frac{1}{4} \text{ revolution} = 90^\circ = \frac{\pi}{2} \text{ radians}$$

As 2π radians = 360°

$$1 \text{ radian} = \frac{360^\circ}{2\pi} \text{ which is approximately } 57^\circ$$

It is very seldom necessary, or desirable, to use this approximate result.

It is better to use one of the exact relationships such as $\pi/2$ radians = 90° .



Example 30

Express (a) $\frac{5\pi}{6}$ radians in degrees, (b) 210° in radians.

$$(a) \text{ Since } \frac{\pi}{2} \text{ radians} = 90^\circ$$

$$\text{or } \pi \text{ radians} = 180^\circ$$

$$\frac{5\pi}{6} \text{ radians} = \frac{5}{6} \times 180^\circ \\ = 150^\circ$$

$$(b) \text{ Since } 90^\circ = \frac{\pi}{2} \text{ radians}$$

$$210^\circ = \frac{\pi}{2} \times \frac{210}{90} \text{ radians} \\ = \frac{7\pi}{6} \text{ radians}$$

Length of an arc, area of a sector

Suppose the circle centre O has a radius of length r and that the arc PQ subtends an angle θ rad at O .

The circumference of the circle subtends an angle of 2π rad at O .

$$\text{Hence } \frac{\text{arc PQ}}{\text{circumference of circle}} = \frac{\theta}{2\pi}$$

$$\Rightarrow \text{arc PQ} = \frac{\theta \times 2\pi r}{2\pi} = r\theta$$

Thus the length of the arc PQ is $r\theta$.

The area of a sector may be obtained in a similar way.

The sector POQ subtends an angle θ rad at O ,

$$\text{hence } \frac{\text{area of sector POQ}}{\text{area of circle}} = \frac{\theta}{2\pi}$$

$$\text{or area of sector POQ} = \pi r^2 \times \frac{\theta}{2\pi} = \frac{1}{2} r^2 \theta$$

Thus the area of the sector POQ is $\frac{1}{2} r^2 \theta$.



Example 31

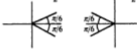
Find (a) the length of the minor arc PQ, (b) the area of the minor sector OPQ of the circle centre O, radius 6 cm, in which angle POQ = $1\frac{1}{2}$ rad.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(a) arc PQ} &= r\theta & \text{(b) Area} &= \frac{1}{2}r^2\theta \\ &= 6 \times \frac{3}{2} & &= \frac{1}{2} \times 6^2 \times \frac{3}{2} \\ \text{arc PQ} &= 10 \text{ cm} & \text{Area} &= 30 \text{ cm}^2 \end{aligned}$$

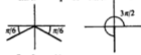
Example 32

Solve the following equations for $0 \leq x \leq 2\pi$, leaving your answers in terms of π .

(a) $4 \cos^2 x = 3$, (b) $\cos 2x = 3 \sin x + 2$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(a)} \quad 4 \cos^2 x &= 3 \\ \text{i.e.} \quad \cos^2 x &= \frac{3}{4} \\ \text{giving} \quad \cos x &= \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \quad \text{or} \quad \cos x = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \end{aligned}$$


$$\text{giving } x = \frac{\pi}{6}, \frac{5\pi}{6}, \frac{7\pi}{6}, \frac{11\pi}{6}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(b)} \quad \cos 2x &= 3 \sin x + 2 \\ \therefore 1 - 2 \sin^2 x &= 3 \sin x + 2 \\ 0 &= 2 \sin^2 x + 3 \sin x + 1 \\ 0 &= (2 \sin x + 1)(\sin x + 1) \\ \text{hence} \quad \sin x &= -\frac{1}{2} \quad \text{or} \quad \sin x = -1 \end{aligned}$$


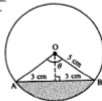
$$\text{giving } x = \frac{7\pi}{6}, \frac{3\pi}{2}, \frac{11\pi}{6}$$

Example 33

A and B are two points on the circumference of a circle centre O and radius 5 cm. Angle AOB = θ rad and the length of the chord AB is 6 cm. Find θ and the area of the minor segment bounded by AB and the circle.

$$\begin{aligned} \sin \frac{\theta}{2} &= \frac{3}{5} = 0.6 \quad (\text{see diagram}) \\ \theta &= 2 \sin^{-1}(0.6) \\ \therefore \theta &= 1.287 \text{ rad} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Area of required minor segment} &= \text{area of sector AOB} - \text{area } \triangle AOB \\ &= \frac{1}{2}r^2\theta - \frac{1}{2}r^2 \sin \theta \\ &= \frac{1}{2}(25)(1.287) - \frac{1}{2}(25)(0.96) \\ \text{area of minor segment} &= 4.09 \text{ cm}^2 \end{aligned}$$

**Exercise 4G**

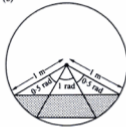
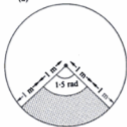
- Express the following angles in degrees.
 - π rad, (b) $\pi/6$ rad, (c) $3\pi/2$ rad, (d) $2\pi/3$ rad, (e) $11\pi/6$ rad.
- Express the following angles in radians, leaving π in your answers.
 - 360° , (b) 60° , (c) 45° , (d) 150° , (e) 90° .

3. Without the use of tables or a calculator write down the values of
 (a) $\sin \pi/2$, (b) $\cos 3\pi/2$, (c) $\tan \pi/4$, (d) $\cos \pi$, (e) $\sec \pi$,
 (f) $\sin \pi/6$, (g) $\sin 5\pi/6$, (h) $\cos 5\pi/6$, (i) $\tan 3\pi/4$, (j) $\cos 5\pi/4$.
4. Express (a) 70° , (b) 250° in radians correct to two decimal places.
5. Express (a) 3 rad, (b) 2.5 rad in degrees correct to the nearest degree.
6. Using a calculator or tables find, correct to 2 decimal places, the values of (a) $\sin(1 \text{ rad})$, (b) $\tan(3 \text{ rad})$, (c) $\cos(2.4 \text{ rad})$.
7. In each of the following find (i) the length of the minor arc AB, (ii) the area of the corresponding sector OAB.
- (a) (b) (c)

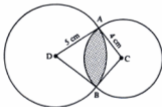


8. Points A and B lie on the circumference of a circle, centre O and radius 3 cm, and the minor sector OAB has an area equal to one sixth of the area of the circle. Find, leaving π in your answers,
 (a) the acute angle AOB in radians,
 (b) the reflex angle AOB in radians,
 (c) the length of the minor arc AB,
 (d) the length of the major arc AB.
9. Find the angle subtended at the centre by an arc of length 3 cm on a circle of radius 3 cm.
10. Find the area of a sector of a circle of radius 8 cm if the arc of the sector subtends an angle of 0.25 radians at the centre.
11. Find the angle subtended at the centre by an arc of length 6 cm on a circle of radius 4 cm.
12. The arc AB is of length 6 cm and subtends an angle of 0.5 radians at the centre of the circle. Find the radius of the circle.
13. Solve the following equations for $0 \leq x < 2\pi$, leaving π in your answers.
 (a) $\sin x = 0.5$ (b) $4 \sin^2 x = 3$
 (c) $\tan 2x = -1$ (d) $2 \sin^2 x + \sin x = 0$
 (e) $\sin^2 x - 3 \sin x + 2 = 0$ (f) $\tan^2 x - 3 \sec x + 3 = 0$
14. A and B are two points on the circumference of a circle, centre O and radius 4 cm. If the minor arc AB is of length 3 cm find the area of the corresponding sector OAB.
15. A and B are two points on the circumference of a circle centre O, radius 6 cm. Angle $\text{AOB} = \pi/6$ radians. Find
 (a) the area of the triangle AOB,
 (b) the area of the minor segment bounded by the circle and the chord AB (take $\pi = 3.14$).

16. A and B are two points on the circumference of a circle centre O and radius 4 cm. If the chord AB is of length 6 cm, find (a) the angle the minor arc AB subtends at the centre (in radians correct to two decimal places), (b) the area of the corresponding sector OAB.
17. A and B are two points on the circumference of a circle centre O and radius r . The minor arc AB subtends an angle θ radians at O. If the area of the minor segment bounded by the chord AB and the circle is one quarter of the area of the minor sector AOB show that $4 \sin \theta = 3\theta$.
18. In each of the following diagrams find the area of the shaded regions.



19. The diagram shows a pair of intersecting circles with centres at C and D and of radii 4 cm and 5 cm. AB is the common chord and $CD = 7$ cm. Find
- $\angle ACB$ in radians,
 - $\angle ADB$ in radians,
 - the shaded area.



20. (a) Copy and complete the following table for $y = 2 \cos x$ for x from 0 to π radians.

x in radians	0	$\frac{\pi}{6}$ (0.524)	$\frac{\pi}{4}$ (0.785)	$\frac{\pi}{3}$ (1.047)	$\frac{\pi}{2}$ (1.571)	$\frac{2\pi}{3}$ (2.094)	$\frac{3\pi}{4}$ (2.356)	$\frac{5\pi}{6}$ (2.618)	π (3.142)
y	2	1.73	1.41						

- Plot the graph of $y = 2 \cos x$ for $0 \leq x \leq \pi$ using a scale of 4 cm for 1 radian on the x -axis and 4 cm for 1 unit on the y -axis.
- By drawing any additional lines necessary on this graph find approximate solutions to the following equations in the interval $0 \leq x \leq \pi$.
 - $2 \cos x = x - 2$
 - $4 \cos x = x$

21. (a) Copy and complete the table below for $y = 4 \sin x$ using the values of x shown.

x in radians	0	$\frac{\pi}{6}$ (0.524)	$\frac{\pi}{4}$ (0.785)	$\frac{\pi}{3}$ (1.047)	$\frac{\pi}{2}$ (1.571)	$\frac{2\pi}{3}$ (2.094)	$\frac{3\pi}{4}$ (2.356)	$\frac{5\pi}{6}$ (2.618)	π (3.142)
y	0		2.83	3.46					

- (b) Plot the lines $y = 4 \sin x$ and $y = x$ on a single graph using a scale of 4 cm to 1 radian on the x -axis and 4 cm to 1 unit on the y -axis.
 (c) From your graph write down an approximate solution to the equation $4 \sin x = x$ in the interval $0 < x \leq \pi$.
 (d) By plotting a graph of $y = 4 \sin x$ and $y = x$ in the interval $2.4 \leq x \leq 2.6$, obtain a more accurate solution to the equation $4 \sin x = x$ in this interval.

Exercise 4H Examination questions

1. Sketch on separate diagrams for $0^\circ \leq x \leq 360^\circ$
 (i) $y = 3 \cos x$, (ii) $y = \cos 2x$, (iii) $y = \cos(x - 30^\circ)$.
 (Cambridge)
2. Solve, for $-180^\circ \leq x \leq 180^\circ$, the following equations
 (a) $3 \tan x - 2 = 0$,
 (b) $3 \tan x - 2 \cos x = 0$. (A.E.B.)
3. Find all values of θ between 0° and 360° for which
 $2 \sin \theta + 8 \cos^2 \theta = 5$,
 giving your answers correct to the nearest 0.1° where necessary.
 (Cambridge)
4. (a) A , B and C are the angles of a triangle such that $\cos A = \frac{1}{3}$ and $\cos B = \frac{1}{5}$. Without using tables or a calculator find the value of
 (i) $\tan 2A$, (ii) $\cos(A + B)$, (iii) $\cos C$.
 (b) Prove the identity $\frac{\sin 2\theta}{1 + \cos 2\theta} = \tan \theta$. (Cambridge)
5. The angle A lies between 90° and 180° , and $\sin^2 A = 8/9$. Calculate, without using tables or calculator, the value of
 (a) $\cos A$, (b) $\sin 2A$, (c) $\cos 2A$, (d) $\cos \frac{1}{2}A$. (A.E.B.)
6. Find all the angles between 0° and 360° which satisfy the equations
 (i) $(1 + 2 \sin x) \cos 2x = 0$,
 (ii) $\sin y = 3 \cos(y - 30^\circ)$. (Cambridge)
7. Find all the angles between 0° and 360° which satisfy the equations
 (i) $2 \tan x = 1 + 3 \cot x$,
 (ii) $5 \sin y \cos y = 2$. (Cambridge)
8. (a) If $x = \sin^2 2\theta$ and $y = \cos \theta$, eliminate θ and hence express x in terms of y .
 (b) Solve the equation
 $2 \sec^2 \theta + \tan \theta - 3 = 0$
 for values of θ in the range $0^\circ \leq \theta \leq 180^\circ$. (S.U.J.B.)

9. (a) A and B are acute angles such that $\sin A = \frac{3}{5}$ and $\tan B = \frac{1}{2}$. Without using tables or calculators, find the value of (i) $\sin(A + B)$,
 (ii) $\cos(A + B)$, leaving your answers in surd form.
 Hence state, with a brief reason, whether angle $A + B$ is acute or obtuse.

- (b) Show that, for all values of θ ,

$$\frac{\cot^2 \theta}{1 + \cot^2 \theta} = \cos^2 \theta$$

Hence, or otherwise, find the solutions in the range $-180^\circ \leq \theta \leq 180^\circ$ of the equation

$$\frac{\cot^2 \theta}{1 + \cot^2 \theta} = 2 \cos 2\theta. \quad (\text{J.M.B.})$$

10. Prove the identities:

(i) $\tan(45^\circ + A) \tan(45^\circ - A) = 1$;

(ii) $\sin B^\circ + \sin(B + 120)^\circ + \sin(B + 240)^\circ = 0$;

(iii) $\frac{1 - \cos 2C}{1 + \cos 2C} = \tan^2 C. \quad (\text{Oxford})$

11. Express $8 \cos^4 \theta$ in the form

$$a \cos 4\theta + b \cos 2\theta + c,$$

giving the numerical values of the constants a , b and c . (Cambridge)

12. (i) Calculate the values of x lying between 0° and 360° which satisfy the equation,

$$\tan(x + 35^\circ) = -0.404.$$

(ii) Show that $\frac{\sin \theta}{1 - \cos \theta} + \frac{\sin \theta}{1 + \cos \theta} = 2 \operatorname{cosec} \theta$.

Hence, or otherwise, find all the values of θ lying between 0° and 360° which satisfy the equation,

$$\frac{\sin \theta}{1 - \cos \theta} + \frac{\sin \theta}{1 + \cos \theta} = 3.76.$$

(iii) Simplify the expression $f(\theta) = \frac{\tan \theta}{1 - \tan \theta} - \frac{\cot \theta}{1 - \cot \theta}$.

Find all the values of α between 0° and 360° such that $f(\theta) = \tan(\theta + \alpha)$. (Oxford)

13. (i) Prove the identities

$$\cos^4 x - \sin^4 x = \cos 2x,$$

and

$$\tan 3x - \tan x = 2 \sin x \sec 3x.$$

- (ii) If A , B and C are the angles of a triangle, prove that:
 $\cos A + \cos(B + C) = 0$.

Hence prove that

$$\cos A + \cos(B - C) = 2 \sin B \sin C. \quad (\text{Oxford})$$

14. Sketch on the same diagram the curves $y = |\sin x|$ and $y = \cos 2x$ for the interval $0 \leq x \leq 2\pi$, labelling each curve clearly.

State the number of solutions, in this interval, of the equation

$$|\sin x| = \cos 2x. \quad (\text{Cambridge})$$

15. Solve the following equations for values of x between 0 and 2π , giving your answer in radians in terms of π ,
- (a) $\sec x = -2$,
 - (b) $\sin x - \sqrt{3} \cos x = 0$,
 - (c) $2 \sin x \cos x + 1 = 0$. (A.E.B.)
16. A chord PQ of a circle, radius 5 cm, subtends an angle of 2 radians at the centre of the circle. Taking π to be 3.14, calculate, correct to one decimal place,
- (i) the length of the **major** arc PQ,
 - (ii) the area enclosed by the chord PQ and the **minor** arc PQ. (Cambridge)
17. (a) Solve the equation $2 \tan \theta - 4 \cot \theta = \operatorname{cosec} \theta$, giving answers in radians in the range $-\pi < \theta < \pi$.
- (b) Prove that the area of the minor segment cut off by a chord subtending an angle of θ radians at the centre of a circle of radius r is $\frac{1}{2}r^2(\theta - \sin \theta)$. A chord which subtends an angle α at the centre of a circle divides the area of the circle into 2 segments in the ratio 1:5. Prove that $\sin \alpha = \alpha - \pi/3$.
- Plot the graphs of $y = \sin \alpha$ and $y = \alpha - \pi/3$ for values of α between 0 and π using the same axes. Hence find the value of α . (S.U.J.B.)

5

Algebra I

5.1 Indices

The reader will know that, using indices, $(a \times a)$ can be written as a^2 , $(a \times a \times a)$ can be written as a^3 and so on.

The following particular cases show how expressions involving indices can be simplified.

$$(i) \quad a^3 \times a^2 = (a \times a \times a) \times (a \times a) = a^5$$

$$(ii) \quad a^4 \div a^3 = \frac{a \times a \times a \times a}{a \times a \times a} = a^1 = a$$

$$(iii) \quad (a^3)^2 = (a \times a \times a) \times (a \times a \times a) = a^6$$

The three basic rules which include the above particular cases are:

$$a^m \times a^n = a^{m+n}; \quad a^m \div a^n = a^{m-n}; \quad (a^m)^n = a^{mn}.$$

By applying these rules it is possible to interpret other expressions involving indices.

Negative indices

Since $a^3 \div a^5 = \frac{a^3}{a^2} = a^{3-2} = a^1 = a$ and $a^5 \times a^{-2} = a^{5-2} = a^3$, it follows

$$\text{that } a^{-2} = \frac{1}{a^2}$$

$$\text{In general, } a^{-n} = \frac{1}{a^n}$$

Fractional indices

Since $a^{1/2} \times a^{1/2} = a^{1/2+1/2} = a^1$, it follows that $a^{1/2} = \sqrt{a}$.

Similarly from $a^{1/3} \times a^{1/3} \times a^{1/3} = a^{1/3+1/3+1/3} = a^1$, it follows that

$$a^{1/3} = \sqrt[3]{a}, \text{ i.e. the cube root of } a.$$

$$\text{Also } (a^{1/2})^3 = (a^{1/2})^3 = (\sqrt[3]{a})^3 \text{ or } \sqrt[3]{(a^3)}.$$

$$\text{In general } a^{m/n} = \sqrt[n]{(a^m)} = (\sqrt[n]{a})^m.$$

In all cases, \sqrt{a} or $a^{1/2}$ should be taken to mean the *positive* root of a and similarly for $\sqrt[3]{a}$ or $a^{1/3}$, etc.

Zero index

Since $a^n \times a^0 = a^{n+0} = a^n$, it follows that $a^0 = 1$.

Thus we have:

$$\begin{aligned} a^m \times a^n &= a^{m+n}, & (a^m)^n &= a^{mn}, & a^{m/n} &= \sqrt[n]{a^m} = (\sqrt[n]{a})^m, \\ a^m \div a^n &= a^{m-n}, & a^{-n} &= \frac{1}{a^n}, & a^0 &= 1. \end{aligned}$$

In certain cases it is possible to evaluate numerical expressions involving indices as the following example shows.

Example 1

Simplify each of the following:

(a) 5^3 (b) 13^0 (c) 11^{-2} (d) 8^{23} (e) $(3\frac{1}{16})^{1/2}$ (f) $16^{-3/4}$.

$$\begin{array}{llllll}
 \text{(a)} & 5^3 & \text{(b)} & 13^0 & \text{(c)} & 11^{-2} & \text{(d)} & 8^{23} & \text{(e)} & (3\frac{1}{16})^{1/2} & \text{(f)} & 16^{-3/4} \\
 & = 5 \times 5 \times 5 & & = 1 & & = \frac{1}{11^2} & & = (2)^{23} & & = (\frac{19}{16})^{1/2} & & = \frac{1}{16^{3/4}} \\
 & = 125 & & & & = \frac{1}{121} & & = 4 & & = \frac{1}{4} & & = \frac{1}{2^3} \\
 & & & & & & & & & & & = \frac{1}{8}
 \end{array}$$

Example 2

Simplify the following:

(a) $x^7 \times x^3$ (b) $x^8 \div x^3$ (c) $x^3 \times x^{-3}$ (d) $(x^3)^3$ (e) $8x^4 \div 2x^6$

$$\begin{array}{llllll}
 \text{(a)} & x^7 \times x^3 & \text{(b)} & x^8 \div x^3 & \text{(c)} & x^3 \times x^{-3} & \text{(d)} & (x^3)^3 & \text{(e)} & 8x^4 \div 2x^6 \\
 & = x^{7+3} & & = x^{8-3} & & = x^{3-3} & & = x^{3 \times 3} & & = \frac{8x^4}{2x^6} \\
 & = x^{10} & & = x^5 & & = x^0 & & = x^{1^3} & & = \frac{4x^4}{x^2} \\
 & & & & & & & & & = \frac{4}{x^2}
 \end{array}$$

Example 3Find the value of x in each of the following equations:

(a) $5^x = \frac{1}{125}$ (b) $\frac{3^x \times 3^3}{3^7} = 27$ (c) $(2^7)^3 = 64$

$$\begin{array}{lll}
 \text{(a)} & 5^x = \frac{1}{125} & \text{(b)} & \frac{3^x \times 3^3}{3^7} = 27 & \text{(c)} & (2^7)^3 = 64 \\
 & = \frac{1}{5^3} & & 3^{x+3-7} = 3^3 & & 2^{21} = 2^6 \\
 & 5^x = 5^{-3} & & 3^{x-4} = 3^3 & & 3x = 6 \\
 \therefore & x = -3 & & \therefore x = 5 & & \therefore x = 2
 \end{array}$$

Exercise 5A

Without using a calculator evaluate the following

$$\begin{array}{lllll}
 1. & 3^3 & 2. & 2^7 & 3. & 4^2 + 3^2 & 4. & (4 + 3)^2 & 5. & 6^0 \\
 6. & 8^0 & 7. & 4^{1/2} & 8. & 16^{1/2} & 9. & 144^{1/2} & 10. & 27^{1/3} \\
 11. & 8^{1/3} & 12. & 16^{3/2} & 13. & 5^{-2} & 14. & 7^{-1} & 15. & 10^{-2} \\
 16. & 8^{-1/3} & 17. & 2^{-3} & 18. & 16^{-1/4} & 19. & 27^{2/3} & 20. & 64^{-2/3} \\
 21. & 9^{-2} & 22. & 16^{-3/2} & 23. & (-8)^{2/3} & 24. & (-8)^{-2/3} & 25. & (\frac{1}{4})^2 \\
 26. & (\frac{1}{2})^2 & 27. & (\frac{1}{2})^0 & 28. & (1\frac{1}{2})^2 & 29. & (2\frac{1}{2})^2 & 30. & (\frac{2}{3})^{1/2} \\
 31. & (1\frac{1}{2})^{1/2} & 32. & (2\frac{1}{2})^{-1/2} & 33. & (6\frac{1}{2})^{3/2} & 34. & (2\frac{1}{2})^{-3/2} & 35. & (3\frac{1}{2})^{-2/3}
 \end{array}$$

Express each of the following in the form 2^x

$$\begin{array}{llll}
 36. & 2^3 \times 2^4 & 37. & 2^7 \div 2^3 & 38. & 2^8 \div 2^3 & 39. & 2^7 \times 2^4 \\
 40. & \frac{2^3 \times 2^4}{2^2} & 41. & \frac{2^2 \times 2^4}{2^3} & 42. & 4 \times \frac{2^8}{2^4} & 43. & \frac{32 \times 2^4}{2^2 \times 2^2}
 \end{array}$$

Simplify each of the following expressions

$$\begin{array}{llll}
 44. & x^3 \times x^4 & 45. & (x^2)^3 & 46. & 3x^2 \times 6x^4 & 47. & 6x^2y \times 4x & 48. & \frac{6x^4}{2x^2} \\
 49. & (15x^2) \div (3x^2) & 50. & x^4 \times x^{-2} & 51. & 5x^4y \times 6y^2 & 52. & 3x^3y \times 4y^3x
 \end{array}$$

Express each of the following in the form a^x

53. $\frac{1}{a}$

54. $\frac{1}{\sqrt{a}}$

55. $\frac{a^2}{a^3}$

56. $a^2 \times a^3$

57. $\frac{a}{\sqrt{a}}$

58. $\frac{\sqrt{a}}{a}$

59. $(a^2)^3$

60. $(\sqrt{a})^3$

61. $\sqrt{a} \times a^3$

62. $\frac{a^3 \times \sqrt{a}}{a}$

Find the value of x in each of the following

63. $2^x = 64$

64. $2^x = 1$

65. $2^x = 0.5$

66. $2^x = 0.25$

67. $3^x = \frac{1}{3}$

68. $2^4 \times 2^x = 2^7$

69. $\frac{3^x \times 3^7}{3^9} = 3^x$

70. $\frac{3^6 \times 3^4}{3^2} = 3^x$

71. $\frac{2^{18}}{2^7 \times 16} = 2^x$

72. $2^x \times 2^8 = 2^{11}$

73. $5^x \times 5^7 = 5^3$

74. $7^8 \div 7^x = 49$

75. $\frac{6^x \times 6^7}{36} = 6^9$

76. $\frac{5^7 \times 5^4}{5^x} = 25$

5.2 Variation

Consider the situation of a person buying a number of copies of a book. As the number of copies bought *increases* then the total cost of buying the books *increases*. We say that the total cost (C) is directly proportional to the number of books (N) bought, or that C varies directly with N . This may be written

$$C \propto N \quad \text{or} \quad C = kN \quad \text{for some constant } k.$$

Now consider the situation of a number of cats eating a given quantity of cat food. In this case, as the number of cats *increases*, so the time for which the cat food lasts *decreases*. We say that the time (T) is inversely proportional to the number of cats (N) or that T varies inversely with N .

This may be written

$$T \propto \frac{1}{N} \quad \text{or} \quad T = \frac{k}{N} \quad \text{for some constant } k.$$

Note that in cases of direct variation we can omit the word 'direct' and simply say C varies with N .

Example 4

Given that y is inversely proportional to the square of x and that when $x = 1.5$, $y = 8$, find

(a) a formula giving y in terms of x , (b) the value of y when $x = 2\sqrt{3}$.

(a) y is inversely proportional to the square of x

$$\therefore y \propto \frac{1}{x^2} \quad \text{or} \quad y = \frac{k}{x^2}$$

but $y = 8$ when $x = 1.5$,

$$\therefore 8 = \frac{k}{(1.5)^2} \quad \text{which gives } k = 18.$$

$$\therefore y = \frac{18}{x^2} \quad \text{is the required formula.}$$

(b) Since $y = \frac{18}{x^2}$,

when $x = 2\sqrt{3}$, $y = \frac{18}{(2\sqrt{3})^2}$

$\therefore y = 1.5$ when $x = 2\sqrt{3}$.

Joint variation

In relationships such as $y = kx$ and $y = \frac{k}{x}$, where k is a constant, the variable y is a function of only one variable x . However, in some relationships and formulae a variable may be dependent on two or more other variables. For example, in the formula for the curved surface area of a cone, $A = \pi rl$, and A is dependent *jointly* on r , the base radius, and l the slant height of the cone.

Example 5

Given that y varies jointly with x and with the square root of z , and that $y = 2$ when $x = \frac{1}{2}$ and $z = \frac{1}{4}$, find (a) a formula giving y in terms of x and z , (b) the value of y when $x = \frac{1}{2}$ and $z = \frac{1}{4}$.

(a) y varies jointly with x and with the square root of z

$\therefore y \propto x\sqrt{z}$

or $y = kx\sqrt{z}$

but $y = 2$ when $x = \frac{1}{2}$ and $z = \frac{1}{4}$,

$\therefore 2 = k \times \frac{1}{2} \times \sqrt{\frac{1}{4}}$ giving $k = 32$

$\therefore y = 32x\sqrt{z}$

(b) Using $y = 32x\sqrt{z}$

If $x = \frac{1}{2}$ and $z = \frac{1}{4}$, $y = 32 \times \frac{1}{2} \times \sqrt{\frac{1}{4}}$

or $y = 4$

The required formula is $y = 32x\sqrt{z}$ and $y = 4$ when $x = \frac{1}{2}$ and $z = \frac{1}{4}$.

Note that in this example it was stated that y varies jointly with x and with the square root of z , but usually the word 'jointly' can be omitted without any loss of clarity. Thus we can say ' y varies with x and with the square root of z '.

Partial variation

In relationships of the type $y = k_1x + k_2z$, y is said to vary *partly* with x and *partly* with z . The difference between this type of variation and joint variation should be carefully noted.

Example 6

y varies partly with the square root of x and partly with the square of z .

Given that $y = 11$ when $x = 9$ and $z = 2$, and that $y = 23$ when $x = 25$ and $z = 4$, find (a) a formula giving y in terms of x and z , (b) the value of x when $y = 30$ and $z = 6$.

- (a) $y = k_1\sqrt{x} + k_2z^2$
 but $y = 11$ when $x = 9$ and $z = 2$,
 $\therefore 11 = k_1\sqrt{9} + k_2(2)^2$
 i.e. $11 = 3k_1 + 4k_2$... [1]
 and $y = 23$ when $x = 25$ and $z = 4$,
 $\therefore 23 = k_1\sqrt{25} + k_2(4)^2$
 i.e. $23 = 5k_1 + 16k_2$... [2]

Solving equations [1] and [2] simultaneously gives

$$k_1 = 3, k_2 = \frac{1}{4}$$

thus $y = 3\sqrt{x} + \frac{1}{4}z^2$

- (b) using $y = 3\sqrt{x} + \frac{1}{4}z^2$, with $y = 30$ and $z = 6$,
 $30 = 3\sqrt{x} + \frac{1}{4}(6)^2$
 $\therefore \sqrt{x} = 4$
 i.e. $x = 16$

The formula is $y = 3\sqrt{x} + \frac{1}{4}z^2$ and $x = 16$ when $y = 30$ and $z = 6$.

Exercise 5B

- Using k (or k_1 and k_2) as constants express each of the following statements as equations
 - y varies directly with x ,
 - y is directly proportional to the cube of x ,
 - y varies directly with the cube root of x ,
 - y is inversely proportional to x ,
 - y varies inversely with the square root of x ,
 - y varies jointly with x and with the square of z ,
 - y varies with the square of x and inversely with z ,
 - y varies with w , x and inversely with z ,
 - y varies partly with x and partly with z ,
 - y varies partly with the square of x and partly with z ,
 - The variation of y is in two parts, one part varies directly with the square root of x and the other varies inversely with the square of z .
- Given that y is inversely proportional to the square of x and that $y = 1.25$ when $x = 2$ find
 - a formula giving y in terms of x ,
 - the value of y when $x = \frac{1}{2}$.
- If y varies partly with x and partly with z^2 , and $y = 2$ when $x = 4$ and $z = 2$, and $y = 43$ when $x = 2$ and $z = 4$, find
 - a formula giving y in terms of x and z ,
 - the value of x when $z = \frac{1}{2}$ and $y = -\frac{1}{2}$.
- For a given spring, the extension x varies directly with the magnitude of the applied force F . If $x = 0.3$ metres when $F = 5$ newtons find F as a function of x and hence find x when $F = 8$ newtons.
- The time period T of a simple pendulum varies directly with the square root of the length (l) of the pendulum. If $T = 1.2$ s when $l = 0.36$ m find T as a function of l and hence find l when $T = 1$ second.
- For a constant mass moving in a circular path of radius r the force F , acting towards the centre of the circle, varies directly with the square of the speed v and inversely with the radius of the path. If $F = 240$ newtons when $v = 4$ m/s and $r = 0.1$ m express F in terms of v and r and hence find F when $r = 0.5$ m and $v = 2$ m/s.

7. The quarterly telephone charge C is made up of two parts; the first part is a constant and the second part varies directly as the number of units used, u . If the charge is £33 for a quarter in which 400 units are used and £26 for a quarter in which 260 units are used, find C as a function of u and find the charge for a quarter in which 450 units are used.
8. The velocity v of sound waves through metal varies directly with the square root of the modulus of elasticity E of the metal, and inversely with the square root of ρ , the density of the material. For steel $E = 1.95 \times 10^{11} \text{ N/m}^2$, $\rho = 7800 \text{ kg/m}^3$ and the velocity of sound through steel is 5000 m/s. Find v in terms of E and ρ and find the velocity of sound in aluminium for which $E = 7.436 \times 10^{10} \text{ N/m}^2$ and $\rho = 2750 \text{ kg/m}^3$.

5.3 Elementary theory of logarithms

Given any two positive numbers a and b , there exists a third number c such that $a^c = b$.

The number c is said to be the logarithm of b to the base a and we write $\log_a b = c$.

Thus $a^c = b \Leftrightarrow \log_a b = c$.

The logarithm of x to the base a is the power to which a must be raised to give x .

If $p = \log_a x$ and $q = \log_a y$ then $a^p = x$ and $a^q = y$.

Thus $xy = a^{p+q}$ i.e. $\log_a(xy) = p + q \Rightarrow$	$\log_a(xy) = \log_a x + \log_a y$
$\frac{x}{y} = a^{p-q}$ i.e. $\log_a\left(\frac{x}{y}\right) = p - q \Rightarrow$	$\log_a\left(\frac{x}{y}\right) = \log_a x - \log_a y$
$x^a = a^{pa}$ i.e. $\log_a x^a = pa \Rightarrow$	$\log_a x^a = a \log_a x$
If $r = \log_a a$ then $a^r = a$, i.e. $r = 1 \Rightarrow$	$\log_a a = 1$

Example 7

- (a) Find x if $\log_2 125 = 3$. (b) Evaluate $\log_3 81$.
 (c) Express $7 \log_2 2 - 3 \log_2 12 + 5 \log_2 3$ as a single logarithm.
- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| (a) $\log_2 125 = 3$
$\therefore x^2 = 125$
$= 5^3$
$\therefore x = 5$ | (b) Let $\log_3 81 = a$
$\therefore 3^a = 81$
$= 3^4$
$\therefore a = 4$ | (c) $7 \log_2 2 - 3 \log_2 12 + 5 \log_2 3$
$= \log_2 2^7 - \log_2 12^3 + \log_2 3^5$
$= \log_2 \left(\frac{2^7 \times 3^5}{12^3} \right)$
$= \log_2 18$ |
|---|---|--|

Common logarithms

If the base of the logarithm of x is 10, we refer to this as a common logarithm and we write this as $\log_{10} x$. Frequently the base is omitted and we write this as $\log x$. If the base is other than 10 then clearly it is essential that the base is named.

Natural logarithms

We shall see in later chapters that a very important set of logarithms are those to the base e , where e is a constant rather like π . Correct to 5 decimal places, $e = 2.71828$. These logarithms, to the base e , are referred to as natural logarithms and it is usual to write $\log_e x$ as $\ln x$.

Inverse of logarithmic function

For every positive real number x we can find a unique value y given by $y = \log_e x$.

Thus $f(x) = \log_e x$ is a one-to-one function with domain \mathbb{R}^+ .

The inverse function of $f: x \rightarrow \log_e x$ is the function which maps $\log_e x$ on to x .

This inverse function can be determined by the method shown on page 37, chapter 1.

For the function $f(x) = \log_e x$, let $y = \log_e x$
then $x = a^y$.

Thus, given y , we can return to x using the expression a^y .

The inverse function $f^{-1}(x)$ is $f^{-1}(x) = a^x$.

From section 1.6 on page 44, we would expect the graph of $y = a^x$ to be the reflection of $y = \log_e x$ in the line $y = x$, and question 11 of Exercise 5C verifies this fact.

Example 8

Use your calculator to find, correct to 2 decimal places, the value of x if

(a) $\log 31 = x$, (b) $\log x = 1.6$, (c) $\ln x = -0.25$.

(a) Using the log function on the calculator, $x = 1.49$	(b) $\log x = 1.6$ $\therefore 10^{1.6} = x$ i.e. $x = 39.81$	(c) $\ln x = -0.25$ $\therefore e^{-0.25} = x$ i.e. $x = 0.78$
--	---	--

Change of base

It is possible to express the logarithm of a to the base b in terms of logarithms to some other base c .

Suppose $y = \log_c a$
then $a = c^y$
 $\therefore \log_b a = \log_b c^y$ by taking \log_b of both sides
 $= y \log_b c$

$\therefore y = \frac{\log_c a}{\log_c b}$ i.e. $\log_b a = \frac{\log_c a}{\log_c b}$

putting $c = a$ gives $\log_b a = \frac{\log_a a}{\log_a b}$ i.e. $\log_b a = \frac{1}{\log_a b}$

The technique of taking the logarithm of both sides of an equation can be useful when solving equations involving x as a power.

Example 9

Solve, giving your answers correct to 3 decimal places, (a) $3^{x+1} = 15$, (b) $(0.8)^{2x} = 0.45$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(a)} \quad & 3^{x+1} = 15 \\ \therefore & \log 3^{x+1} = \log 15 \\ \therefore & (x+1) \log 3 = \log 15 \\ \therefore & x+1 = \frac{\log 15}{\log 3} \\ & x = \frac{\log 15}{\log 3} - 1 \\ \text{or} \quad & x = 1.465 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(b)} \quad & (0.8)^{2x} = 0.45 \\ \therefore & \log(0.8)^{2x} = \log 0.45 \\ \therefore & 2x \log(0.8) = \log 0.45 \\ \therefore & 2x = \frac{\log 0.45}{\log 0.8} \\ & = 3.5784 \\ \text{or} \quad & x = 1.789 \end{aligned}$$

Example 10

Solve for x the equations (a) $5^{2x+1} + 4 = 21 \times 5^x$, (b) $\log_5 x + \log_5 9 = 3$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(a)} \quad & 5^{2x+1} + 4 = 21 \times 5^x \\ \text{or} \quad & 5 \times 5^{2x} - 21 \times 5^x + 4 = 0 \\ \text{letting } & y = 5^x, \\ & 5y^2 - 21y + 4 = 0 \\ & (5y - 1)(y - 4) = 0 \\ \therefore \quad & y = \frac{1}{5} \quad \text{or} \quad y = 4 \\ & 5^x = \frac{1}{5} \quad \text{or} \quad 5^x = 4 \\ & = 5^{-1} \quad x \log 5 = \log 4 \\ \text{i.e.} \quad & x = -1 \quad \text{or} \quad x = \frac{\log 4}{\log 5} = 0.86 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(b)} \quad & \log_5 x + \log_5 9 = 3 \\ & \log_5 x + \frac{\log_5 9}{\log_5 x} = 3 \\ & (\log_5 x)^2 + 2 = 3 \log_5 x \\ \text{letting } & y = \log_5 x, \\ & y^2 - 3y + 2 = 0 \\ & (y - 1)(y - 2) = 0 \\ & y = 1 \quad \text{or} \quad y = 2 \\ \therefore \quad & \log_5 x = 1 \quad \text{or} \quad \log_5 x = 2 \\ \text{i.e.} \quad & x = 5 \quad \text{or} \quad x = 25 \end{aligned}$$

Straight line graphs

We know that if y is plotted against x for the equation $y = mx + c$, m and c constant, a straight line is obtained. The gradient of this line is m and it cuts the y -axis at $y = c$.

If we consider the relationship

$$y = ax^n \quad (a, n \text{ constant})$$

$$\text{then } \log y = \log(ax^n) = \log a + \log x^n$$

$$\therefore \log y = n \log x + \log a$$

Since this is of the form $Y = mX + C$, where $\log y = Y$, $\log x = X$, then by plotting values of $\log y$ against $\log x$ we shall obtain a straight line graph.

In this way we can verify the existence of such a relationship and, by measuring the gradient and the Y -intercept of the straight line graph, we can obtain approximate values of the constants n and $\log a$.

Similarly, suppose a relationship of the form $y = ab^x$ is believed to exist,

$$\text{then } \log y = \log(ab^x) = \log a + x \log b$$

$$\text{i.e. } \log y = x \log b + \log a$$

which is again of the form $Y = mx + C$. Plotting $\log y$ against x will again produce a straight line graph if the relationship does in fact exist. The

gradient will, in this case, be $\log b$ and the line will cut the Y -axis at $Y = \log a$.

This is of course the same technique as was seen in section 3.8 page 89 but now, with our knowledge of logarithms, more involved relationships involving two variables can be tested by seeing whether a straight line results when suitably chosen expressions are plotted against each other.

Exercise 5C

- Write each of the following statements in the form $a^x = y$.
 (a) $\log_a c = d$ (b) $\log_a p = q$ (c) $\log s = t$ (d) $\ln z = r$
- Find the value of x in each of the following
 (a) $\log_8 x = 2$ (b) $\log_3 81 = x$ (c) $\log_2 216 = 3$
 (d) $\log_4 16 = 0.5$ (e) $\log x = -2$ (f) $\log_4 x = 5\frac{1}{2}$
 (g) $\log_8 16 = x$ (h) $\log_9 27 = x$ (i) $-\log_{10} x = 0.75$
- Evaluate the following
 (a) $\log_2 32$ (b) $\log_6 36$ (c) $\log_3 625$ (d) $\log_2(\frac{1}{2})$
 (e) $\log_2(\frac{1}{4})$ (f) $\log_6 1$ (g) $\log_6 a$ (h) $\log_4 2$
 (i) $\log_4(\frac{1}{2})$ (j) $\log_{27} 3$ (k) $\log_4 4$ (l) $\log_2(\frac{1}{6})$
- Express the following in terms of $\log a$, $\log b$ and $\log c$.
 (a) $\log(abc)$ (b) $\log(a^2bc)$ (c) $\log(a^3b^2c)$ (d) $\log(a/b)$
 (e) $\log\left(\frac{ab}{c}\right)$ (f) $\log\left(\frac{a^2}{bc^3}\right)$ (g) $\log\left(\frac{1}{ab}\right)$ (h) $\log\left(a\sqrt{\left(\frac{b}{c^3}\right)}\right)$
 (i) $\log(10ab^2)$ (j) $\log\left(\frac{\sqrt{(10a)}}{b^2}\right)$
- Express as a single logarithm
 (a) $2 \log_5 5 + \log_5 4 - \log_5 10$ (b) $2 \log_3 3 - \log_3 15 + \log_3 5$
 (c) $\log_2 12 - (\frac{1}{2} \log_2 9 + \frac{1}{3} \log_2 8)$ (d) $2 \log_4(\frac{1}{4}) + 3 \log_4 4 - \log_4(4)$
- Express each of the following in the form $\log_a[f(x)]$
 (a) $2 \log_2 x$ (b) $\log_2 x + \log_2(x + 3)$
 (c) $\log_2(x + 1) - \log_2 2$ (d) $\log_2(x^2 - 1) - \log_2(x + 1)$
 (e) $2 \log_2 x - \log_2 x(x + 1)$ (f) $3 \log_2 x + \log_2(x + 1)$
 (g) $4 \log_2 x - \log_2(x^2 + x^3)$ (h) $\frac{1}{2} \log_2 x + \log_2(x + 1) - \log_2 \sqrt{x}$
- Find the value of x in each of the following
 (a) $3 \log_2 4 = x$ (b) $2 \log_2 8 = x$ (c) $4 \log_2 2 = 0.5$
- Use your calculator to find x correct to 2 decimal places
 (a) $\log 23 = x$ (b) $\ln 23 = x$ (c) $\log x = 0.32$
 (d) $\log x = 1.4$ (e) $\log x = -0.65$ (f) $\ln x = 3.1$
 (g) $\ln x = 0.13$ (h) $\ln x = -0.45$
- Given that $\log 2 = 0.3$ show that $\log 5 = 0.7$. Using these values find the values of the following:
 (a) $\log(2.5)$ (b) $\log 4$ (c) $\log 25$ (d) $\log 32$
 (e) $\log(0.5)$ (f) $\log_2 5$ (g) $\log_5 10$
- Given that $\ln 5 = 1.6$ and $\ln 11 = 2.4$ find the values of:
 (a) $\ln 625$ (b) $\ln 55$ (c) $\ln(2.2)$ (d) $\ln 275$
 (e) $\ln(0.2)$ (f) $\ln(0.04)$ (g) $\log_5 11$

11. (a) Without the use of a calculator copy and complete the following table of values for $y = 2^x$.

x	-3	-2	-1	0	1	2
y						

- (b) Copy and complete the following table of values for $y = \log_2 x$. (Use a calculator and give values correct to 2 decimal places where necessary.)

x	0.2	0.4	0.6	0.8	1	2	3	4
y								

- (c) Plot the graphs of $y = 2^x$ and $y = \log_2 x$ on the same set of axes, using a scale of 2 cm to 1 unit on each axis.

12. Show that $\log_a b \times \log_b a = 1$ and hence evaluate
 (a) $\log_8 8 \times \log_2 9$, (b) $\log_2 64 \times 2 \log_4 25$, (c) $\log_{10} 8 \times \log_2 1000$.
13. Given that $\log 2 = 0.3$, $\log 3 = 0.48$ and $\log 17 = 1.23$ evaluate
 (a) $\log_3 3$, (b) $\log_2 17$.
14. Show graphically that the following figures support the belief that a relationship of the form $y = ak^x$ exists and use your graph to find approximate values for the constants a and k .

x	1	2	3	4	6	8	10
y	3.5	4.9	6.9	9.6	18.8	36.9	72.3

15. Show graphically that the following figures support the belief that a relationship of the form $y = ak^x$ exists and use your graph to find approximate values for the constants a and k .

x	0.5	1	1.5	2	2.5	3
y	3.6	13.8	129.6	2981	1.679×10^5	2.318×10^7

16. Show graphically that the following figures support the belief that a relationship of the form $y = ax^k$ exists and use your graph to find approximate values for the constants a and k .

x	5	8	12	14	20	30
y	22.4	45.3	83.1	104.8	178.9	328.6

17. Show graphically that the following figures support the belief that a relationship of the form $y = a(2+x)^k$ exists and use your graph to find approximate values for the constants a and k .

x	1	3	8	10	15	20	24
y	5.2	6.7	9.5	10.4	12.4	14.1	15.3

18. Using the ln or log function on a calculator solve the following equations giving answers correct to 3 significant figures.

- (a) $2^x = 5$ (b) $3^x = 17$ (c) $5^x = 10$
 (d) $4^x = 12$ (e) $3^x = 365$ (f) $3^{x+1} = 2^x$
 (g) $4^{x+1} = 3^{2-x}$ (h) $5^{x-1} = 2^{3x-1}$ (i) $6^{3x+1} = 7^{2-x}$

19. Solve the following equations (for parts (d) and (e) you will need to use a calculator and should give your answers correct to 3 significant figures).

- (a) $2^{2x} - 3 \times 2^x - 4 = 0$ (b) $4^{2x} + 4^{x+2} - 80 = 0$
 (c) $3^{2x+1} + 3 = 10 \times 3^x$ (d) $4^{2x} - 4^{x+2} = 80$
 (e) $2^{2x+1} - 7 \times 2^x + 6 = 0$ (f) $1 + \log_2 x = \frac{12}{\log_2 x}$

20. Solve the following logarithmic equations

- (a) $\log_2 x + \log_2 4 - \log_2 5 = \log_2 12$ (b) $\log_4 x - \log_4 7 = \frac{1}{2}$
 (c) $\log_2 x + \log_2 x^2 + \log_2 x^3 + \log_2 x^4 = 5$ (d) $\log_2 4 + \log_2 x = 3$
 (e) $\log_2 x - \log_2 x = 4$ (f) $\log_2 x + 2 \log_2 5 = 3$

21. Solve the following simultaneous equations

- (a) $2 \log_2 y = 1$ (b) $6 \log_2 x + 6 \log_2 y = 7$ (c) $y \log_2 8 = x$
 $xy = 64$ $4 \log_2 x + 4 \log_2 y = 9$ $2^x + 8^x = 8192$
 (d) $\log x - \log 2 = 2 \log y$ (e) $5^{x+2} + 7^{x+1} = 3468$ (f) $\log_2 x + 2 \log_2 y = 4$
 $x - 5y + 2 = 0$ $7^x = 5^x - 76$ $x + 12y = 52$
 (g) $\ln 6 + \ln(x-3) = 2 \ln y$ (h) $2 + \log_2(2x+1) = 2 \log_2 y$
 $2y - x = 3$ $x = 22 - y$

5.4 Quadratics

Sketching

Example 11

For the curve $y = x^2 - 2x - 3$, find (a) where the curve cuts the y -axis, (b) where the curve cuts the x -axis, (c) the coordinates of any maximum or minimum points, and (d) hence sketch the curve.

(a) On the y -axis, $x = 0$,

$$\therefore y = 0 - 0 - 3 = -3$$

The curve cuts the y -axis at the point A(0, -3).

(b) On the x -axis, $y = 0$,

$$\therefore 0 = x^2 - 2x - 3$$

$$= (x-3)(x+1)$$

$$\text{giving } x = +3 \text{ or } x = -1$$

The curve cuts the x -axis at the points B(3, 0) and C(-1, 0).

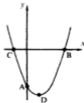
(c) Since $y = x^2 - 2x - 3$

$$= (x-1)^2 - 4, \text{ (by completing the square, see page 11).}$$

when $x = 1$, the value of y is a minimum of -4.

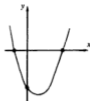
There is a minimum point at D(1, -4).

(d) Knowing the coordinates of the points A, B, C and D a sketch of the curve can now be made.



Note Frequently a satisfactory sketch of a curve can be made without having the coordinates of any maximum or minimum points. In Example 11 we could have made a reasonable sketch without having the coordinates of the point D.

Chapter 11 deals more fully with the techniques of sketching curves.



Inequalities

From the introductory chapter, we are familiar with simplifying inequalities of the form $-9 < 2x - 3 \leq 7$, to give a range of possible values for x , in this case $-3 < x \leq 5$.

The following examples show that it is also possible to find a range of values for x when we are given a quadratic inequality. These ranges can be found by sketching (Example 12), by examining the signs of the factors (Example 13), or by completing the square (Example 14).

Example 12

Find, by sketching, the range (or ranges) of values that x can take if $2x^2 + 5x - 7 \leq 0$.

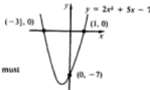
$$\begin{aligned} \text{Let } y &= 2x^2 + 5x - 7 \\ &= (2x + 7)(x - 1) \end{aligned}$$

Graph of $y = 2x^2 + 5x - 7$ cuts y -axis at $(0, -7)$

and cuts x -axis at $(-3\frac{1}{2}, 0)$, $(1, 0)$.

From this information a sketch can be made.

Thus for $y \leq 0$, i.e. for the curve to be 'below' the x -axis, we must have $-3\frac{1}{2} \leq x \leq 1$.



Example 13

By examining the signs of the factors of the expression, find the range of values x can take for the following inequalities to be true:

(a) $x^2 + 3x - 18 \geq 0$, (b) $x^2 - x - 8 \leq 4$.

In this method we use the fact that $y = (x - a)(x - b)$ will change sign when its graph crosses the x -axis, i.e. when $x = a$ and $x = b$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(a)} \quad & x^2 + 3x - 18 \geq 0 \\ \text{i.e.} \quad & (x + 6)(x - 3) \geq 0 \end{aligned}$$

$y = (x + 6)(x - 3)$ cuts the x -axis at $x = -6$ and at $x = 3$. Construct a table showing the signs of $(x + 6)(x - 3)$ on either side of these values.

x	$x < -6$	$-6 < x < 3$	$x > 3$
$x + 6$	-ve	+ve	+ve
$x - 3$	-ve	-ve	+ve
$(x - 3)(x + 6)$	+ve	-ve	+ve

Thus for $(x + 6)(x - 3) \geq 0$ (i.e. not -ve)

$$x \leq -6 \text{ or } x \geq 3.$$

(b) $x^2 - x - 8 \leq 4$

$$x^2 - x - 12 \leq 0$$

i.e. $(x - 4)(x + 3) \leq 0$

$y = (x - 4)(x + 3)$ cuts the x -axis at $x = 4$ and at $x = -3$, and y will change sign at $x = 4$ and at $x = -3$. The table shows the sign of y on either side of these values.

x	$x < -3$	$-3 < x < 4$	$x > 4$
$x - 4$	-ve	-ve	+ve
$x + 3$	-ve	+ve	+ve
$(x - 4)(x + 3)$	+ve	-ve	+ve

Thus for $(x - 4)(x + 3) \leq 0$ (i.e. not +ve)

$$-3 \leq x \leq 4$$

Alternatively, the required ranges could be obtained as follows:-

(a) $(x + 6)(x - 3) \geq 0 \Rightarrow$ either $x + 6 \geq 0$ and $x - 3 \geq 0 \Rightarrow x \geq 3$ }
 or $x + 6 \leq 0$ and $x - 3 \leq 0 \Rightarrow x \leq -6$ } $\Rightarrow x \leq -6$ or $x \geq 3$.

(b) $(x - 4)(x + 3) \leq 0 \Rightarrow$ either $x - 4 \geq 0$ and $x + 3 \leq 0 \Rightarrow$ no solution }
 or $x - 4 \leq 0$ and $x + 3 \geq 0 \Rightarrow -3 \leq x \leq 4$ } $\Rightarrow -3 \leq x \leq 4$.

Example 14

Find the range of values x can take for the following inequalities to be true:

(a) $x^2 + 2x + 3 \geq 0$, (b) $x^2 - 3x - 5 \geq 0$.

(a) $x^2 + 2x + 3 \geq 0$

$$\therefore x^2 + 2x + 1 - 1 + 3 \geq 0$$

$$\therefore (x + 1)^2 + 2 \geq 0$$

But this is true for all real x .

$$\therefore x^2 + 2x + 3 \geq 0 \text{ for all real } x.$$

(b) $x^2 - 3x - 5 \geq 0$

$$\therefore x^2 - 3x + \frac{9}{4} - \frac{9}{4} - 5 \geq 0$$

$$\therefore \left(x - \frac{3}{2}\right)^2 - \frac{29}{4} \geq 0$$

$$\therefore \left(x - \frac{3}{2}\right)^2 \geq \frac{29}{4}$$

$$\therefore x - \frac{3}{2} \leq \frac{-\sqrt{29}}{2} \text{ or } x - \frac{3}{2} \geq \frac{\sqrt{29}}{2}$$

$$\text{i.e. } x \leq \frac{3 - \sqrt{29}}{2} \text{ or } x \geq \frac{3 + \sqrt{29}}{2}$$

Exercise 5D*Quadratic sketches*

- For the graph of $y = x^2 - 5x + 4$ find the coordinates of
 - the point where the line cuts the y -axis,
 - the points where the line cuts the x -axis,
 - any maximum or minimum points.
 Hence make a sketch of $y = x^2 - 5x + 4$.
- For the graph of $y = 4 + 3x - x^2$ find the coordinates of
 - the point where the line cuts the y -axis,
 - the points where the line cuts the x -axis,
 - any maximum or minimum points.
 Hence make a sketch of $y = 4 + 3x - x^2$.
- For the graph of $y = -4x^2 - 12x - 5$ find the coordinates of
 - the point where the line cuts the y -axis,
 - the points where the line cuts the x -axis,
 - any maximum or minimum points.
 Hence make a sketch of $y = -4x^2 - 12x - 5$.

Each of the statements in questions 4, 5 and 6 refer to the graph of $y = a(x - b)(x - c)$. Find the values of a , b and c in each case ($b \geq c$).

- The curve cuts the x -axis at $(1, 0)$ and at $(2, 0)$ and the y -axis at $(0, 4)$.
- The curve cuts the x -axis at $(-2, 0)$ and at $(3, 0)$ and the y -axis at $(0, -9)$.
- The curve *touches* the x -axis at $(2, 0)$ and cuts the y -axis at $(0, 12)$.

Quadratic inequalities

- Use sketching to determine the range (or ranges) of values x can take for each of the following inequalities.

(a) $(x - 5)(x + 3) \geq 0$	(b) $x^2 - 8x + 15 \leq 0$
(c) $x^2 - 4x - 5 \geq 0$	(d) $2x^2 - 5x - 3 \geq 0$
(e) $3x^2 - 19x + 6 \leq 0$	(f) $5 - 3x - 2x^2 \geq 0$
- By examining the signs of the factors of the expressions, find the range (or ranges) of values that x can take in each of the following inequalities.

(a) $x^2 + 5x - 6 \leq 0$	(b) $x^2 + 7x + 12 \geq 0$
(c) $x^2 - 12x + 35 < 0$	(d) $3x^2 - 22x + 35 \geq 0$
(e) $6x^2 - x > 15$	(f) $1 + x - 6x^2 \geq 0$
- For each of the following inequalities use the method of completing the square to find the range (or ranges) of values that x can take.

(a) $x^2 + 4x + 1 \geq 0$	(b) $x^2 - 5x + 3 \leq 0$	(c) $x^2 - 4x + 5 \geq 0$
(d) $2x^2 - 3x \leq 1$	(e) $2x^2 - 3x \geq -2$	(f) $3x^2 \geq 2 - 2x$
- Show that $x^2 + x + 1$ is positive for all real x [hint: use 'completing the square'].
- Show that $3x^2 + 4x + 2$ is positive for all real x [hint: use 'completing the square'].
- Use the method of completing the square to find the range of values k can take if $x^2 + 4x + k - 1$ is positive for all real x .
- Use the method of completing the square to find the range of values k can take if $x^2 + 2kx + 2k + 3$ is positive for all real x .

The discriminant

On page 11, the formula $x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{(b^2 - 4ac)}}{2a}$ was used to solve a

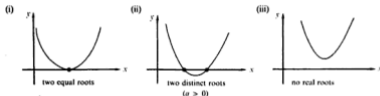
quadratic equation. The formula applies to the general quadratic equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$. The value of the expression $(b^2 - 4ac)$ will determine the nature of the roots of the equation, and it is called the **discriminant** of the equation.

If the discriminant is zero, i.e. $b^2 - 4ac = 0$, the roots of the equation are $x = \frac{-b}{2a}$, $x = \frac{-b}{2a}$.

If the discriminant is positive, i.e. $b^2 - 4ac > 0$, the roots are unequal

and $x = \frac{-b + \sqrt{(b^2 - 4ac)}}{2a}$ or $x = \frac{-b - \sqrt{(b^2 - 4ac)}}{2a}$

If the discriminant is negative, i.e. $b^2 - 4ac < 0$, there are no real roots of the equation.



The three diagrams of the curve $y = ax^2 + bx + c$ ($a > 0$) show the three possible cases.

In (i) the curve *touches* the x -axis, i.e. for $y = 0$ there are two equal values of x ,

In (ii) the curve *cuts* the x -axis, i.e. for $y = 0$ there are two real distinct values of x ,

In (iii) the curve does not cut the x -axis, i.e. for $y = 0$ there is no real value of x .

Similar diagrams exist for the curve $y = ax^2 + bx + c$ ($a < 0$). The value of the discriminant will again determine the nature of the roots of the equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$.

Example 15

Find the discriminant and state whether the equation will have two real distinct roots, no real roots or a repeated root in each of the following cases.

(a) $3x^2 - 5x + 2 = 0$, (b) $4x^2 - 28x + 49 = 0$, (c) $5x^2 - 7x + 3 = 0$.

(a) Comparing $3x^2 - 5x + 2 = 0$

with $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$, gives $a = 3$, $b = -5$, $c = 2$.

The discriminant is $b^2 - 4ac$

$$= (-5)^2 - 4(3)2$$

$$= +1$$

Since $b^2 - 4ac > 0$ the equation will have 2 real distinct roots.

- (b) Comparing $4x^2 - 28x + 49 = 0$
with $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$, gives $a = 4$, $b = -28$, $c = 49$.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{The discriminant is } b^2 - 4ac \\ &= (-28)^2 - 4(4)49 \\ &= 784 - 784 \\ &= 0\end{aligned}$$

Since $b^2 - 4ac = 0$ the equation will have two equal roots, i.e. a repeated root.

- (c) Comparing $5x^2 - 7x + 3 = 0$
with $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$, gives $a = 5$, $b = -7$, $c = 3$.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{The discriminant is } b^2 - 4ac \\ &= (-7)^2 - 4(5)3 \\ &= 49 - 60 \\ &= -11\end{aligned}$$

Since $b^2 - 4ac < 0$ the equation has no real roots.

Example 16

Find the range of values β can take for the quadratic expression $x^2 + 4\beta x + \beta$ to be positive for all real values of x .

The discriminant of $x^2 + 4\beta x + \beta$ is $16\beta^2 - 4\beta$.

The graph of $x^2 + 4\beta x + \beta$ will not cut the x -axis if $16\beta^2 - 4\beta < 0$
i.e. $4\beta(4\beta - 1) < 0$

β	$\beta < 0$	$0 < \beta < \frac{1}{4}$	$\beta > \frac{1}{4}$
4β	-ve	+ve	+ve
$4\beta - 1$	-ve	-ve	+ve
$4\beta(4\beta - 1)$	+ve	-ve	+ve

From the table $4\beta(4\beta - 1) < 0$ if $0 < \beta < \frac{1}{4}$.

Thus $x^2 + 4\beta x + \beta$ is always positive or always negative for $0 < \beta < \frac{1}{4}$.

If $x = 0$, $x^2 + 4\beta x + \beta = \beta$ which is positive for $0 < \beta < \frac{1}{4}$.

Thus the required range is $0 < \beta < \frac{1}{4}$.

Alternatively, this example could have been answered by the method of completing the square.

Example 17

Find the range, or ranges, of values K can take for $Kx^2 - 4x + 5 - K = 0$ to have two real distinct roots.

The solution to this question needs care since for $K = 0$, the given equation is not a quadratic. This special case is considered separately in the working below.

Comparing $Kx^2 - 4x + 5 - K = 0$
with $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ gives $a = K$, $b = -4$ and $c = (5 - K)$.

If $K \neq 0$, for 2 real distinct roots

$$16 - 4K(5 - K) > 0$$

i.e. $K^2 - 5K + 4 > 0$

or $(K - 1)(K - 4) > 0$

K	$K < 1$	$1 < K < 4$	$K > 4$
$K - 1$	-ve	+ve	+ve
$K - 4$	-ve	-ve	+ve
$(K - 1)(K - 4)$	+ve	-ve	+ve

$$\therefore K < 1, K > 4.$$

The required ranges are $K < 1$ except $K = 0$ and $K > 4$.

Example 18

Find the range, or ranges, of values K can take for $Kx^2 - 2xK - 3K - 12 = 0$ to have real roots.

(Note: The phrase 'has real roots' should be taken to mean 'has either two real distinct roots or a repeated root'.)

Comparing $Kx^2 - 2xK - 3K - 12 = 0$

with $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ gives $a = K$, $b = -2K$ and $c = (-3K - 12)$.

If $K \neq 0$, for one or two real roots,

$$4K^2 - 4K(-3K - 12) \geq 0$$

i.e. $K(K + 3) \geq 0$

K	$K < -3$	$-3 < K < 0$	$K > 0$
K	-ve	-ve	+ve
$K + 3$	-ve	+ve	+ve
$K(K + 3)$	+ve	-ve	+ve

$$\therefore K \leq -3, K \geq 0.$$

The required ranges are $K \leq -3$ and $K > 0$.

If $K = 0$,

$$-4x + 5 = 0$$

$$\therefore x = 1\frac{1}{4}$$

i.e. only one solution.

Thus $K = 0$ does not give two real distinct roots.

If $K = 0$

$$-12 = 0 \text{ which is impossible.}$$

$$\therefore K \neq 0.$$

The range of a quadratic

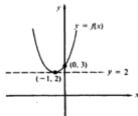
The graph of the quadratic function $f(x) = x^2 + 2x + 3$, is shown in the diagram.

From this we can see that for the domain $x \in \mathbb{R}$ the function can only take values ≥ 2 ,

i.e. for real x the range of $f(x)$ is

$\{y \in \mathbb{R} : y \geq 2\}$.

Using the discriminant this range can be determined without having to make a sketch of the function.



Example 19

Find the range of the function $f(x) = x^2 + 6x - 1$ for the domain $x \in \mathbb{R}$.

Let $y = x^2 + 6x - 1$

then $0 = x^2 + 6x - 1 - y$

Comparing with $0 = ax^2 + bx + c$ gives $a = 1$, $b = 6$, $c = -(1 + y)$.

For real x $b^2 - 4ac \geq 0$

i.e. $36 + 4 \times 1 \times (1 + y) \geq 0$

giving $y \geq -10$

Thus for real x the function $f(x) = x^2 + 6x - 1$ has range $\{y \in \mathbb{R} : y \geq -10\}$.

Alternatively, this range could have been determined by completing the square:

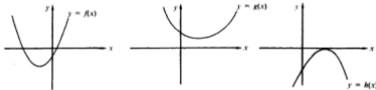
$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= x^2 + 6x - 1 \\ &= x^2 + 6x + 9 - 9 - 1 \\ &= (x + 3)^2 - 10 \end{aligned}$$

Now $(x + 3)^2 \geq 0$,

$\therefore f(x) \geq -10$, i.e. for real x , $f(x)$ has range $\{y \in \mathbb{R} : y \geq -10\}$.

Exercise 5E

1. The graphs of the quadratic functions $y = f(x)$, $y = g(x)$ and $y = h(x)$ are shown below,



State which of the equations $f(x) = 0$, $g(x) = 0$ and $h(x) = 0$ will have (a) no real roots, (b) two real distinct roots, (c) a repeated root.

If all of the functions are of the form $ax^2 + bx + c$, find for which of them (d) $a > 0$, (e) $a < 0$.

2. Each of the following quadratic equations are in the form $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ (or can be expressed in that form). In each case find the value of $b^2 - 4ac$ and hence state whether the equation will have two real distinct roots, no real roots or a repeated root.
- (a) $x^2 + 11x - 2 = 0$ (b) $x^2 - 3x + 3 = 0$ (c) $x^2 + 7x - 2 = 0$
 (d) $9x^2 + 6x + 1 = 0$ (e) $3x^2 - 11x + 7 = 0$ (f) $2x^2 + 5x + 4 = 0$
 (g) $4x^2 - 12x + 9 = 0$ (h) $7x^2 + 11x + 5 = 0$ (i) $7x^2 - 11x - 5 = 0$

3. Find the range of each of the following functions for the domain $x \in \mathbb{R}$.

(a) $f(x) = x^3 + 4x - 2$

(b) $f(x) = x^2 + 3x + 5$

(c) $f(x) = 5 - 2x - x^2$

(d) $f(x) = 2x^2 - 8x + 3$

(e) $f(x) = 5x - 1 - 2x^2$

4. If $ax^2 - 8x + 2 = 0$ has a repeated root find the value of a .
5. If $2x^2 + bx + 50 = 0$ has a repeated root find the possible values of b .
6. Find the range(s) of values b can take for $9x^2 + bx + 4 = 0$ to have two real distinct roots.
7. Find the range(s) of values k can take for $x^2 + (k + 1)x + 1 = 0$ to have real roots.
8. Find the range(s) of values k can take for $2x^2 + (3 - k)x + k + 3 = 0$ to have two real distinct roots.
9. Find the range(s) of values k can take for
- (a) $kx^2 + 4x + 3 + k = 0$
to have real roots.
- (b) $kx^2 + 3x + k - 4 = 0$
to have two real distinct roots.
- (c) $kx^2 + 2x + 1 - k = 0$
to have two real distinct roots.

(d) $kx^2 + 3x(1 - k) + 3 = 0$
to have real roots.

(e) $kx^2 + k = 8x - 2kx$
to have two real distinct roots.

(f) $kx^2 + 1 = 4kx - 3k$
to have real roots.

10. Use the discriminant to find the range of values that β can take if $x^2 + 5\beta x + \beta$ is positive for all real x .
11. Prove that $y = x - 3$ is a tangent to the curve $y = x^2 - 5x + 6$ and find the coordinates of the point of contact.
12. Prove that $y = 4x - 9$ is a tangent to $y = 4x(x - 2)$ and find the coordinates of the point of contact.
13. For each part of this question, state which of the following statements apply:
- (i) the straight line is a tangent to the curve, (ii) the straight line cuts the curve in two distinct points, (iii) the straight line neither cuts nor touches the curve.
- (a) Curve: $y = 3x^2 - 4x - 2$
Straight line: $y = x - 3$
- (b) Curve: $y = 7x(x - 1)$
Straight line: $y + 2x + 1 = 0$
- (c) Curve: $y = 9x^2 - 3x + 10$
Straight line: $y = 3(x + 3)$
- (d) Curve: $y = (3x - 4)(x + 1)$
Straight line: $y + 10x + 11 = 0$.

Sum and product of the roots of a quadratic equation

If α and β are the roots of the equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ then

$$(x - \alpha)(x - \beta) = 0$$

i.e. $x^2 - x(\alpha + \beta) + \alpha\beta = 0$

Comparing this equation with $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ (i.e. $x^2 + \frac{bx}{a} + \frac{c}{a} = 0$)

we see that $\alpha + \beta = \frac{-b}{a}$, $\alpha\beta = \frac{c}{a}$.

We can therefore state that if α and β are the roots of the equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$,

$$\alpha + \beta (\text{the sum of the roots}) = \frac{-b}{a}$$

$$\alpha\beta (\text{the product of the roots}) = \frac{c}{a}$$

We can use our knowledge of the value of $(\alpha + \beta)$ and $\alpha\beta$ to find the values of other symmetrical expressions in α and β . An expression is symmetrical in α and β if writing α for β and β for α leaves the expression unchanged.

Example 20

If α and β are the roots of the equation $x^2 - x - 3 = 0$, state the values of $(\alpha + \beta)$ and $(\alpha\beta)$ and find the values of

(a) $\alpha^2 + \beta^2$, (b) $(\alpha - \beta)^2$, (c) $\alpha^3 + \beta^3$.

Comparing $x^2 - x - 3 = 0$ with $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ gives

$a = 1, b = -1, c = -3$.

$$\text{Hence } \alpha + \beta = \frac{-b}{a} = 1 \text{ and } \alpha\beta = \frac{c}{a} = -3$$

$$\begin{array}{lll} \text{(a) } \alpha^2 + \beta^2 & \text{(b) } (\alpha - \beta)^2 & \text{(c) } \alpha^3 + \beta^3 \\ = (\alpha + \beta)^2 - 2\alpha\beta & = \alpha^2 - 2\alpha\beta + \beta^2 & = (\alpha + \beta)^3 - 3\alpha^2\beta - 3\alpha\beta^2 \\ = 1^2 - 2(-3) & = (\alpha + \beta)^2 - 2\alpha\beta - 2\alpha\beta & = (\alpha + \beta)^3 - 3\alpha\beta(\alpha + \beta) \\ = 7 & = 1^2 - 4(-3) & = 1^3 - 3(-3)(1) \\ & = 13 & = 10 \end{array}$$

Example 21

If α and β are the roots of the quadratic equation $x^2 - 3x - 5 = 0$, find the quadratic equation that has roots of

$$\text{(a) } \alpha - 3, \beta - 3 \quad \text{(b) } \frac{1}{\alpha + 1}, \frac{1}{\beta + 1} \quad \text{(c) } \frac{1}{\alpha^2}, \frac{1}{\beta^2}.$$

If α and β are the roots of $x^2 - 3x - 5 = 0$ then $\alpha + \beta = 3$ and $\alpha\beta = -5$.

In each case the method will be to find the sum and the product of the required roots and hence to write down the required equation.

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{(a) sum of new roots} = \alpha - 3 + \beta - 3 \\ \quad = \alpha + \beta - 6 \\ \quad = 3 - 6 \\ \quad = -3 \\ \text{product of new roots} = (\alpha - 3)(\beta - 3) \\ \quad = \alpha\beta - 3(\alpha + \beta) + 9 \\ \quad = -5 - 3(3) + 9 \\ \quad = -5 \end{array}$$

Thus in the required equation

$$\frac{-b}{a} = -3 \text{ and } \frac{c}{a} = -5.$$

With $a = 1, b = 3$ and $c = -5$,
the required equation is
 $x^2 + 3x - 5 = 0$.

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{(b) sum of new roots} = \frac{1}{\alpha + 1} + \frac{1}{\beta + 1} \\ \quad = \frac{\beta + 1 + \alpha + 1}{(\alpha + 1)(\beta + 1)} \\ \quad = \frac{(\alpha + \beta) + 2}{\alpha\beta + \beta + \alpha + 1} \\ \quad = -5 \\ \text{product of new roots} = \left(\frac{1}{\alpha + 1}\right)\left(\frac{1}{\beta + 1}\right) \\ \quad = \frac{1}{\alpha\beta + \alpha + \beta + 1} \\ \quad = \frac{1}{-5 + 3 + 1} \\ \quad = -1 \end{array}$$

Hence the required equation is
 $x^2 + 5x - 1 = 0$.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{(c) sum of new roots} &= \frac{1}{\alpha^2} + \frac{1}{\beta^2} & \text{product of new roots} &= \frac{1}{\alpha^2\beta^2} \\
 &= \frac{\beta^2 + \alpha^2}{\alpha^2\beta^2} & &= \frac{1}{25} \\
 &= \frac{(\alpha + \beta)^2 - 2\alpha\beta}{\alpha^2\beta^2} \\
 &= \frac{19}{25}
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence the required equation is $x^2 - \frac{19}{25}x + \frac{1}{25} = 0$ or $25x^2 - 19x + 1 = 0$.

Note that, although from any quadratic equation we can write down the sum and the product of the roots of that equation, these two results will not of themselves help us to find the roots of the equation.

If α and β are the roots of the equation $x^2 - 7x + 9 = 0$, then $\alpha + \beta = 7$ and $\alpha\beta = 9$. Solving these two equations simultaneously:

$$\alpha = 7 - \beta \quad \text{hence} \quad (7 - \beta)\beta = 9$$

$$\text{or} \quad 7\beta - \beta^2 = 9 \quad \text{i.e.} \quad \beta^2 - 7\beta + 9 = 0 \quad \text{which is the original equation.}$$

However, if some additional information about the roots is available, it is possible to solve the equation by this means as Example 22 shows.

Example 22

Find the roots of the quadratic equation $x^2 - 6x + k = 0$ given that one root is three times the other and that k is a constant. Find also the value of k .

Let the roots of the equation be α and 3α .

Then from the equation $x^2 - 6x + k = 0$,

$$\alpha + 3\alpha = 6 \quad \dots [1]$$

$$\text{and} \quad \alpha(3\alpha) = k \quad \dots [2]$$

From [1], $\alpha = 1\frac{1}{2}$ and therefore $3\alpha = 4\frac{1}{2}$.

From [2], $k = 3\alpha^2 = 3(1\frac{1}{2})^2 = 7\frac{1}{2}$.

The roots of the equation are 1.5 and 4.5 and the constant $k = 6.75$.

Exercise 5F

1. State (i) the sum and (ii) the product of the roots of each of the following quadratics:

(a) $x^2 + 9x + 4 = 0$

(b) $x^2 - 2x - 5 = 0$

(c) $x^2 - 7x + 2 = 0$

(d) $x^2 - 9x - 3 = 0$

(e) $2x^2 - 7x + 1 = 0$

(f) $7x^2 + x - 1 = 0$

(g) $3x^2 + 10x - 2 = 0$

(h) $5x^2 + 10x + 1 = 0$

2. In each part of this question, you are given the sum and product of the roots of a quadratic. In each case, find the quadratic equation in the form $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ with a , b and c taking integer values.

	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)
Sum	-3	6	7	$-\frac{1}{2}$	$-\frac{1}{2}$	$-\frac{1}{2}$	$-\frac{1}{2}$	$-1\frac{1}{2}$
Product	-1	-4	-5	$-\frac{1}{2}$	-2	-5	$-\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$

3. If α and β are the roots of the equation $x^2 + 11x + 2 = 0$ find the values of

- (a) $\alpha\beta$ (b) $\alpha + \beta$
 (c) $(\alpha + \beta)^2$ (d) $\alpha^2 + \beta^2$
 (e) $3 - \alpha - \beta$ (f) $\alpha^2\beta + \alpha\beta^2$

4. If α and β are the roots of the equation $2x^2 - 5x + 1 = 0$ find the values of

- (a) $\alpha\beta$ (b) $\alpha + \beta$
 (c) $\alpha^2 + 3\alpha\beta + \beta^2$ (d) $\alpha^2 - 3\alpha\beta + \beta^2$
 (e) $\alpha^3\beta + \alpha\beta^3$ (f) $\frac{1}{\beta} + \frac{1}{\alpha}$

5. If α and β are the roots of the equation $6x^2 + 2x - 3 = 0$ find the values of

- (a) $\frac{\alpha}{\beta} + \frac{\beta}{\alpha}$ (b) $\frac{1}{\beta^2} + \frac{1}{\alpha^2}$
 (c) $\frac{2\beta}{1 + \frac{\beta}{\alpha}}$ (d) $\frac{1}{\alpha\beta} - \frac{1}{\beta} - \frac{1}{\alpha}$
 (e) $\alpha^3 + \beta^3$ (f) $\frac{1}{\alpha^3} + \frac{1}{\beta^3}$

6. If the roots of $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ differ by 3 show that $b^2 = 9a^2 + 4ac$

7. If α and β are roots of the quadratic equation $x^2 - 4x + 2 = 0$ find the quadratic equation that has roots of:

- (a) $\alpha + 2, \beta + 2$ (b) $\frac{1}{\alpha}, \frac{1}{\beta}$

- (c) α^2, β^2 (d) $\alpha^2\beta, \beta^2\alpha$
 (e) α^3, β^3 (f) $\frac{1}{\alpha^2}, \frac{1}{\beta^2}$
 (g) $(\alpha + 2\beta), (\beta + 2\alpha)$
 (h) $\frac{\alpha}{\beta}, \frac{\beta}{\alpha}$

8. Find the roots of the quadratic equation $x^2 - x + k = 0$ and the value of the constant k given that one root of the equation is twice the other.
9. Find the roots of the quadratic equation $x^2 - 3x + k = 0$ and the value of the constant k given that one root of the equation exceeds the other by 2.
10. (a) Find the restrictions on k if the equation $kx^2 + 4x + k - 3 = 0$ has real roots.
 (b) If these roots are of opposite sign find the restrictions on k now.
11. (a) Find the restrictions on k if the equation $kx^2 + (k - 3)x + 1 = 0$ has real roots.
 (b) If these real roots are distinct and are both positive, find the restriction on k now.

5.5 Polynomials in general

If $f(x) = ax^n + bx^{n-1} + cx^{n-2} + \dots + k$, $a \neq 0$, then $f(x)$ is said to be a polynomial of degree (or order) n in the variable x .

If we consider the equation $f(x) = 0$ this will have up to n real roots.

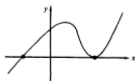
In particular, if $f(x)$ is a cubic function $ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d$ then the

equation $f(x) = 0$ can have up to three real roots. The number of real roots will depend upon the values of a , b , c and d .

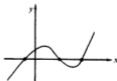
The diagrams show the various possibilities for the number of roots of $f(x) = 0$, for $a > 0$.



1 real root



2 distinct real roots of which one is repeated



3 distinct real roots

Remainder theorem

If the function $f(x)$, a polynomial in x , is divided by $(x - a)$ until the remainder does not contain x , i.e. it is a constant, then the remainder is equal to $f(a)$.

Proof:

Suppose that when $f(x)$ is divided by $(x - a)$ the quotient is $g(x)$ and the remainder is k , then $f(x) = (x - a) \times g(x) + k$

Substituting $x = a$ in both sides of this identity

$$\begin{aligned} f(a) &= 0 \times g(a) + k \\ \text{or } f(a) &= k \end{aligned}$$

So the remainder when $f(x)$ is divided by $(x - a)$ is equal to $f(a)$.

By a similar argument, when $f(x)$ is divided by $(cx - a)$ the remainder is $f\left(\frac{a}{c}\right)$.

Example 23

Find the remainder when $8x^3 - 4x^2 + 6x + 7$ is divided by

(a) $x - 1$, (b) $2x + 1$.

(a) $f(x) = 8x^3 - 4x^2 + 6x + 7$

Using the remainder theorem,
when $f(x)$ is divided by $(x - 1)$,
the remainder is $f(1)$.

$$\begin{aligned} f(1) &= 8(1) - 4(1) + 6(1) + 7 \\ &= +17 \end{aligned}$$

The remainder is +17.

(b) $f(x) = 8x^3 - 4x^2 + 6x + 7$

Using the remainder theorem,
when $f(x)$ is divided by $(2x + 1)$
the remainder is $f\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)$.

$$\begin{aligned} f\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right) &= 8\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)^3 - 4\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)^2 + 6\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right) + 7 \\ &= -1 - 1 - 3 + 7 = +2 \end{aligned}$$

The remainder is +2.

Factor theorem

As a direct deduction from the remainder theorem, we can say that for a polynomial $f(x)$, if $f(a) = 0$, then the remainder when $f(x)$ is divided by $(x - a)$ is zero, i.e. $(x - a)$ is a factor of $f(x)$.

This result is known as the factor theorem and can be used to factorise a polynomial.

Example 24

Factorise the expression $x^3 - 5x^2 + 2x + 8$ and hence calculate the ranges of values of x for which $2x + 8 > 5x^2 - x^3$.

Let $f(x) = x^3 - 5x^2 + 2x + 8$

then $f(1) = 1 - 5 + 2 + 8$
 $= 6$

$\therefore (x - 1)$ is not a factor

$$\begin{aligned} f(-1) &= -1 - 5 - 2 + 8 \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore (x + 1)$ is a factor

Other factors can either be found by further use of the factor theorem or by long division.

factor theorem:

$$f(2) = 8 - 20 + 4 + 8 = 0 \quad \therefore (x - 2) \text{ is a factor.}$$

Noticing that if

$$f(x) = x^3 - 5x^2 + 2x + 8 = (x + 1)(x - 2)(x - p),$$

then p must equal 4 so that

$(+1)(-2)(-p)$ gives

the constant term, 8.

$$\text{Thus } x^3 - 5x^2 + 2x + 8 = (x + 1)(x - 2)(x - 4)$$

long division:

$$\begin{array}{r} x^2 - 6x + 8 \\ x + 1 \overline{) x^3 - 5x^2 + 2x + 8} \\ \underline{x^3 + x^2} \\ -6x^2 + 2x \\ \underline{-6x^2 - 6x} \\ +8x + 8 \\ \underline{+8x + 8} \\ 0 \end{array}$$

$$\text{and } x^2 - 6x + 8 = (x - 2)(x - 4)$$

For $2x + 8 > 5x^2 - x^3$ we can consider

$$x^3 - 5x^2 + 2x + 8 > 0$$

$$\text{or } (x + 1)(x - 2)(x - 4) > 0$$

As before, consider the signs of these three factors for ranges of values of x :

x	$x < -1$	$-1 < x < 2$	$2 < x < 4$	$x > 4$
$x + 1$	-ve	+ve	+ve	+ve
$x - 2$	-ve	-ve	+ve	+ve
$x - 4$	-ve	-ve	-ve	+ve
$(x + 1)(x - 2)(x - 4)$	-ve	+ve	-ve	+ve

$$\text{Thus } 2x + 8 > 5x^2 - x^3 \text{ if } -1 < x < 2 \text{ or if } x > 4.$$

Notes Consider the cubic $f(x) = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d$. For $a = 1$, when searching for values of x for which $f(x) = 0$, we can restrict our attention to those numbers that are factors of d . Thus, in the last example we know immediately that $f(3) \neq 0$ because $(x - p)(x - q)(x - r)$ will not give 8 as the constant term.

For $a \neq 1$, the process is not as easy and so, having found one factor, it is advisable to use long division to find any others.

Relationships between roots and coefficients

We have already seen on page 149, that if α and β are the roots of the

$$\text{quadratic equation } ax^2 + bx + c = 0, \text{ then } \alpha + \beta = \frac{-b}{a} \text{ and } \alpha\beta = \frac{c}{a}.$$

Similar relationships exist between the roots and coefficients of polynomials of order higher than two.

Suppose that α , β and γ are the roots of a cubic equation of the type $ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d = 0$. By the factor theorem, since $x = \alpha$ is a root of the cubic equation $(x - \alpha)$ must be a factor and, in a similar way, so must $(x - \beta)$ and $(x - \gamma)$.

$$\text{Thus } (x - \alpha)(x - \beta)(x - \gamma) = 0.$$

By expanding these brackets and comparing the result with $ax^3 + bx^2 + cd + d = 0$, the following results are obtained.

$$\alpha + \beta + \gamma = \frac{-b}{a}, \beta\gamma + \alpha\gamma + \alpha\beta = \frac{c}{a} \text{ and } \alpha\beta\gamma = \frac{-d}{a}$$

The details of the proof are left as an exercise for the reader: see question 15 of Exercise 5G.

Exercise 5G

- Find the remainder when
 - $6x^3 + 7x^2 - 15x + 4$ is divided by $x - 1$,
 - $2x^3 - 3x^2 + 5x + 3$ is divided by $x + 1$,
 - $x^3 - 7x^2 + 6x + 1$ is divided by $x - 3$,
 - $5 + 6x + 7x^2 - x^3$ is divided by $x + 2$,
 - $x^4 - 3x^3 + 2x^2 + 5$ is divided by $x - 1$,
 - $8x^3 - 10x^2 + 7x + 3$ is divided by $2x - 1$,
 - $9x^3 + 4$ is divided by $3x + 2$.
- Factorise the following expressions
 - $x^3 - 2x^2 - 5x + 6$
 - $2x^3 + 7x^2 - 7x - 12$
 - $2x^3 + 3x^2 - 17x + 12$
 - $6x^3 - 5x^2 - 17x + 6$
 - $2x^4 + 7x^3 - 17x^2 - 7x + 15$
 - $6x^4 + 31x^3 + 57x^2 + 44x + 12$
- Factorise the expression $x^3 - 3x^2 - 4x + 12$. Hence calculate the ranges of values of x for which $x^3 - 3x^2 > 4x - 12$.
- Factorise the expression $6x^3 - 7x^2 - x + 2$. Hence calculate the ranges of values of x for which $2 - x < 7x^2 - 6x^3$.
- The remainder obtained when $2x^3 + ax^2 - 6x + 1$ is divided by $(x + 2)$ is twice the remainder obtained when the same expression is divided by $(x - 1)$. Find the value of a .
- The remainder obtained when $3x^3 - 6x^2 + ax - 1$ is divided by $(x + 1)$ is equal to the remainder obtained when the same expression is divided by $(x - 3)$. Find the value of a .
- Given that $(x + 2)$ is a factor of $2x^3 + 6x^2 + bx - 5$ find the remainder when the expression is divided by $(2x - 1)$.
- The expression $3x^3 + 2x^2 - bx + a$ is divisible by $(x - 1)$ but leaves a remainder of 10 when divided by $(x + 1)$. Find the values of a and b .
- The expression $b + ax - 4x^2 + 8x^3$ gives a remainder of -19 when divided by $(x + 1)$ and a remainder of 2 when divided by $(2x - 1)$. Find the values of a and b .
- The expression $6x^3 - 23x^2 + ax + b$ gives a remainder of 11 when divided by $(x - 3)$ and a remainder of -21 when divided by $(x + 1)$. Find the values of a and b and hence factorise the expression.
- If $x^2 + bx + c$ and $x^2 + dx + e$ have a common factor of $(x - p)$ show that $p = \frac{e - c}{b - d}$.
- Find the coordinates of the points where the curve $y = x^3 + 6x^2 + 11x + 6$ cuts
 - the y -axis,
 - the x -axis.
 Hence make a sketch of the curve and state the ranges of values x can take for $x^3 + 6x^2 + 11x + 6 \leq 0$.

13. Find the coordinates of the points where the curve $y = x^3 - 5x^2 + 2x + 8$ cuts
(a) the y -axis, (b) the x -axis.

Hence make a sketch of the curve and state the ranges of values x can take for $x^3 - 5x^2 + 2x + 8 > 0$.

14. Factorise the cubic expression $2x^3 - 5x^2 - 4x + 12$.

Give the coordinates of the point where $y = 2x^3 - 5x^2 - 4x + 12$

(a) cuts the y -axis, (b) cuts the x -axis, (c) touches the x -axis.

Hence sketch the curve $y = 2x^3 - 5x^2 - 4x + 12$ and state the range of values x can take for $2x^3 - 5x^2 - 4x + 12 < 0$.

15. If α , β and γ are the three roots of the cubic $ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d = 0$ prove that

$$\alpha + \beta + \gamma = -\frac{b}{a}, \quad \alpha\beta + \beta\gamma + \alpha\gamma = \frac{c}{a}, \quad \alpha\beta\gamma = -\frac{d}{a}.$$

16. If α , β and γ are the three roots of the cubic $x^3 - 2x^2 - 4x + 5 = 0$ use the results of question 15 to find the values of:

(a) $\alpha + \beta + \gamma$

(b) $\alpha\beta\gamma$

(c) $\alpha^2\beta\gamma + \alpha\beta^2\gamma + \alpha\beta\gamma^2$

(d) $\frac{1}{\alpha} + \frac{1}{\beta} + \frac{1}{\gamma}$

(e) $(\alpha + 1)(\beta + 1)(\gamma + 1)$

(f) $\alpha^2 + \beta^2 + \gamma^2$

17. If α , β and γ are the three roots of the cubic $2x^3 + 5x^2 - 4x - 10 = 0$ use the results of question 15 to find the values of

(a) $\frac{1}{\alpha\beta\gamma}$

(b) $\frac{1}{\alpha} + \frac{1}{\beta} + \frac{1}{\gamma}$

(c) $\frac{1}{\alpha\beta} + \frac{1}{\beta\gamma} + \frac{1}{\alpha\gamma}$

Hence find the cubic equation having roots of $\frac{1}{\alpha}$, $\frac{1}{\beta}$ and $\frac{1}{\gamma}$.

Exercise 5H Examination questions

- If $5^x \cdot 25^{2x} = 1$ and $3^{2x} \cdot 9^x = \frac{1}{3}$ calculate the value of x and of y .
(Cambridge)
- A variable R is directly proportional to the square of P and inversely proportional to L , where P and L are two other variables. Given that $R = 2$ when $P = 3$ and $L = 18$, determine R when $P = 5$ and $L = 50$.
(S.U.J.B.)
- A variable, r , is inversely proportional to the square of another variable, t . Given that $r = \frac{3}{4}$ when $t = 2$, find the positive value of t when $r = \frac{1}{3}$.
(S.U.J.B.)
- Find the values of p , q , r if
(i) $\log_8 81 = p$, (ii) $\log_4 64 = 2$, (iii) $\log_2 r = -4$.
(S.U.J.B.)
- Use the substitution $y = 2^x$ to solve for x the equation
 $2^{2x+1} - 2^{x+1} + 1 = 2^x$.
(A.E.B.)
- Find the value of x for which
 $2^{3x+1} = 3^{x+2}$,
giving three significant figures in your answer.
(Cambridge)
- Solve the equation
 $e^{3x} + \ln e^x = 8$.
(London)

8. (i) Simplify:

(a) $\log x^2 - \log xy$, (b) $\log z + \log \frac{1}{z}$,

(c) $\frac{\log x^3 - \log x}{\log x^2 - \log x}$, (d) $\log(\log y^2) - \log(\log y)$.

(ii) Solve the equation $(4 \cdot 381)^{2x-3} = (8 \cdot 032)^x$. (Oxford)

9. The variables x and y satisfy a law of the form $x^n y = k$, where n and k are constants. Measured values of x and y are given in the table below.

x	1.2	1.6	2.0	2.6	3.5	4.5
y	11.0	6.31	3.98	2.36	1.32	0.79

By plotting a suitable straight-line graph, estimate the values of n and k .

Use your graph to estimate the value of y when $x = 3$. (A.E.B.)

10. The charge q coulombs on a capacitor is given by the formula

$$q = 3.16 \times 2.72^{-4.3t},$$

where t is the time in seconds.

Calculate

(i) q when $t = 0$; (ii) q when $t = 0.2$; (iii) t when $q = 1.58$.

At time $t = T$, q takes the value Q .

Prove that, when q takes the value $\frac{1}{2}Q$, $t = T + \frac{\log 2}{4.32 \times \log 2.72}$. (Oxford)

11. Given that $\log_2 x + 2 \log_4 y = 4$, show that $xy = 16$. Hence solve for x and y the simultaneous equations

$$\begin{aligned} \log_{10}(x+y) &= 1, \\ \log_2 x + 2 \log_4 y &= 4. \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.E.B.})$$

12. Establish the formula $\log_x x = \frac{1}{\log_x y}$.

Solve the simultaneous equations

$$\begin{aligned} \log_x y + 2 \log_x x &= 3, \\ \log_x y + \log_x x &= 3. \end{aligned} \quad (\text{J.M.B.})$$

13. (a) Find the range of values of a for which

$$(2 - 3a)x^2 + (4 - a)x + 2 = 0$$

has no real roots.

(b) Find the values of k for which the line $y = x + k$ is a tangent to the curve $x^2 + xy + 2 = 0$. (Cambridge)

14. If α^2 and β^2 are the roots of $x^2 - 21x + 4 = 0$ and α and β are both positive, find:

(i) $\alpha\beta$; (ii) $\alpha + \beta$; (iii) the equation with roots $\frac{1}{\alpha^2}$ and $\frac{1}{\beta^2}$. (S.U.J.B)

15. Given that α and β are the roots of the equation $x^2 - bx + c = 0$,

(a) show that $(\alpha^2 + 1)(\beta^2 + 1) = (c - 1)^2 + b^2$,

(b) find, in terms of b and c , a quadratic equation whose roots are

$$\frac{\alpha}{\alpha^2 + 1} \text{ and } \frac{\beta}{\beta^2 + 1}. \quad (\text{A.E.B.})$$

16. Find the real values of k for which the equation $x^2 + (k + 1)x + k^2 = 0$ has (a) real roots, (b) one root double the other. (A.E.B.)

17. The roots of the quadratic equation

$$(x + 2)^2 - 2kx = 0,$$

where k is a non-zero real constant, are denoted by α and β . Obtain a quadratic equation whose roots are α^2 and β^2 . Find a quadratic equation whose roots are $\sqrt{\gamma}$ and $\sqrt{\delta}$, where γ and δ are the roots of

$$x^2 - 28x + 16 = 0. \quad (\text{London})$$

18. The cubic polynomial $6x^3 + 7x^2 + ax + b$ has a remainder of 72 when divided by $(x - 2)$ and is exactly divisible by $(x + 1)$. Calculate a and b . Show that $(2x - 1)$ is also a factor of the polynomial and obtain the third factor. (S.U.J.B.)

19. (a) The expression $6x^2 + x + 7$ leaves the same remainder when divided by $x - a$ and by $x + 2a$, where $a \neq 0$.

Calculate the value of a .

- (b) Given that $x^2 + px + q$ and $3x^2 + q$ have a common factor $x - b$, where p , q , and b are non-zero, show that $3p^2 + 4q = 0$.

(Cambridge)

20. Given that $f(x) = 3 - 7x + 5x^2 - x^3$, show that $3 - x$ is a factor of $f(x)$. Factorize $f(x)$ completely and hence state the set of values of x for which $f(x) \leq 0$. (London)

21. Express the polynomial

$$f(x) = 2x^4 + x^3 - x^2 + 8x - 4$$

as the product of two linear factors and a quadratic factor $q(x)$.

Prove that there are no real values of x for which $q(x) = 0$. (A.E.B.)

Matrices

6.1 Basic Concepts

Information can often be conveniently presented as an array of rows and columns.

Bus timetables, football league results and conversion tables often use this form of presentation. Such an arrangement of information is called a matrix.

The matrix on the right shows the number of televisions and videos sold in three shops in a particular month. The matrix has T.V. 2 rows and 3 columns and is said to be a 2×3 matrix, or a matrix of order 2×3 . An $n \times m$ matrix would have n rows and m columns.

	shop 1	shop 2	shop 3
T.V.	20	7	13
video	31	9	10

It can be useful to combine several matrices. For example, if we had the matrix that showed the numbers of T.V.'s and video's the three shops had sold in the previous month, we could add the matrices to give the numbers sold in each shop over the two-month period. It is assumed that the reader is familiar with the rules for combining matrices but the following statements, examples and exercise should serve to refresh the memory.

If matrices **A**, **B** and **C** are defined as follows:

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \quad B = \begin{pmatrix} e & f \\ g & h \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad C = \begin{pmatrix} i & j & k \\ l & m & n \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{then } \left. \begin{aligned} A + B &= \begin{pmatrix} a + e & b + f \\ c + g & d + h \end{pmatrix} \\ A - B &= \begin{pmatrix} a - e & b - f \\ c - g & d - h \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned} \right\}$$

$$sA = \begin{pmatrix} sa & sb \\ sc & sd \end{pmatrix}$$

$$AB = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} e & f \\ g & h \end{pmatrix} \\ = \begin{pmatrix} ae + bg & af + bh \\ ce + dg & cf + dh \end{pmatrix}$$

$$AC = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} i & j & k \\ l & m & n \end{pmatrix} \\ = \begin{pmatrix} ai + bl & aj + bm & ak + bn \\ ci + dl & cj + dm & ck + dn \end{pmatrix}$$

Only matrices of the same order can be added or subtracted.

Thus $A \pm C$ and $B \pm C$ cannot be determined because **A** and **B** are 2×2 matrices and **C** is a 2×3 matrix.

Matrices can be multiplied together if the number of columns in the first matrix equals the number of rows in the second matrix. Thus **AB**, **BA**, **AC** and **BC** can all be found but **CB** and **CA** cannot. Matrices that can be multiplied together are said to be *conformable* for multiplication.

The *transpose* of a matrix **A** is written A^T and is found by interchanging the rows and columns.

$$\text{Thus } A^T = \begin{pmatrix} a & c \\ b & d \end{pmatrix}; \quad B^T = \begin{pmatrix} e & g \\ f & h \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad C^T = \begin{pmatrix} i & l \\ j & m \\ k & n \end{pmatrix}$$

2 × 2 matrices

The *determinant* of a 2 × 2 matrix is obtained as follows:

$$\text{If } A = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \text{ then } \det A \left(\text{or } |A| \text{ or } \begin{vmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{vmatrix} \right) = ad - bc.$$

Two particular 2 × 2 matrices are **Z**, the zero or null matrix = $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$

$$\text{and } \mathbf{I}, \text{ the identity matrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Note that for any 2 × 2 matrix **A**, $A \pm Z = A$ and $IA = AI = A$.

The *inverse* of a matrix **A** is written A^{-1} and is such that

$$AA^{-1} = A^{-1}A = \mathbf{I}, \text{ the identity matrix.}$$

$$\text{If } A = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \text{ then } A^{-1} = \frac{1}{ad - bc} \begin{pmatrix} d & -b \\ -c & a \end{pmatrix} \text{ or } \begin{pmatrix} d/\det A & -b/\det A \\ -c/\det A & a/\det A \end{pmatrix}$$

i.e. to determine the inverse of a matrix **A**, interchange the elements of the leading diagonal of **A**, change the signs of the elements of the other diagonal and divide by the determinant of the matrix.

Note If the determinant of a matrix is zero, the inverse cannot be determined because 1/0 is meaningless. Any 2 × 2 matrix with determinant zero is called a *singular* matrix as it has no inverse.

Example 1

If $A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -3 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$, $B = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -4 \\ 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$ and $C = \begin{pmatrix} 13 & 2 \\ -9 & -3 \end{pmatrix}$ find, where they exist,

(a) $A + B$, (b) BC , (c) BA , (d) AB , (e) CB , (f) B^T , (g) $\det B$,
(h) B^{-1} , (i) the 2 × 2 matrix **D** such that $BD = C$.

(a) **A** and **B** are not of the same order and so $A + B$ cannot be determined.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(b) } BC &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -4 \\ 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 13 & 2 \\ -9 & -3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 13 + 36 & 2 + 12 \\ 0 - 27 & 0 - 9 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 49 & 14 \\ -27 & -9 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(c) } BA &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -4 \\ 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 + 4 \\ 0 - 3 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

(d) $AB = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -3 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -4 \\ 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$ which cannot be determined.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(e) } CB &= \begin{pmatrix} 13 & 2 \\ -9 & -3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -4 \\ 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 13 + 0 & -52 + 6 \\ -9 + 0 & 36 - 9 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 13 & -46 \\ -9 & 27 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$$(f) \mathbf{B}^T = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -4 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$(g) \det \mathbf{B} = (1 \times 3) - (0 \times -4) = 3$$

$$(h) \mathbf{B}^{-1} = \frac{1}{3} \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 4 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \text{ or } \begin{pmatrix} 1 & \frac{4}{3} \\ 0 & \frac{1}{3} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$(i) \text{ We require } \mathbf{D} \text{ such that } \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -4 \\ 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix} (\mathbf{D}) = \begin{pmatrix} 13 & 2 \\ -9 & -3 \end{pmatrix}$$

Premultiplying both sides by \mathbf{B}^{-1} and remembering that $\mathbf{B}^{-1}\mathbf{B} = \mathbf{I}$:

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} (\mathbf{D}) = \frac{1}{3} \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 4 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 13 & 2 \\ -9 & -3 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\therefore (\mathbf{D}) = \frac{1}{3} \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -6 \\ -9 & -3 \end{pmatrix}$$

Thus the required matrix \mathbf{D} is $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 \\ -3 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$

Example 2

Solve the simultaneous equations $4x - y = 1$
 $-2x + 3y = 12$ by matrix methods.

First we must express the equations in matrix form:

$$\begin{pmatrix} 4 & -1 \\ -2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 12 \end{pmatrix}$$

Premultiplying both sides by the inverse of $\begin{pmatrix} 4 & -1 \\ -2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$:

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{10} \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 12 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\therefore \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{10} \begin{pmatrix} 15 \\ 50 \end{pmatrix}$$

Thus $x = 1.5$ and $y = 5$

Exercise 6A

1. If $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & -3 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$, $\mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 6 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$, $\mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 2 & 0 \\ -3 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$ and

$$\mathbf{D} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \text{ find, where they exist,}$$

(a) $\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}$

(b) $\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}$

(c) $2\mathbf{A}$

(d) $\mathbf{C} + \mathbf{D}$

(e) $2\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A}$

(f) \mathbf{AB}

(g) \mathbf{BA}

(h) \mathbf{A}^2

(i) \mathbf{BC}

(j) \mathbf{CB}

(k) \mathbf{CD}

(l) \mathbf{DC}

(m) \mathbf{A}^{-1}

(n) \mathbf{B}^{-1}

(o) \mathbf{A}^T

(p) \mathbf{C}^T

2. Determine all the possible products that can be formed using any two of the following each time

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad B = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad C = (-1 \ 3) \quad D = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 2 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

3. Five football teams took part in a league competition in which they each played each other once in the first half of the season and again in the second half of the season. The results matrix for the first half of the season is shown below:

	Won	Drawn	Lost
Aces	2	1	1
Bruisers	2	1	1
City	0	4	0
Defenders	1	1	2
Exiles	1	1	2

The results of the matches played in the second half of the season were as follows:

Bruisers 3	: Aces 4	Exiles 2	: City 2
City 1	: Bruisers 0	Defenders 1	: Aces 0
Exiles 1	: Defenders 0	Exiles 3	: Bruisers 2
Defenders 2	: City 2	City 3	: Aces 0
Exiles 1	: Aces 5	Defenders 2	: Bruisers 3

Construct a results matrix for the whole season.

If points are awarded: 3 for a win, 1 for a draw and 0 for a loss, use the

points matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$ to determine the league positions at the end of the season.

What would the league positions be if points were awarded: 2 for a win, 1 for a draw, 0 for a loss?

4. Find the values of x and y in each of the following matrix equations.

(a) $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -5 \\ 2 & x \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 1 & y \\ 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 6 \\ 5 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$ (b) $\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ y \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} x \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ -6 \end{pmatrix}$

(c) $2\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} x \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix}$ (d) $\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} + x\begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -5 \\ 11 \end{pmatrix}$

(e) $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & x \\ 5 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & y \\ 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 7 & 3 \\ 13 & 7 \end{pmatrix}$ (f) $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ x & 3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 \\ -4 & 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 7 \\ 3 & y \end{pmatrix}$

(g) $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & x \\ 3 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ y & -3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 5 \\ 2 & 6 \end{pmatrix}$ (h) $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 \\ 4 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$

(i) $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 3 \\ -2 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 9 \\ 10 \end{pmatrix}$ (j) $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix}$

5. By letting $A = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{pmatrix} w & x \\ y & z \end{pmatrix}$ prove that $(AB)^T = B^T A^T$ and that $(AB)^{-1} = B^{-1} A^{-1}$.
6. If $A = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 5 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$, $B = \begin{pmatrix} 6 & 1 \\ 11 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$, $C = \begin{pmatrix} -4 & 3 \\ -5 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$ and $D = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 7 \\ -2 & 7 \end{pmatrix}$ find the 2×2 matrices X , Y and Z given that $AX = B$, $BY = C$ and $CZ = D$.
7. If $A = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 \\ -4 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ find the values of m and n given that $A^2 = mA + nI$ where I is the identity matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$.

8. Find the possible values x can take given that $A = \begin{pmatrix} x^2 & 3 \\ 1 & 3x \end{pmatrix}$.

$$B = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 6 \\ 2 & x \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } AB = BA.$$

9. Solve the following simultaneous equations by matrix methods.

$$\begin{array}{lll} \text{(a)} & x - y = 5 & \text{(b)} \quad x - 3y = 3 \\ & 3x + 2y = 5 & \text{(c)} \quad x + 3y = 1 \\ & & \quad \quad 5x - 9y = 11 \quad \quad 2x - 4y = 1 \end{array}$$

10. If $A = \begin{pmatrix} -3 & 2 & -1 \\ 2 & -1 & 3 \\ -1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{pmatrix} -4 & -3 & 5 \\ -5 & -4 & 7 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$ find AB .

Hence find the values of x , y and z satisfying the three equations

$$\begin{aligned} -4x - 3y + 5z &= 3 \\ -5x - 4y + 7z &= 4 \\ x + y - z &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

6.2 Transformations

A transformation of a plane takes any point A in the plane and maps it onto one and only one image A' , also lying in the plane.

We say that the point $A(x, y)$, position vector $\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$, has an image $A'(x', y')$,

position vector $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix}$, under the transformation.

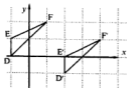
The nature of certain transformations can best be seen by considering the effect the transformation has on the unit square $OABC$. Examples of some of the common types of transformation are shown below.

(a) Translations

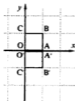
e.g. $OABC \rightarrow O'A'B'C'$ by the translation vector $\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$



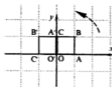
e.g. $DEF \rightarrow D'E'F'$ by the translation vector $\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$

**(b) Reflections**

e.g. Reflection in the x-axis
 $OABC \rightarrow O'A'B'C'$

**(c) Rotations**

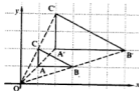
e.g. Rotation of 90° anticlockwise about the origin (or 270° clockwise about the origin)
 $OABC \rightarrow O'A'B'C'$

**(d) Enlargements (or dilatations)**

e.g. Enlargement, scale factor 2, centre (0, 0)
 $OABC \rightarrow O'A'B'C'$



e.g. Enlargement, scale factor 2, centre (0, 0)
 $ABC \rightarrow A'B'C'$



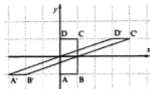
Note A transformation that reduces the size of a shape, e.g. all sides halved, would be an enlargement, scale factor $\frac{1}{2}$.

(e) Stretch in a particular direction

e.g. Stretch parallel to the x -axis, $\times 3$
 $OABC \rightarrow O'A'B'C'$

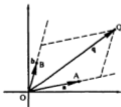
**(f) Shear with some line fixed**

e.g. Shear with x -axis fixed and $(0, 1) \rightarrow (3, 1)$
 $ABCD \rightarrow A'B'C'D'$



A transformation is said to be linear if any linear relationship between position vectors is conserved under the transformation, i.e. if a linear transformation maps a point A position vector \mathbf{a} onto its image A' position vector \mathbf{a}' , and if $\mathbf{a} = \lambda\mathbf{p} + \mu\mathbf{q}$, it follows that $\mathbf{a}' = \lambda\mathbf{p}' + \mu\mathbf{q}'$.

For example, suppose that A and B are two points with position vectors \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{b} respectively and Q is a point with position vector \mathbf{q} where $\mathbf{q} = \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{a} + 2\mathbf{b}$. If under some linear transformation T the images A' , B' and Q' have position vectors \mathbf{a}' , \mathbf{b}' and \mathbf{q}' , then $\mathbf{q}' = \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{a}' + 2\mathbf{b}'$.



All linear transformations of the plane can be expressed as a pair of equations of the form

$$\begin{cases} x' = ax + by \\ y' = cx + dy \end{cases} \text{ or, writing this in matrix form } \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$$

Thus, every linear transformation of the plane has an associated 2×2 matrix.

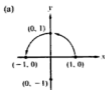
Proof: Consider a linear transformation that maps the point with position vector $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$ onto the point with position vector $\begin{pmatrix} a \\ c \end{pmatrix}$, maps the point with position vector $\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$ onto the point with position vector $\begin{pmatrix} b \\ d \end{pmatrix}$ and maps the point A with position vector $\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$ onto A' with position vector $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix}$. Writing $\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$ as $x\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + y\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$ it follows that $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = x\begin{pmatrix} a \\ c \end{pmatrix} + y\begin{pmatrix} b \\ d \end{pmatrix}$
 i.e. $\begin{cases} x' = xa + yb \\ y' = xc + yd \end{cases}$ or, in matrix form $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$ as required.

The following points should also be noted:

- The associated 2×2 matrix can be determined by examining the images of $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$.
 If $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} a \\ c \end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} b \\ d \end{pmatrix}$, then the transformation matrix is $\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}$.
- Under any linear transformation, the origin $(0, 0)$ maps onto itself.
- Under a translation by the vector $\begin{pmatrix} r \\ s \end{pmatrix}$, the transformation equations are $\begin{cases} x' = x + r \\ y' = y + s \end{cases}$.
 Thus a translation is *not* a linear transformation.

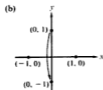
Example 3

Find the matrices corresponding to each of the following linear transformations,
 (a) a rotation of 90° anticlockwise about the origin, (b) a reflection in the x -axis.



Under this transformation $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$

Thus the required matrix is $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$



Under this transformation $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$

Thus the required matrix is $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$

Example 4

A linear transformation T has matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$. Find (a) the image of the point $(2, 3)$ under T , (b) the coordinates of the point having an image of $(7, 2)$ under T .

If (x', y') is the image of (x, y) then $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$

$$(a) \text{ In this case } (x, y) = (2, 3) \quad \therefore \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \\ = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$$

Thus $(1, 5)$ is the image of the point $(2, 3)$ under T .

$$(b) \text{ In this case } (x', y') = (7, 2) \quad \therefore \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$$

Premultiplying both sides of this equation by the inverse of $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{3} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} \\ \frac{1}{3} \begin{pmatrix} 9 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} \\ \therefore x = 3 \text{ and } y = -1 \end{aligned}$$

Thus $(3, -1)$ is the point having an image of $(7, 2)$ under T .

Example 5

Find the 2×2 matrix that will transform the point $(1, 2)$ to $(3, 3)$ and the point $(-1, 1)$ to $(-3, 3)$.

Let the matrix be $\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Thus } \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} & \text{ and } \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \\ \therefore \begin{matrix} a + 2b = 3 & \dots [1] & -a + b = -3 & \dots [3] \\ c + 2d = 3 & \dots [2] & -c + d = 3 & \dots [4] \end{matrix} \end{aligned}$$

Solving [1] and [3] simultaneously gives $a = 3$, $b = 0$.

Solving [2] and [4] simultaneously gives $c = -1$, $d = 2$.

The required matrix is $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$

The following facts regarding transformation matrices should also be noted:

1. If a matrix T transforms some shape ABC to its image $A'B'C'$, then the inverse matrix T^{-1} maps $A'B'C'$ back onto ABC .

2. If matrix T corresponds to a certain linear transformation, then $\det T$ gives the scale factor for any change of area under the transformation, i.e. if T transforms $ABC \rightarrow A'B'C'$ and $\det T = t$, then $\text{area } A'B'C' = |t| \times \text{area } ABC$.
Thus any matrix with a determinant equal to 1 leaves the area of a shape unchanged. What happens if the determinant is zero, i.e. a singular matrix?

Consider the transformation matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix}$ and the images of various points, say $(1, 3)$, $(2, 5)$ and $(-3, 1)$.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 14 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 12 \\ 24 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Notice that all the images lie on the line $y = 2x$.

To show that all points are mapped onto this line, we consider the general point (x, y) .

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x + 2y \\ 2x + 4y \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\therefore \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x + 2y \\ 2(x + 2y) \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{i.e. all image points lie on the line } y = 2x.$$

Thus a singular matrix maps all points in the plane onto a line.

3. If matrix P transforms (x, y) to (x', y') and matrix Q transforms (x', y') to (x'', y'') , then the single matrix equivalent to P followed by Q [i.e. the matrix that will transform $(x, y) \rightarrow (x'', y'')$ direct] is given by QP .

$$\text{Proof: } \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = P \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{pmatrix} x'' \\ y'' \end{pmatrix} = Q \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\therefore \begin{pmatrix} x'' \\ y'' \end{pmatrix} = QP \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{as required.}$$

Exercise 6B

1. The points $A(3, 2)$, $B(-1, 4)$, $C(2, 5)$ and $D(1, -1)$ are transformed to A' , B' , C' , and D' by the transformation matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 1 & -3 \end{pmatrix}$. Find the coordinates of A' , B' , C' , and D' .
2. Under a certain transformation the image (x', y') of a point (x, y) is obtained by the rule:

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$$

Find (a) the image of the point $(2, 1)$,

(b) the image of the point $(-1, 3)$,

(c) the point with an image of $(1, -6)$,

(d) the point with an image of $(-1, 11)$.

3. Find the 2×2 transformation matrix that will map the point $(-2, 3)$ onto $(-7, 6)$ and $(1, -1)$ onto $(3, -1)$.

Find the image of the point $(-1, 3)$ under this linear transformation and the coordinates of the point that has an image of $(6, -2)$.

4. The square $ABCD$ is transformed to $A_1B_1C_1D_1$ by the transformation

matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 5 & -1 \\ -3 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$. If A, B, C and D have coordinates (1, 0), (3, 0),

(3, 2) and (1, 2) respectively find (a) the coordinates of $A_1, B_1, C_1,$ and $D_1,$

(b) the area of $A_1B_1C_1D_1,$

(c) the matrix that will transform $A_1B_1C_1D_1$ back to ABCD.

5. Find the 2×2 transformation matrices P, Q, R and S given that

(a) matrix P represents a reflection in the y -axis,

(b) matrix Q represents a 90° clockwise rotation about the origin,

(c) matrix R represents a reflection in the line $y = x,$

(d) matrix S transforms the point (2, -3) to (4, 14) and the point (1, 3) to (11, -2).

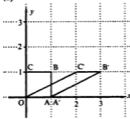
Use your answers to (a), (b) and (c) to show that a reflection in the y -axis followed by a 90° clockwise rotation about the origin is equivalent to a reflection in the line $y = x.$

6. The linear transformations shown below are shears transforming OABC to $OA'B'C'$. For each transformation, write down

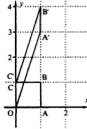
(i) the associated 2×2 matrix,

(ii) the equations of the transformation in the form $x' = ax + by$
 $y' = cx + dy.$

(a)



(b)



7. A 1st shape is transformed to a 2nd shape by the transformation matrix

$\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 4 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$ and a 3rd shape is obtained from the 2nd shape by the

transformation matrix $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 5 \\ -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$. Find the single matrix that would

transform the 1st shape to the 3rd shape direct. If the 1st shape has an area of 5 sq. units, find the areas of the 2nd and 3rd shapes.

8. Find the matrices corresponding to the following linear transformations.

(a) 180° rotation about the origin,

(b) enlargement scale factor 3, centre (0, 0),

(c) reflection in the line $y = -x,$

(d) stretch ($\times 2$) parallel to the y -axis, x -axis fixed,

(e) shear with x -axis fixed and $(0, 1) \rightarrow (1, 1),$

(f) shear with $y = x$ fixed and $(1, 0) \rightarrow (0, -1),$

(g) stretch ($\times 3$) perpendicular to $y = -x$ and with $y = -x$ fixed,

(h) shear with $y = x$ fixed and $(0, 2) \rightarrow (4, 6),$

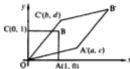
(i) shear with $y = 2x$ fixed and $(0, 4) \rightarrow (-2, 0).$

9. Give a geometrical description of the effect of each of the following transformation matrices.

(a) $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$ (b) $\begin{pmatrix} 5 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 \end{pmatrix}$ (c) $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ (d) $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$ (e) $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$
 (f) $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ (g) $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 3 \\ 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$ (h) $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ (i) $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 4 & 8 \end{pmatrix}$ (j) $\begin{pmatrix} -2 & 3 \\ -3 & 4 \end{pmatrix}$

10. Prove that the transformation matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 6 \\ -2 & -4 \end{pmatrix}$ maps all points of the x - y plane onto a straight line and find the equation of that line.

11. The diagram shows the unit square OABC and, under a certain transformation, its image which is the parallelogram OA'B'C'. If A' and C' have coordinates (a, c) and (b, d) respectively, prove that the area of OA'B'C' is $(ad - bc)$ sq. units.



12. A particular transformation takes any point $A(x, y)$ and first reflects the point in the y -axis and then translates this new point by 2 units in the direction of the positive x -axis and 3 units in the direction of the positive y -axis to give the image point $A'(x', y')$. Represent this transformation in the form

(a) $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \bullet & \bullet \\ \bullet & \bullet \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} \bullet \\ \bullet \end{pmatrix}$ (b) $\begin{matrix} x' = ax + by + c \\ y' = dx + ey + f \end{matrix}$

13. A certain transformation maps a point $A(x, y)$ onto its image $A'(x', y')$ according to the rule:

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 3 \\ -2 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

- Find (a) the image of the point $(2, -1)$,
 (b) the point with an image of $(-7, 6)$,
 (c) the coordinates of the point that is mapped onto itself by the transformation.

6.3 Further considerations

Invariant points

If a transformation maps some point $A(x, y)$ onto itself, then A is said to be an *invariant point* of the transformation.

Example 6

Find any invariant points of the transformations given by

(a) $\begin{matrix} x' = 2y - 3 \\ y' = x + 1 \end{matrix}$ (b) $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}$

- (a) If $A(x, y)$ is an invariant point, then $x = 2y - 3$
 and $y = x + 1$
 Solving simultaneously gives $x = 1$ and $y = 2$

Thus the point $(1, 2)$ is invariant under the transformation $\begin{cases} x' = 2y - 3 \\ y' = x + 1 \end{cases}$

- (b) If $A(x, y)$ is an invariant point, then $\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}$
 i.e. $x = 2x - y + 3$
 and $y = 3x + 4y - 3$
 Solving simultaneously gives $x = -1$ and $y = 2$

Thus the point $(-1, 2)$ is invariant under the transformation $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}$

Transformation of a line

A linear transformation will map the straight line with vector equation $r = a + \lambda b$ onto the straight line with vector equation $r = a' + \lambda b'$, i.e. any point lying on $r = a + \lambda b$ will be transformed to a point on the image line $r = a' + \lambda b'$.

All parallel lines will have image lines that are parallel.

Any line that maps onto itself is said to be an **invariant line** of the transformation. It is important to realise that any line which is invariant under a certain transformation need not necessarily be made up of points that are invariant under the transformation. For example, under a stretch parallel to the x -axis, the x -axis itself is an invariant line (as indeed is any line of the form $y = c$). However on the x -axis, only the point $(0, 0)$ is an invariant point under this transformation.

Example 7

All points on the line $y = 2x - 3$ are transformed by the matrix

$\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 3 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$. Find the equation of the image line.

Any point on the line $y = 2x - 3$ will have coordinates of the form $(k, 2k - 3)$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Thus } \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 3 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} k \\ 2k - 3 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 2k + 2k - 3 \\ 3k - 2k + 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 4k - 3 \\ k + 3 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

i.e. $x' = 4k - 3$ and $y' = k + 3$

Eliminating k from these two equations gives $4y' = x' + 15$. Thus all images (x', y') lie on the line $4y = x + 15$.

The line $4y = x + 15$ is the image of $y = 2x - 3$ under the

transformation $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 3 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$

Alternatively we could take two points on the line $y = 2x - 3$, find the

images of these points under the transformation and then find the equation of the straight line passing through these two image points. The reader should verify that this method does again give the answer $4y = x + 15$.

Example 8

All points on the line $r = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$ are transformed by the matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$. Find the equation of the image line.

Now $r = a + \lambda b$ will map onto $r = a' + \lambda b'$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{In this case } a &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} & \text{and } b &= \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \\ \text{thus } a' &= \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} & b' &= \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} & &= \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

Thus the image line will have vector equation $r = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$

Example 9

Prove that the line $y = 2x - 1$ is mapped onto itself under the transformation $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -1 \\ 4 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$

Any point on the line $y = 2x - 1$ has coordinates of the form $(k, 2k - 1)$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Thus } \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -1 \\ 4 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} k \\ 2k - 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 3k - 2k + 1 \\ 4k - 2k + 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} k + 1 \\ 2k + 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

i.e. $x' = k + 1$ and $y' = 2k + 1$

Eliminating k from these two equations gives $y' = 2x' - 1$. Thus any image point (x', y') lies on the line $y = 2x - 1$, i.e. $y = 2x - 1$ is mapped onto itself as required.

Example 10

Show that the transformation matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ -4 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$ maps all points on the line

$r = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$ onto a single point and find the position vector of this point.

$r = a + \lambda b$ will map onto $r = a' + \lambda b'$

$$\text{In this case } a = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and } b = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{thus } \mathbf{a}' &= \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ -4 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} & \mathbf{b}' &= \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ -4 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} & &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Thus } \mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \text{ maps onto } \mathbf{r} &= \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

The matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ -4 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$ maps all points on the line $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$ onto a single point, position vector $\begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$.

Example 11

Find the equations of any lines that pass through the origin and map onto themselves under the transformation whose matrix is $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{pmatrix}$.

Any straight line passing through the origin has an equation of the form $y = mx$ and any point on the line will have coordinates of the form (k, mk) .

$$\text{Thus } \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} k \\ mk \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3k + 2mk \\ 3k + 4mk \end{pmatrix}$$

Now if $y = mx$ maps onto itself then the point $(3k + 2mk, 3k + 4mk)$ must also lie on $y = mx$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{i.e. } 3k + 4mk &= m(3k + 2mk) \\ \text{giving } 3 + 4m &= 3m + 2m^2 \\ 0 &= 2m^2 - m - 3 \\ 0 &= (2m - 3)(m + 1) \\ \therefore m &= \frac{3}{2} \text{ or } -1. \end{aligned}$$

Thus the required lines are $y = \frac{3}{2}x$ and $y = -x$.

$$\text{Check: } \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} k \\ \frac{3}{2}k \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 6k \\ 9k \end{pmatrix} \text{ which lies on } y = \frac{3}{2}x$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} k \\ -k \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} k \\ -k \end{pmatrix} \text{ which lies on } y = -x$$

Example 12

Find the equations of any straight lines that are invariant under the transformation

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -6 & 3 \\ 4 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Any straight line will be of the form $y = mx + c$ and any point on the line will have coordinates of the form $(k, mk + c)$.

$$\text{Thus } \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -6 & 3 \\ 4 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} k \\ mk + c \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -6k + 3mk + 3c + 4 \\ 4k - 2mk - 2c - 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Now if $y = mx + c$ is invariant, then this point (x', y') must also lie on $y = mx + c$.

$$\text{i.e. } 4k - 2mk - 2c - 1 = m(-6k + 3mk + 3c + 4) + c$$

$$\text{giving } k(4 + 4m - 3m^2) = 3mc + 4m + 3c + 1 \quad \dots [1]$$

This equation must be true for all values of k (i.e. equation [1] is an identity in k).

$$\text{Thus } 4 + 4m - 3m^2 = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad 3mc + 4m + 3c + 1 = 0 \quad \dots [2]$$

$$\text{i.e. } 3m^2 - 4m - 4 = 0$$

$$\text{giving } m = -\frac{1}{3} \quad \text{or} \quad 2$$

From [2], if $m = -\frac{1}{3}$, $c = \frac{1}{3}$ and if $m = 2$, $c = -1$.

This gives the required lines as $y = -\frac{1}{3}x + \frac{1}{3}$ and $y = 2x - 1$.

However we must check this solution:

checking $y = -\frac{1}{3}x + \frac{1}{3}$

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -6 & 3 \\ 4 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} k \\ -\frac{1}{3}k + \frac{1}{3} \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -8k + 9 \\ \frac{1}{3}k - \frac{1}{3} \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{which lies on } y = -\frac{1}{3}x + \frac{1}{3}.$$

Thus $y = -\frac{1}{3}x + \frac{1}{3}$ is invariant under the transformation

checking $y = 2x - 1$

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -6 & 3 \\ 4 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} k \\ 2k - 1 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Thus all points on the line $y = 2x - 1$ are mapped onto the point $(1, 1)$

and so $y = 2x - 1$ is *not* an invariant line

The line $3y + 2x = 5$ is the only invariant line under the transformation.

Note: The above method will not detect invariant lines of the form $x = c$, a constant (i.e. lines parallel to the y -axis). Such invariant lines may exist if the 2×2 matrix involved has a zero in the 'top right' position. The existence of such invariant lines must then be tested for:

$$\text{e.g. } \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 0 \\ 4 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -2x + 6 \\ 4x + y + 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

For all values of y the x -coordinate will be unchanged by this

transformation if $x = -2x + 6$ i.e. $x = 2$.

Thus $x = 2$ would be an invariant line for the transformation.

Eigenvectors and eigenvalues

Example 11 considered invariant lines that passed through the origin. Now under any linear transformation, the origin itself is an invariant point. If point A lies on an invariant line passing through the origin, then its image A' must also lie on this line. The position vectors \overrightarrow{OA} and $\overrightarrow{OA'}$ may be of different magnitudes but *will* be in the same, or exactly opposite directions,

$$\text{i.e. if } \overrightarrow{OA} = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \overrightarrow{OA'} = \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix}$$

it follows that $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \lambda \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$ for λ a positive or negative constant.

The vector $\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$ is called an *eigenvector* for the transformation and λ the corresponding *eigenvalue*.

Now for the transformation with matrix $\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}$, we know that $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$.

Thus if values of x , y and λ can be found such that $\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \lambda \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$, then $\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$ is an eigenvector for the transformation, λ is the associated eigenvalue and the point (x, y) lies on an invariant line passing through the origin.

Furthermore if $\lambda = 1$, then $\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$ and the invariant line consists of invariant points.

Example 13 below is similar to example 11 but the method of solution uses the idea of eigenvectors and eigenvalues.

Example 13

Find the equations of any lines passing through the origin that are mapped onto themselves by the transformation defined by the matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 4 & 1 \\ 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$.

If $A(x, y)$ lies on a line that passes through the origin and that maps onto itself, then the vector $\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$ will be an eigenvector. Thus $\begin{pmatrix} 4 & 1 \\ 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \lambda \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{i.e.} & 4x + y = \lambda x \quad \text{giving} \quad (4 - \lambda)x = -y \\ \text{and} & 3x + 2y = \lambda y \quad \text{giving} \quad 3x = (\lambda - 2)y \\ & \text{dividing:} \quad \frac{4 - \lambda}{3} = \frac{-1}{\lambda - 2} \\ & \text{thus} \quad 0 = (\lambda - 1)(\lambda - 5) \\ & \text{and} \quad \lambda = 1 \text{ or } 5 \end{array}$$

$$\text{With } \lambda = 1, \quad 4x + y = \lambda x \quad \text{becomes} \quad 3x + y = 0$$

$$\text{With } \lambda = 5, \quad 4x + y = \lambda x \quad \text{becomes} \quad y = x$$

Thus any point with position vector given by the eigenvector $\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$ must lie on $3x + y = 0$ or $y = x$, and so these are the required lines.

Notice that the eigenvectors are not unique. In the last example, any point lying on the line $3x + y = 0$ will have a position vector that is an eigenvector with eigenvalue 1,

e.g. $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -6 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$ are all eigenvectors with eigenvalue 1:

$$\begin{pmatrix} 4 & 1 \\ 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix} = 1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 1 \\ 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -6 \end{pmatrix} = 1 \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -6 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 1 \\ 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} = 1 \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Similarly $(1, 1)$, $(3, 3)$ and $(-2, -2)$ all lie on $y = x$ and so the position

vectors $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$ are all eigenvectors with eigenvalue 5:

$$\begin{pmatrix} 4 & 1 \\ 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = 5 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 1 \\ 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} = 5 \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 1 \\ 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} = 5 \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Exercise 6C

1. Find any invariant points of the transformations given by

$$(a) \begin{cases} x' = 3y + 2 \\ y' = 2x - y + 4 \end{cases} \quad (b) \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$(c) \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 4 \\ 2 & -5 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}$$

2. Two transformations **P** and **T** transform the point (x, y) to its image (x', y') according to the following rules:

$$\mathbf{P} \begin{cases} x' = 3x + y \\ y' = x - 1 \end{cases} \quad \mathbf{T} \begin{cases} x' = 2x - y - 3 \\ y' = 1 - x \end{cases}$$

Express the transformations **P**, **T**, **PT** and **TP** in the form

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} * & * \\ * & * \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} * \\ * \end{pmatrix}$$

Find any invariant points under the transformation

(a) **P**, (b) **T**, (c) **PT**, (d) **TP**.

3. Find the equations of the image lines formed when the lines $y = 2x + 1$ and $3y = 2x - 1$ are transformed using the matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ -1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$.

4. Find the equation of the image line produced by translating all of the points on the line $y = 3x - 1$ by the vector $\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$.

5. Find vector equations of the image lines formed when the lines

$$\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } \mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \text{ are transformed using the matrix } \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 2 & -1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

6. Find the 2×2 transformation matrix **T** that maps $(3, -1)$ onto $(13, -7)$ and $(-1, 3)$ onto $(1, 5)$. Find the equations of the lines obtained when **T** is applied to $y = x$, $y + 2x = 3$ and $y = 2x + 3$.

7. The transformation matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 \\ 3 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$ transforms a line **L** to the line $y = 2x + 3$. Find the equation of **L**.

8. Find the vector equation of the line which, when transformed by the matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 4 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$, has an image line $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$.

9. A transformation **T** assigns to any point (x, y) an image (x', y')

$$\text{according to the rule } \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 2 \\ 0 & 5 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix}.$$

(a) Find the equation of the image lines obtained when all points on the lines $y = 2x$ and $y = x - 3$ undergo the transformation **T**.

(b) Prove that the line $y = 3x + 1$ maps onto itself under the transformation **T**.

10. Prove that the transformation matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 4 & -1 \\ -3 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$ maps all points on the line $y = 3x$ onto themselves.

11. Prove that all lines of the form $y = x + a$ are mapped onto themselves

under the transformation given by the matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 \\ 2 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$.

12. Prove that the lines $y = x + 5$ and $y + 3x = 1$ are mapped onto themselves under the transformation that maps (x, y) onto (x', y')

according to the relationship $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 6 & 1 \\ 3 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -9 \end{pmatrix}$.

13. Show that the transformation with matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ -1 & -3 \end{pmatrix}$ maps all points

on the line $r = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$ onto a single point and find the position vector of this point.

14. Show that the transformation with matrix $\begin{pmatrix} -4 & 2 \\ 6 & -3 \end{pmatrix}$ maps all points

on the line $r = 2i + 3j + \lambda(i + 2j)$ onto a single point and find the position vector of this point.

15. Prove that all points on the line $y + 3x + 2 = 0$ are mapped onto a single point under the transformation that maps (x, y) onto (x', y')

according to the relationship $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$ and find the coordinates of this single point.

16. Find the equations of any straight lines that pass through the origin and that map onto themselves under the transformation defined by the matrix

(a) $\begin{pmatrix} -5 & 2 \\ -4 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ (b) $\begin{pmatrix} -3 & 3 \\ 1 & -5 \end{pmatrix}$ (c) $\begin{pmatrix} a & 1 \\ 8 & a \end{pmatrix}$

17. Find the 2×2 matrix that maps $(1, 2)$ onto $(-3, 0)$ and $(-2, -3)$ onto $(2, -1)$. For the transformation defined by this matrix, find the equations of two invariant straight lines passing through the origin.

Which of these two lines is a set of invariant points under the transformation?

18. If $y = 4x$ is mapped onto itself under the transformation $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -1 \\ a & -3 \end{pmatrix}$, find

the value of a and the equation of the other line that passes through the origin and is mapped onto itself by the transformation.

19. Find any straight lines that are invariant under the transformation that maps (x, y) onto (x', y') according to the relationship

(a) $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ -2 & 7 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ -12 \end{pmatrix}$,

(b) $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 8 & 1 \\ 4 & 5 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix}$,

(c) $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 2 \\ 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix}$,

(d) $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ -2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -5 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$,

(e) $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 6 & -3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix}$.

6.4 General reflections and rotations

A general rotation about the origin

The diagram shows the unit square OABC rotated through an angle θ , anticlockwise about the origin, to its image OA'B'C'.

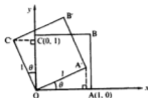
As we can see from the diagram

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta \\ \sin \theta \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} -\sin \theta \\ \cos \theta \end{pmatrix}$$

Thus the matrix representing this

transformation will be $\begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & -\sin \theta \\ \sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix}$.

The determinant of this matrix is $\cos^2 \theta + \sin^2 \theta$, which equals 1, as we would expect for a transformation that has no effect on the area of a shape.



Thus any rotation of the x - y plane about the origin can be represented

by a matrix of the form $\begin{pmatrix} a & -b \\ b & a \end{pmatrix}$ where $a^2 + b^2 = 1$.

A general reflection in a line through the origin

The diagram shows the unit square OABC

reflected in the line $y = mx$, where $m = \tan \theta$, to its image OA'B'C'.

As can be seen from the diagram

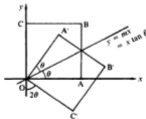
$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} \cos 2\theta \\ \sin 2\theta \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{and} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} \sin 2\theta \\ -\cos 2\theta \end{pmatrix}$$

Thus the matrix representing this

transformation will be $\begin{pmatrix} \cos 2\theta & \sin 2\theta \\ \sin 2\theta & -\cos 2\theta \end{pmatrix}$

Again the determinant is as we would expect for such a transformation.



Thus any reflection of the x - y plane in a straight line passing through the

origin can be represented by a matrix of the form $\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ b & -a \end{pmatrix}$ where $a^2 + b^2 = 1$.

Suppose now that we wish to find the matrix representation of a rotation about some point other than the origin.

Example 14

Find the matrix representing a rotation of 90° anticlockwise about the point A (3, 5).

First take some general point with position vector $\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$.

We now translate the plane so that point A is moved to the origin. Thus our point $\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$ becomes $\begin{pmatrix} x - 3 \\ y - 5 \end{pmatrix}$.

We now rotate the plane 90° anticlockwise about the origin: $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x - 3 \\ y - 5 \end{pmatrix}$

and translate the plane so that point A moves back to (3, 5): $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x - 3 \\ y - 5 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$

Thus if (x, y) has image (x', y') under a 90° anticlockwise rotation about (3, 5).

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x - 3 \\ y - 5 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -y + 5 + 3 \\ x - 3 + 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -y + 8 \\ x + 2 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

Thus a 90° anticlockwise rotation about the point (3, 5) can be defined by

the equations $\begin{matrix} x' = -y + 8 \\ y' = x + 2 \end{matrix}$ or, in matrix form $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$.

Notice that this is simply a rotation of 90° anticlockwise about the origin followed by a translation.

If $\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}$ represents a rotation of angle θ about the origin, then the composite transformation of this rotation followed by a translation $\begin{pmatrix} e \\ f \end{pmatrix}$, i.e. $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} e \\ f \end{pmatrix}$, represents a rotation of angle θ about some other point.

If $\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}$ represents a reflection in some line $y = mx$, then $\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} e \\ f \end{pmatrix}$ will represent either a reflection or a glide reflection in some line parallel to $y = mx$ (as shown in the diagrams on the next page).

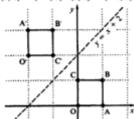
Diagram showing the effect of

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

on the square OABC

$$(0, 0) \rightarrow (-2, 2) \quad (1, 0) \rightarrow (-2, 3)$$

$$(1, 1) \rightarrow (-1, 3) \quad (0, 1) \rightarrow (-1, 2)$$

i.e. a reflection in the line $y = x + 2$.**Example 15**Find the matrix equation representing an enlargement, scale factor 3, centre $(-1, 4)$.First take some general point with position vector $\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$ and let the point $(-1, 4)$ be A.Then translate the plane so that A is moved to the origin, i.e. $\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$ becomes $\begin{pmatrix} x + 1 \\ y - 4 \end{pmatrix}$ Now perform an enlargement, scale factor 3, centre the origin: $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x + 1 \\ y - 4 \end{pmatrix}$ and translate the plane to move A back to $(-1, 4)$:

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x + 1 \\ y - 4 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -8 \end{pmatrix}$$
Example 16Find the matrix equation representing a reflection in the line $y = x + 4$.**METHOD 1** $y = x + 4$ cuts the y -axis at point B $(0, 4)$.Translating B to the origin takes (x, y) to $(x, y - 4)$.Now reflect in the line $y = x$: $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y - 4 \end{pmatrix}$ and translate B back to $(0, 4)$: $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y - 4 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$

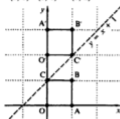
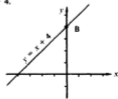
Diagram showing the effect of

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

on the square OABC

$$(0, 0) \rightarrow (0, 2) \quad (1, 0) \rightarrow (0, 3)$$

$$(1, 1) \rightarrow (1, 3) \quad (0, 1) \rightarrow (1, 2)$$

i.e. a glide reflection along the line $y = x + 1$ with $(0, 1) \rightarrow (1, 2)$.

$$\therefore \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y - 4 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{i.e. } \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

METHOD 2

We know that a reflection in the line $y = x + 4$ will be of the form:

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \text{reflection in} \\ y = x \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \text{a translation}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \end{pmatrix}$$

Now under this reflection, any point on $y = x + 4$ must be invariant.

Considering the point $(0, 4)$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \end{pmatrix} \quad \therefore a = -4 \quad \text{and} \quad b = 4$$

Thus the required matrix equation is

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

Example 17

Give a full geometric description of the transformations defined by the following equations.

$$(a) \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$(b) \begin{aligned} x' &= y + 3 \\ y' &= x + 5 \end{aligned}$$

This is a rotation of 90° clockwise about the origin followed by a translation and will be equivalent to a 90° clockwise rotation about some other point (a, b) .

The point (a, b) must be invariant under this rotation.

$$\therefore \begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}$$

giving (a, b) as the point $(2, -5)$

$$\text{In matrix form this is } \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$$

This is a reflection in the line $y = x$ followed by a translation and will be equivalent to a reflection (or glide reflection) in some line $y = x + c$. Thus $y = x + c$ will be an invariant line.

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} k \\ k + c \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} k + c + 3 \\ k + 5 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

Thus $k + 5 = k + c + 3 + c$, i.e. $c = 1$.

Thus $y = x + 1$ is an invariant line with $(k, k + 1) \rightarrow (k + 4, k + 5)$ i.e. a glide reflection in the line $y = x + 1$ with $(0, 1)$ going to $(4, 5)$.

Example 18

Give a geometrical description of the transformation defined by the equations $x' = -2x + 3$
 $y' = -2y + 6$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Writing the equations in matrix form: } \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 0 \\ 0 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$\begin{matrix} \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ 180^\circ \text{ rotation} & & \text{Enlargement} & & \text{Translation.} \\ \text{about origin.} & & (\times 2) \text{ centre the} & & \\ & & \text{origin.} & & \end{matrix}$

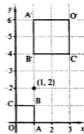
Now a 180° rotation followed by a translation is equivalent to a 180° rotation about some other point. Thus if we can find a point that is invariant under the transformation, this will be the centre of rotation and the centre of the enlargement. If this point is (a, b) then

$$\begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 0 \\ 0 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{giving } a = 1 \text{ and } b = 2.$$

Thus the equations $x' = -2x + 3$
 $y' = -2y + 6$ represent a rotation of 180° about the point $(1, 2)$ and an enlargement, scale factor 2, centre $(1, 2)$.

This result is confirmed by the behaviour of the unit square OABC.

$$\text{under } \begin{cases} x' = -2x + 3 \\ y' = -2y + 6 \end{cases} \quad \begin{matrix} (0, 0) \rightarrow (3, 6) \\ (1, 0) \rightarrow (1, 6) \\ (1, 1) \rightarrow (1, 4) \\ (0, 1) \rightarrow (3, 4) \end{matrix}$$

**Exercise 6D**

- Find the matrices which represent the following linear transformations.
 - a rotation of 30° anticlockwise about the origin,
 - a rotation of 45° anticlockwise about the origin,
 - a rotation of 120° anticlockwise about the origin.
- Find the matrices which represent the following linear transformations,
 - a reflection in the line $y = \sqrt{3}x$,
 - a reflection in the line $\sqrt{3}y = x$,
 - a reflection in the line $y = 2x$.
- Give a geometrical description of the transformations corresponding to the following matrices
 - $\begin{pmatrix} \frac{2}{3} & -\frac{1}{3} \\ \frac{1}{3} & \frac{2}{3} \end{pmatrix}$
 - $\begin{pmatrix} \frac{2}{3} & \frac{1}{3} \\ \frac{1}{3} & -\frac{2}{3} \end{pmatrix}$
 - $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -4 \\ 4 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$
- Find the matrix equations representing each of the following transformations,
 - a rotation of 90° anticlockwise about the point $(-1, 4)$,
 - a rotation of 180° about the point $(3, -1)$,

- (c) an enlargement, scale factor 3, centre $(2, -1)$,
 (d) a reflection in the line $y = x + 5$,
 (e) a glide reflection in the line $y = x + 5$ with the point $(0, 5)$ mapped onto $(3, 8)$.
5. Find equations of the form $\begin{matrix} x' = ax + by + c \\ y' = dx + ey + f \end{matrix}$ for each of the following transformations.
- (a) a rotation of 90° anticlockwise about the point $(1, -1)$,
 (b) an enlargement, scale factor 2, centre $(-1, 3)$,
 (c) a rotation of 90° clockwise about the point $(4, -1)$,
 (d) a reflection in the line $y + x = 3$,
 (e) a glide reflection in the line $y + x = 3$ such that $(0, 3)$ maps onto $(3, 0)$.
6. Use the fact that a clockwise rotation of the x - y plane about the origin through an angle θ can be represented by a matrix of the form $\begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & -\sin \theta \\ \sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix}$ to obtain the standard trigonometric identities $\sin(\theta + \alpha) = \sin \theta \cos \alpha + \cos \theta \sin \alpha$ and $\cos(\theta + \alpha) = \cos \theta \cos \alpha - \sin \theta \sin \alpha$.
7. Give a full geometric description of the *single* transformation defined by each of the following. For part (g) give your answers as a combination of *two* transformations.
- (a) $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix}$ (b) $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}$
 (c) $\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -6 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$ (d) $\begin{matrix} x' = 5x - 4 \\ y' = 5y - 16 \end{matrix}$
 (e) $\begin{matrix} x' = 2 - x \\ y' = -y - 3 \end{matrix}$ (f) $\begin{matrix} x' = y + 3 \\ y' = -x - 4 \end{matrix}$ (g) $\begin{matrix} x' = -3y + 8 \\ y' = 3x + 1 \end{matrix}$
8. The transformation **T** maps the point (x, y) onto (x', y') according to the equations $x' = -2y - 1$ and $y' = -2x + 4$.
- (a) Find the coordinates of the point in the x - y plane that is invariant under **T**.
 (b) Find the equations of the two lines that are mapped onto themselves under **T**.
 (c) Give a geometric description of the effect of **T**.

Exercise 6E Examination questions

1. If $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & a & b \\ 1 & 0 & -3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ b \end{pmatrix}$, find the values of a and b . (S.U.J.B.)
2. (a) Arrange the matrices $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 & 3 & 4 \\ 1 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$ so that they are conformable for multiplication and evaluate their product.
- (b) Find the inverse of $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 4 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$ and hence find matrices **A** and **B** such that
- (i) $\mathbf{A} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 4 & 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 10 & 6 \\ 10 & 7 \end{pmatrix}$, and (ii) $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 4 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 10 & 6 \\ 10 & 7 \end{pmatrix}$.

(Cambridge)

3. (a) Given that $A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 4 \end{pmatrix}$ find (i) $A - 3I$, (ii) $A - 2I$, (iii) $A^2 - 5A + 6I$.

(b) Evaluate all possible products of the matrix A , where $A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$ with one of the

matrices B, C, D, E where $B = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$, $C = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$, $D = (3 \ 1)$, $E = (1 \ 2 \ 1)$.

(Cambridge)

4. (a) Find the value of k for which the simultaneous equations

$$\begin{aligned} 2x - ky &= 2, \\ 3x + (k + 1)y &= 4, \end{aligned}$$

have no solution.

- (b) Given that $A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 & -2 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 2 & 2 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$, evaluate AB .

Hence solve the simultaneous equations

$$\begin{aligned} 3x + y + 2z &= 11, \\ 3x + 2y + 2z &= 10, \\ x + z &= 5. \end{aligned}$$

(Cambridge)

5. (a) By means of a matrix method solve the simultaneous equations

$$\begin{aligned} 3x - 2y &= -3 \\ 4x - y &= 7 \end{aligned}$$

- (b) Given that $A \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} = 7 \begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{pmatrix}$ and that $\begin{aligned} x &= -2p - 3q + 8r \\ y &= p + 5q - 4r \\ z &= 3p + q - 5r \end{aligned}$ find A^{-1} .

(Cambridge)

6. Write down

- (i) the matrix A which represents reflection in the x -axis,
 (ii) the matrix B which represents reflection in the line $y = x$,
 (iii) the matrix C which represents rotation through 180° about the origin.

Using matrix methods, find

- (iv) the image of the point $(5, 2)$ after reflection in the x -axis followed by rotation through 180° about the origin,
 (v) the point whose image is $(6, -4)$ after reflection in the line $y = x$.

(Cambridge)

7. By using a diagram on graph paper, or otherwise, find the images of the points $(1, 2)$ and $(2, -1)$ when they are reflected in the line $y = 2x$. Use your results to find the 2×2 matrix R which carries out this reflection, and evaluate R^2 .

After this reflection a quarter-turn is made clockwise about the origin.

Write down the matrix which represents the quarter-turn, and hence find the matrix which represents the combined transformation. (Oxford)

8. Write down the matrices M_x , M_y and R which carry out a reflection in the x -axis, a reflection in the y -axis and a half-turn about the origin respectively.

$T_x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$ and $T_y = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix}$ are translations parallel to the coordinate axes. P is the point (a, b) .

Find the coordinates of P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4, P_5 which are the images of P under the following five operations:

- (i) T_x followed by M_x , (ii) T_x followed by M_y , (iii) R followed by T_x ,
(iv) R followed by M_x , (v) M_x followed by M_y followed by R .

For each of the five cases find all values of a and b such that P coincides with its image. (Oxford)

9. (i) Calculate the inverse M^{-1} of the matrix $M = \begin{pmatrix} x & x-1 \\ y & y \end{pmatrix}$, where $y \neq 0$.

Find the values of x and y such that (a) $M^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$; (b) $M \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$.

- (ii) The lines $y = x$ and $x + y = 2$ are transformed by the transformation

$$\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Calculate the equations of their image lines. (Oxford)

10. Find the matrix of the transformation T which maps $(1, 3)$ and $(2, 1)$ onto $(5, 11)$ and $(5, 7)$ respectively.

Show that the line $y + x = 0$ is mapped onto itself by T , and find the equation of the other line through the origin that is mapped onto itself.

(Cambridge)

11. Find the matrix of

- (i) the transformation P that represents enlargement by scale factor 3,
(ii) the transformation Q that represents reflection in the line $y = x$,
(iii) the transformation R that represents an anticlockwise rotation of θ about the origin where $\tan \theta = \frac{1}{2}$.

Hence find

- (iv) the matrix of the transformation T that represents P followed by Q followed by R ,

- (v) the image of $(15, 5)$ under T .

(Cambridge)

12. The matrices A, B, C of the single transformations A, B, C are

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}, B = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, C = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \\ \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}.$$

- (i) Give a geometrical description of each of A, B and C .
(ii) Find the smallest values of m and n for which $B^m = C^n = I$.
(iii) Give a geometrical description of the inverse of each transformation.

(Cambridge)

13. A reflection M in the x -axis is followed by a transformation R which is carried out by the matrix $\begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3} \\ \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3} & \frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}$. Write down the matrix

which carries out the reflection M and find the single matrix which carries out the combined operation RM . Show that points of the line $y = x/\sqrt{3}$ are mapped on to themselves by RM . Describe the transformation R .

Describe also the single transformation which has the same effect as RM .
(Oxford)

14. Let $M = \begin{pmatrix} 7 & -9 \\ 4 & -5 \end{pmatrix}$, let $\mathbf{p} = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$ be the position vector of a point P , and let P' be the point with position vector $M\mathbf{p}$.

Prove that the direction of $\overline{PP'}$ is constant, and find a fixed vector in this direction.

Let $\mathbf{q} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}$ be the position vector of a point Q and let Q' be the point with position vector $M\mathbf{q}$. Prove that $\overline{OQ'}$ is perpendicular to $\overline{PP'}$, where O is the origin.

Calculate the tangent of the angle QOQ' .
(Oxford)

15. Let $P = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\ \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}$. Verify that $P^2 = P$.

Let $\mathbf{r} = \begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \end{pmatrix}$ be the position vector of a point A with respect to the origin O , and let A' be the point with position vector $P\mathbf{r}$.
Prove that

(i) the vector $\overline{AA'}$ is a multiple of $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$; (ii) $OA'^2 + A'A^2 = OA^2$.

Prove also that A' lies on a line of the form $y = cx$, where c is a constant whose value is to be found.
(Oxford)

16. A reflection in the line $y = x - 1$ is followed by an anticlockwise rotation of 90° about the point $(-1, 1)$. Show that the resultant transformation has an invariant line, and give the equation of this line. Describe the resultant transformation in relation to this line. (Oxford)
17. Find the invariant points of the transformation T_1 of the plane, given by

$$\begin{aligned} x' &= -2y + 1, \\ y' &= 2x - 3, \end{aligned}$$

and give a full geometrical description of T_1 .

Express in a similar form the transformation T_2 , which consists of a reflection in the line $x + y = 1$. Express also in a similar form the transformation T_3 , which consists of T_1 followed by T_2 . Show that T_3 may be expressed as a reflection in the line $x = \frac{1}{2}$ followed by an enlargement, and give the centre and scale factor of this enlargement.

(Oxford)

18. The eigenvalues of the matrix

$$\mathbf{T} = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \quad (b > 0, c \geq 0)$$

are equal. Prove that $a = d$ and $c = 0$.

If \mathbf{T} maps the point $(-2, 1)$ into the point $(1, 2)$, prove that

$$\mathbf{T} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 5 \\ 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix},$$

and find the image of the line $y + 2x = 0$ under \mathbf{T} .

(Oxford)

7

Permutations and combinations

7.1 Successive operations

If there are 3 paths joining A to B and 4 paths joining B to C, then there are (3×4) or 12 different ways of going from A, through B, to C.



If there are 2 paths joining C to D then there are $(3 \times 4 \times 2)$ or 24 ways of going from A, through B and C, to D.

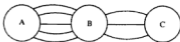
This idea can be extended indefinitely so that in general:

If there are r ways of performing one operation, s ways of performing a second operation, t ways of performing a third operation and so on, then there are $(r \times s \times t \times \dots)$ different ways of performing the operations in succession.

Note that this multiplication rule only applies when the operations are independent, i.e. the choice made for one operation does not affect the choice made for any of the other operations.

Example 1

There are 5 roads joining A to B and 3 roads joining B to C. Find how many different routes there are from A to C via B.



There are two operations to perform in succession:

A to B 5 ways

B to C 3 ways

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Number of routes from A to C} &= 5 \times 3 \\ &= 15\end{aligned}$$

Example 2

A man has three choices of the way in which he travels to work; he can walk, go by car or go by train. In how many different ways can he arrange

his travel for the 5 working days in the week?

On Monday he has 3 choices: walk, car or train.

On Tuesday he has 3 choices: walk, car or train.

Similarly on each of Wednesday, Thursday and Friday he has 3 choices.

Hence there are 5 successive operations, each of which can be performed in 3 ways.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Total number of arrangements} &= 3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3 \\ &= 3^5 \text{ (or 243) ways.}\end{aligned}$$

7.2 Permutations

Consider the three letters A, B and C. If these letters are written in a row, one after another, there are six different possible arrangements:

ABC ACB BAC BCA CAB CBA

Each arrangement is a possible *permutation* of the letters A, B and C and so there are six permutations altogether.

The following reasoning shows how to calculate the number of permutations without having to list them all:

The first letter to be written down can be chosen in 3 ways. The second letter can then be chosen in 2 ways and the remaining letter is written down in the third position. Thus the three operations can be performed in $(3 \times 2 \times 1)$ or 6 ways.

This can be stated in general terms as follows:

The number of ways of arranging n different things in a row is $n(n-1)(n-2) \dots \times 2 \times 1$. A useful shorthand way of writing this expression is $n!$ (read as n factorial).

Thus $4! = 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1$, $5! = 5 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1$ and so on.

Example 3

Evaluate (a) $\frac{6!}{2 \times 4!}$, (b) $\frac{7!}{4! \times 2!}$.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{(a)} \quad \frac{6!}{2 \times 4!} &= \frac{6 \times 5 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1}{(2) \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1} \\ &= 15.\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{(b)} \quad \frac{7!}{4! \times 2!} &= \frac{7 \times 6 \times 5 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1}{4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 \times (2 \times 1)} \\ &= 105.\end{aligned}$$

Example 4

Five children are to be seated on a bench. Find (a) how many ways the children can be seated, (b) how many arrangements are possible if the youngest child is to sit at the left-hand end of the bench.

(a) Since there are 5 children, the child to sit at the left-hand end can be chosen in 5 ways.

• • • • •
5 4 3 2 1

The child to be seated next can be chosen in 4 ways, the next child can be chosen in 3 ways, and so on.

There are 5 operations and the total number of arrangements is

$$5 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 = 5! \text{ or 120 ways.}$$

- (b) If the youngest child is to sit at the left-hand end, this place can be filled in 1 way only.

The next child can then be chosen in 4 ways, the next in 3 ways and so on.

There are 5 operations and the total number of arrangements is

$$1 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 = 1 \times 4! \text{ or } 24 \text{ ways.}$$

$$\begin{array}{cccccc} \bullet & \bullet & \bullet & \bullet & \bullet \\ 1 & 4 & 3 & 2 & 1 \end{array}$$

Example 5

Three different mathematics books and five other different books are to be arranged on a bookshelf. Find (a) the number of possible arrangements of the books, (b) the number of possible arrangements if the three mathematics books must be kept together.

- (a) Since there are 8 books altogether, the one to be placed at the left-hand end can be chosen in 8 ways, the next book can be chosen in 7 ways, and so on.

There are 8 operations and the total number of arrangements is

$$8 \times 7 \times 6 \times 5 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 = 8! \text{ or } 40320 \text{ ways.}$$

- (b) Since the 3 mathematics books are to be together, consider these bound together as one book. There are now 6 books to be arranged and this can be performed in $6 \times 5 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 = 6! = 720$ ways.

Now in each of these arrangements the 3 mathematics books are bound together; these mathematics books can be arranged in $3 \times 2 \times 1 = 3!$ ways
 $\qquad\qquad\qquad = 6$ ways.

Total number of arrangements = 720×6 or 4320 ways.

Circular arrangements

In Example 4(a), we saw that five children can be arranged in a row in 5! ways. Suppose, instead, that we wished to arrange the children around a circular table. The number of possible arrangements will no longer be 5! because there is now no distinction between certain arrangements that were distinct when written in a row.

For example, A B C D E is a different arrangement from E A B C D,



is not a different arrangement from



With circular arrangements of this type, it is the relative positions of the items being arranged which is important. One item can therefore be fixed and the remaining items arranged around it. The number of arrangements of n unlike things in a circle will therefore be $(n - 1)!$ In those cases where clockwise and anticlockwise arrangements are not considered to be different, this reduces to $\frac{1}{2}(n - 1)!$ (See Example 7).

Example 6

Four men Peters, Rogers, Smith and Thomas are to be seated at a circular table. In how many ways can this be done?

Suppose Peters is seated at some particular place.

The seat on his left can be filled in 3 ways, i.e. by Rogers, by Smith or by Thomas. The next seat on his left can then be filled in 2 ways and the remaining seat in 1 way, i.e. by the remaining man.

Total number of arrangements = $3 \times 2 \times 1 = 3!$ or 6 ways.

Example 7

Nine beads, all of different colours are to be arranged on a circular wire. Two arrangements are *not* considered to be different if they appear the same when the ring is turned over. How many different arrangements are possible?

When the ring is turned over, the arrangement



would appear as



When viewed from one side, these arrangements are only different in that one is a clockwise arrangement and the other is anticlockwise. If one bead is fixed, there are $(9 - 1)!$ ways of arranging the remaining beads relative to the fixed one, i.e. $8!$ ways. But half of these arrangements will appear the same as the other half when the ring is turned over, because for every clockwise arrangement there is a similar anticlockwise arrangement. Hence,

number of arrangements is $\frac{1}{2}(8!) = 20\,160$ ways.

Mutually exclusive situations

When two situations A and B are mutually exclusive then, if situation A occurs, situation B cannot occur. Likewise, if situation B occurs, situation A cannot occur.

In such cases, the number of permutations of either situation A or situation B occurring can be obtained by adding the number of permutations of situation A to the number of permutations of situation B.

Example 8

How many different four-digit numbers can be formed from the figures 3, 4, 5, 6 if each figure is used only once in each number?

How many of these numbers (a) end in a 4, (b) end in a 3, (c) end in a 3 or a 4?

The first digit can be chosen in 4 ways, the second in 3 ways, and so on. Thus there are $4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 = 24$ different four-digit numbers that can be formed.

(a) The last digit can be chosen in 1 way as it must be a 4; the first digit can be chosen in 3 ways, the second in 2 ways and the third in 1 way. Thus there are $1 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 = 6$ of the numbers that end in a 4.

(b) By reasoning similar to that used in (a), there will be $1 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 = 6$ of the numbers that end in a 3.

(c) The numbers that end in a 3 cannot also end in a 4, so these are mutually exclusive situations. Thus $6 + 6 = 12$ of the numbers end either in a 3 or a 4.

Alternatively (c) could be solved as follows.

The last digit can be chosen in 2 ways (a 3 or a 4); the first digit can then be chosen in 3 ways, the second in 2 ways and the third in 1 way, i.e. $2 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 = 12$ of the numbers end in a 3 or 4.

The permutations in which a certain event A does occur will clearly be mutually exclusive with those permutations in which that event does *not* occur.

Thus:

$$\begin{aligned} \left(\begin{array}{l} \text{number of permutations in} \\ \text{which event A does occur} \end{array} \right) + \left(\begin{array}{l} \text{number of permutations in} \\ \text{which event A does not occur} \end{array} \right) &= \left(\begin{array}{l} \text{number of permutations in which} \\ \text{event A either does or does not occur} \end{array} \right) \\ &= \left(\begin{array}{l} \text{total number of} \\ \text{permutations} \end{array} \right) \end{aligned}$$

which can be arranged thus

$$\left(\begin{array}{l} \text{number of permutations in} \\ \text{which event A does not occur} \end{array} \right) = (\text{total number of permutations}) - \left(\begin{array}{l} \text{number of permutations in} \\ \text{which event A does occur} \end{array} \right)$$

Example 9

In how many ways can five people, Smith, Jones, Clark, Brown and White, be arranged around a circular table if

(a) Smith must sit next to Brown, (b) Smith must *not* sit next to Brown?

(a) Since Smith and Brown must sit next to each other, consider these two bound together as one person. There are now 4 people to seat. Fix one of these, and then the remaining 3 can be seated in $3 \times 2 \times 1 = 6$ ways relative to the one that was fixed.

In each of these arrangements, Brown and Smith are seated together in a particular way. Brown and Smith could now change seats giving another 6 ways of arranging the 5 people.

Total number of arrangements = $2 \times 6 = 12$ ways.

(b) If Smith is not to sit next to Brown, then this situation is mutually exclusive with the situation in (a).

Hence

$$\left(\begin{array}{l} \text{number of permutations in which} \\ \text{Smith does not sit next to Brown} \end{array} \right) = \left(\begin{array}{l} \text{total number} \\ \text{of permutations} \end{array} \right) - \left(\begin{array}{l} \text{number of permutations in which} \\ \text{Smith does sit next to Brown} \end{array} \right)$$

Total number of arrangements of 5 people at a circular table = $(5 - 1)!$
 $= 4!$
 Required number of arrangements = $4! - 12$
 $= 24 - 12 = 12$
 Number of arrangements in which Smith does not sit next to Brown is 12.

Exercise 7A

- Evaluate (a) $\frac{8!}{6!}$ (b) $\frac{9!}{3 \times 5!}$ (c) $6! - 5!$ (d) $\frac{5! \times 4!}{6!}$.
- Express the following in terms of 5!
 - $\frac{6!}{6}$
 - $\frac{6!}{2!}$
 - $\frac{6!}{3!}$
 - $4!$
 - $6! - 5!$
 - $2 \times 6! - 3 \times 5!$
 - $3 \times 4! + 7 \times 4!$
 - $7! - 6!$
 - $\frac{8! - 6!}{3!}$
- There are three roads joining town X to town Y; three more roads join Y to Z and two roads join Z to A. How many different routes are there from X to A passing through Y and Z?
- In how many ways can a group of ten children be arranged in a line?
- In how many ways can eight different books be arranged on a bookshelf?
- The letters a, b, c and d are to be arranged in a row with each letter being used once and once only. In how many ways can this be done?
- The front doors of five houses in a terrace are to be painted blue, brown, black, green and red. In how many different ways can the painting be done if no two doors are to be the same colour?
- How many different four-digit numbers can be formed from the digits 5, 7, 8 and 9 if each digit is used once only in each number? If repetitions of the digits were allowed, how many arrangements would be possible?
- With his breakfast a man sometimes has tea, sometimes coffee and sometimes fruit juice, but never more than one of these on any one day. Find the number of possible arrangements he can have in a period of 4 days if (a) he always has a drink of some sort,
 (b) he may choose not to have a drink on certain days.
- In how many different ways can the letters of the word THURSDAY be arranged?
- The letters of the word TUESDAY are arranged in a line, each arrangement ending with the letter S. How many different arrangements are possible? How many of these arrangements also start with the letter D?
- In how many ways can five women be seated at a circular table?
- How many numbers greater than 50 000 can be formed using the digits 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6 if each digit is used only once in each number?
- How many numbers greater than 40 000 can be formed using the digits 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6 if each digit is used only once in each number?
- How many odd numbers greater than 60 000 can be formed using the digits 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6 if each digit is used only once in each number?
- Three boys and five girls are to be seated on a bench so that the youngest boy and the youngest girl sit next to each other. In how many ways can this be done?
- There are nine different books on a shelf, one of which is a dictionary and one an atlas. In how many ways can the books be arranged on the shelf if the dictionary and the atlas are to be next to each other?

18. On a bookshelf I have a four-volume encyclopaedia and ten other books that are all different. In how many ways can the fourteen books be arranged on the shelf if the four volumes of the encyclopaedia
- need not be kept together,
 - must be kept together and must be in the order 1, 2, 3, 4; (the reverse order is not acceptable),
 - must be kept together, but not in any particular order?
19. Seven boys are to be seated on a bench so that the oldest boy and the youngest boy sit next to each other. In how many ways can the boys be seated? If, instead, the boys were seated around a circular table, with the same restriction as on the bench, how many arrangements would be possible?
20. In how many different ways can eight differently coloured beads be arranged on a ring if a particular order arranged clockwise is not considered different from the same order arranged anticlockwise?
21. In how many ways can six boys and two girls be arranged in a line if the two girls must not sit together?
22. How many even numbers greater than 40 000 can be formed using the digits 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6 if each digit is used only once in each number?
23. Mr and Mrs X, Mr A, Mr B and Mr C are to be seated at a circular table. In how many ways can this be done if
- the married couple sit next to each other,
 - the married couple do not sit next to each other?
24. Find the number of ways that Mr and Mrs Smith, Mr and Mrs Brown and Mr and Mrs White can be seated around a circular table.
- Find in how many of these arrangements
- Mr and Mrs Smith sit next to each other,
 - Mr Smith is not sitting next to Mrs Smith,
 - Mrs Smith is sitting between Mr Brown and Mrs Brown.
25. To a meeting involving four companies, each company sends three representatives—the managing director, the chief accountant and the company secretary. In how many ways can the twelve people be arranged around a circular table if the three people from each company sit together, with the managing director between the accountant and the secretary in each case?
26. Sheila, Ann and Harvey are fifth year pupils; Sarah, Jeff and Heather are fourth year pupils; Alan, Rosemary and John are third year pupils. In how many ways can these pupils be arranged in a line if the pupils from each year are kept next to each other?

Permutations of objects selected from a group

In how many ways can we arrange two different letters chosen from the five letters A, B, C, D and E?

The first letter can be chosen in 5 ways and the second letter can be chosen in 4 ways.

Hence there are (5×4) or 20 possible arrangements and these are:

AB AC AD AE BC BD BE CD CE DE
BA CA DA EA CB DB EB DC EC ED

Thus we say there are 20 possible permutations of two letters taken from five different letters.

Suppose we wish to arrange r objects chosen from n unlike objects:

The first object can be chosen in n ways, the second object can be chosen in $(n - 1)$ ways, the third object in $(n - 2)$ ways and so on until the r th item which can be chosen in $(n - r + 1)$ ways.

Thus the number of permutations of r objects chosen from n unlike objects is

$$\begin{aligned} & n(n-1)(n-2)(n-3) \dots (n-r+1) \\ = & \frac{n(n-1)(n-2)(n-3) \dots (n-r+1)(n-r)(n-r-1) \dots 2 \times 1}{(n-r)(n-r-1) \dots 2 \times 1} \\ = & \frac{n!}{(n-r)!} \end{aligned}$$

We usually say that the number of permutations of r objects selected from n unlike objects is ${}^n P_r$, where ${}^n P_r = \frac{n!}{(n-r)!}$.

Thus in the case of arranging two letters chosen from the five letters A, B,

C, D and E mentioned above, this gives ${}^5 P_2 = \frac{5!}{3!}$
 $= 20$ as required.

Note that we already know that there are $n!$ arrangements of n objects chosen from n objects. Thus ${}^n P_n$ must equal $n!$, i.e. $\frac{n!}{(n-n)!} = n!$ and we therefore define $0!$ as 1.

Example 10

Ten athletes are to take part in a race. In how many different ways can the 1st, 2nd and 3rd places be filled?

1st place can be filled in 10 ways

2nd place can be filled in 9 ways

3rd place can be filled in 8 ways

or, using ${}^n P_r$,

Number of permutations of three things

from ten is ${}^{10} P_3 = \frac{10!}{7!}$

$$\therefore \text{number of permutations of 1st, 2nd and 3rd places} = 10 \times 9 \times 8 = 720 = 720$$

There are 720 ways in which the 1st, 2nd and 3rd places can be filled.

Arrangements of like and unlike things

Suppose the n unlike letters $a_1 a_2 a_3 \dots b_1 b_2 \dots c_1 c_2 \dots$ are arranged in a row, then the number of possible arrangements is $n!$

If we consider these $n!$ arrangements and remove the suffixes from the letters 'a' we shall have written down the same arrangement several times, for example the arrangements

$$\begin{aligned} & a_1 \dots a_3 \dots a_2 \dots \\ & a_2 \dots a_1 \dots a_3 \dots \\ & a_3 \dots a_1 \dots a_2 \dots \end{aligned}$$

will all be the same once the suffixes are removed. Indeed, we shall have repeated this particular arrangement $r!$ times where r is the number of a's. In a similar way we can consider the b's and c's. Hence the number of arrangements of n things, p of one kind, q of another, r of another ... is

$$\frac{n!}{p! q! r! \dots}$$
Example 11

In how many ways can 4 red, 3 yellow and 2 green discs be arranged in a row, if discs of the same colour are indistinguishable?

There are $4 + 3 + 2 = 9$ discs

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \text{the number of arrangements} &= \frac{9!}{4! 3! 2!} \\ &= 1260 \end{aligned}$$

The discs can be arranged in a row in 1260 ways.

Example 12

Find (a) in how many different ways the letters of the word ALGEBRA can be arranged in a row, (b) in how many of these arrangements the two A's are together, (c) in how many of the arrangements the two A's are not together.

(a) There are 7 letters including two A's

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \text{total number of arrangements} &= \frac{7!}{2!} \\ &= 2520 \end{aligned}$$

(b) If the A's are kept together, there are effectively 6 letters to arrange, hence

$$\begin{aligned} \text{number of arrangements} &= 6! \\ &= 720 \end{aligned}$$

(c) Number of arrangements when A's are not together = $2520 - 720$
= 1800

Example 13

How many different arrangements are there of 3 letters chosen from the word COMBINATION?

There are 11 letters including 2 O's, 2 I's and 2 N's.

To find the total number of different arrangements we consider the possible arrangements as four mutually exclusive situations.

(i) Arrangements in which all 3 letters are different.

There are $8 \times 7 \times 6$ (or 8P_3) of these, i.e. 336.

(ii) Arrangements containing two O's and one other letter.

The other letter can be one of seven letters (C, M, B, I, N, A or T) and can appear in any of the three positions (before the two O's, between the two O's, or after the two O's),
i.e. 3×7 or 21 arrangements that have two O's and one other letter.

(iii) Arrangements containing two I's and one other letter.

By the same reasoning as in (ii) there will be 21 arrangements that have two I's and one other letter.

(iv) Arrangements containing two N's and one other letter.

Similarly there will be 21 arrangements that have two N's and one other letter.

Thus the total number of arrangements of three letters chosen from the word COMBINATION will be $336 + 21 + 21 + 21 = 399$.

Exercise 7B

- Find the number of permutations of two different letters taken from the letters A, B, C, D, E and F.
- In how many ways can six books be arranged on a shelf when the books are selected from 10 different books?
- How many code words, each consisting of five different letters, can be formed from the letters A, B, C, D, E, F, G and H?
- How many three-digit numbers, with all three digits different, can be formed from the figures 7, 6, 5, 4, 3 and 2?
- Three-digit numbers are formed from the figures 3, 5, 6 and 7. How many different numbers can be formed if
 - no figure is repeated in a number,
 - repetitions are allowed?
- How many different three-digit even numbers can be formed from the figures 2, 5, 7 and 9 if repetitions
 - are not allowed,
 - are allowed?
- How many numbers greater than 300 can be formed from the figures 4, 3, 2 and 1 if each figure can be used no more than once in each number and all the figures need not be used each time?
- In how many different ways can a first, second and third prize be awarded to a group of 15 pupils if no pupil may win more than one prize?
- A box contains 14 coloured discs which are identical except for their colour. There are 5 red discs, 4 green, 3 blue and 2 yellow. In how many ways can the 14 discs be arranged in a row?
- In how many ways can the letters of the word PARALLEL be arranged in a row?
- In how many ways can the letters of the word PHOTOGRAPH be arranged in a row? How many of these arrangements start and finish with an H?
- (a) In how many ways can the letters of the word GEOMETRY be arranged in a row?
 - In how many of these arrangements are the two E's together?
 - In how many of these arrangements are the two E's not together?
- How many even numbers greater than 300 can be formed from the figures 4, 3, 2 and 1 if each figure can be used no more than once in each number and all the figures do not have to be used each time?
- In how many ways can the letters of the word BANANA be arranged in a row? In how many of these arrangements are the N's separated?
- Ten coloured beads, 4 red, 3 blue, 1 orange, 1 white and 1 green, are to be threaded onto a circular wire. Find the number of ways in which this can be done if beads of the same colour are indistinguishable and a particular order arranged clockwise is not considered different from the same order arranged anticlockwise.

16. Find the number of different three-letter arrangements that can be made from the letters of the word PYTHAGORAS.
17. Find the number of different three-letter arrangements that can be made from the letters of the word COMMON.
18. Find the number of different three-letter arrangements that can be made from the letters of the word ISOSCELES.
How many of these arrangements will contain
 - (a) no E's at all, (b) at least one E,
 - (c) no vowels at all, (d) at least one vowel?
19. In how many ways can the letters of the word PERMUTATION be arranged? In how many of these arrangements are
 - (a) the T's together, (b) the vowels together?
20. In how many ways can the letters of the word ARRANGEMENT be arranged? In how many of these arrangements are
 - (a) the A's together, (b) the vowels together?
21. Find the total number of permutations of four letters selected from the word PERMUTATION.
22. Find the total number of permutations of four letters selected from the word ARRANGEMENT. How many of these permutations contain two R's?

7.3 Combinations

A combination is a selection. In making a selection from a number of items, only the contents of the group selected are important, not the order in which the items are selected.

We saw on page 194 that there were 20 possible *arrangements* of two letters chosen from the letters A, B, C, D and E:

AB AC AD AE BC BD BE CD CE DE
BA CA DA EA CB DB EB DC EC ED

However, the number of *combinations* of two letters chosen from A, B, C, D and E is only 10 because AB and BA are the same combination, as also are AC and CA etc.

Example 15

Find the number of selections of 2 letters which can be made from the three letters a, b and c.

We can in this simple case write out the possible selections:
ab; bc; ca

There are 3 possible selections.

If, in the above example, we considered the number of permutations of the 3 letters taken 2 at a time, there would be

$${}^3P_2 = \frac{3!}{(3-2)!} = 6 \text{ possible arrangements.}$$

We can see that the number of permutations, or arrangements, is twice the number of combinations, or selections, because there are 2 ways of arranging each pair of letters selected.

For the general case, we know from page 195 that the number of arrangements of n things taken r at a time is

$${}^n P_r = \frac{n!}{(n-r)!}$$

But each selection of r things can be arranged in $r!$ ways, so each selection is repeated $r!$ times in the ${}^n P_r$ arrangements, hence

$$\text{number of selections} = \frac{{}^n P_r}{r!} = \frac{n!}{(n-r)! r!}$$

Thus the number of possible combinations of n different objects, taken r at a time, is given by ${}^n C_r$, also written as $\binom{n}{r}$ where ${}^n C_r = \frac{n!}{(n-r)! r!}$.

Example 16

How many selections of 4 letters can be made from the 6 letters a, b, c, d, e and f?

The number of selections is ${}^n C_r$, where r is the number of things selected from a group of n . Hence for this case $n = 6$ and $r = 4$.

$${}^6 C_4 = \frac{6!}{2!4!} = 15$$

There are 15 selections of 4 letters which can be made from the 6 letters.

Example 17

How many different committees, each consisting of 3 boys and 2 girls, can be chosen from 7 boys and 5 girls?

Number of ways of choosing 3 boys from 7 = ${}^7 C_3 = \frac{7!}{4!3!} = 35$

Number of ways of choosing 2 girls from 5 = ${}^5 C_2 = \frac{5!}{3!2!} = 10$

Number of committees which can be chosen = $35 \times 10 = 350$

Note that 35 is multiplied by 10 since the choice of the boys and the choice of the girls are independent operations.

Example 18

(a) Find the number of different selections of 4 letters that can be made from the letters of the word SPHERICAL.

(b) How many of these selections do not contain a vowel?

(a) There are 9 letters, all of which are different.

Number of selections of 4 letters = ${}^9 C_4 = \frac{9!}{5!4!} = 126$

(b) There are 3 vowels in the word SPHERICAL.

Each selection either does or does not contain a vowel.

If the selections are not to contain vowels, the selection of 4 letters must be made from the 6 consonants.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Number of selections of 4 letters, not containing a vowel} &= {}^6C_4 = \frac{6!}{2!4!} \\ &= 15 \end{aligned}$$

The following examples illustrate other techniques which may be used in questions involving selections.

Example 19

(a) Find the number of different selections of 3 letters that can be made from the letters of the word SUCCESSFUL.

(b) How many of these selections contain at least one vowel?

(a) There are 2 C's, 2 U's, 3 S's and 3 other different letters. We must consider all the mutually exclusive selections of 3 letters; these are:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{number of selections containing 3 S's} &= 1 \text{ selection} \\ \text{number of selections containing 2 C's + 1 other letter} &= 1 \times {}^3C_1 = 5 \\ \text{number of selections containing 2 U's + 1 other letter} &= 1 \times {}^3C_1 = 5 \\ \text{number of selections containing 2 S's + 1 other (non S)} &= 1 \times {}^3C_1 = 5 \\ \text{number of selections containing 3 different letters (from 6)} &= {}^6C_3 = 20 \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Total number of selections of 3 letters} = 36$$

(b) Without the vowels, there are 3 S's, 2 C's, 1 F and 1 L.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{As in (a) 3 S's} &= 1 \text{ selection} \\ 2 \text{ C's + 1 other from 3 (S, F, L)} &= 1 \times {}^3C_1 = 3 \\ 2 \text{ S's + 1 other from 3 (C, F, L)} &= 1 \times {}^3C_1 = 3 \\ 3 \text{ different letters from 4 (S, C, F, L)} &= {}^4C_3 = 4 \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Number of selections without any vowels} = 11$$

$$\text{Hence number of selections with at least 1 vowel} = 36 - 11 = 25$$

Example 20

A team of 7 players is to be chosen from a group of 12 players. One of the 7 is then to be elected as captain and another as vice-captain. In how many ways can this be done?

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Number of ways of choosing 7 from 12 is } {}^{12}C_7 &= \frac{12!}{3!7!} \\ &= 792 \end{aligned}$$

In each chosen team there are 7 ways of choosing a captain, and there are 6 ways of choosing a vice-captain

(alternatively we say the captain and vice-captain can be elected in 7P_2 ways).

$$\text{Total number of selections is } 7 \times 6 \times 792 = 33\,264.$$

Example 21

A group consists of 4 boys and 7 girls. In how many ways can a team of five be selected if it is to contain (a) no boys, (b) at least one member of each sex, (c) 2 boys and 3 girls, (d) at least 3 boys?

(a) No boys are selected, so the team is chosen from the 7 girls.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Number of ways of choosing 5 girls from 7 is } {}^7C_5 &= \frac{7!}{2!5!} \\ &= 21. \end{aligned}$$

(b) Considering mutually exclusive groups:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Number of selections with no boys} &= 21 \\ \text{Number of selections with no girls} &= 0 \quad (\text{as there are only 4 boys}) \\ \text{Total number of possible selections} &= {}^{11}C_4 \\ &= 462 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Thus, number of selections with at least one of each sex} &= 462 - 21 \\ &= 441. \end{aligned}$$

(c) 2 boys can be chosen from 4, in ${}^4C_2 = 6$ ways
3 girls can be chosen from 7, in ${}^7C_3 = 35$ ways

These are independent events, so
number of teams with 2 boys and 3 girls $= 6 \times 35 = 210$.

(d) If the team is to have at least 3 boys, then there must be either 3 or 4 boys.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Number of teams with 3 boys and 2 girls} &= {}^4C_3 \times {}^7C_2 = 84 \\ \text{Number of teams with 4 boys and 1 girl} &= {}^4C_4 \times {}^7C_1 = 7 \\ \text{These are mutually exclusive events, so} \\ \text{number of teams with at least 3 boys} &= 84 + 7 = 91. \end{aligned}$$

Example 22

How many permutations are there of the letters of the word PARALLELOGRAM? In how many of these are the A's separated?

The word has 3 A's, 3 L's, 2 R's and 5 other letters.

$$\text{Number of permutations of these 13 letters} = \frac{13!}{3! 3! 2!} = 86\,486\,400$$

$$\text{Number of permutations of the 10 letters (omitting the A's)} = \frac{10!}{3! 2!}$$

The A's have now to be placed in any 3 of the available 11 spaces; the order in which the three spaces are selected is not important, so this can be done in ${}^{11}C_3$ ways.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Thus, number of permutations in which A's are separated} &= {}^{11}C_3 \times \frac{10!}{3! 2!} \\ &= 49\,896\,000. \end{aligned}$$

Exercise 7C

- How many different teams of 7 players can be chosen from 10 girls?
- How many selections of 4 books can be made from 9 different books?
- A gardener has space to plant 3 trees. In how many ways can he make his selection from 5 different trees?
- A boy can choose any 7 stamps from a set of 11 stamps. How many different selections can he make?
- Three pupils are to be promoted from a particular form. If five pupils are under consideration for promotion, in how many ways can the group to be promoted be selected?
- A librarian chooses 16 books from a group of 20 books that need to be rebound. In how many ways can the 16 books be selected?
- How many different hands of three cards can be chosen from a pack of 52 cards?

8. Four boys are to be selected from a group of 10 boys. How many different groups can be selected? If instead 6 boys were chosen, how many groups could be selected?
9. From the numbers 1, 2, 3, 4, ... 15, five odd numbers and three even numbers are to be selected. Find the number of different groups of eight numbers which can be chosen.
10. From a pack of 52 cards, how many different groups of 3 spades can be chosen?
11. A man decides to plant 3 shrubs and 4 trees. In how many ways can he make his selection if he has 5 shrubs and 6 trees from which to choose?
12. How many different groups can be selected from the letters a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i if each group is to include 2 vowels and 3 consonants?
13. A librarian has to make a selection of 5 newspapers and 7 magazines from the 8 newspapers and 9 magazines which are available. In how many ways can she make her selection?
14. (a) Find the number of different selections of 5 letters that can be made from the letters of the word CHEMISTRY.
(b) How many of these selections contain at least one vowel?
15. (a) Find the number of different selections of 2 letters that can be made from the letters of the word METHOD.
(b) How many of these selections contain no consonants?
16. (a) Find the number of different selections of 3 letters that can be made from the letters of the word METHOD.
(b) How many of these selections contain no vowels?
17. (a) Find the number of different selections of 2 letters that can be made from the letters of the word STATISTICS.
(b) How many of these selections contain no vowels?
18. (a) Find the number of different selections of 3 letters that can be made from the letters of the word STATISTICS.
(b) How many of these selections contain no vowels?
(c) How many of these selections contain at least one T?
19. How many different selections of 2 beads can be made from a bag containing ten beads, two of which are red and the other eight are of different colours?
20. A team of 6 players is to be selected from a group of ten with one of the six then being nominated as captain, and another as vice-captain. In how many ways can this be done?
21. A group consists of 5 boys and 8 girls. In how many ways can a team of four be chosen, if the team contains
(a) no girls, (b) no more than one girl, (c) at least two boys?
22. A team of 5 managers is to be selected from a group of ten managers—5 from company A, 3 from company B and 2 from company C. In how many ways can this be done if the team must contain at least one manager from each company?
23. In how many ways may a committee of 5 people be selected from 7 men and 3 women, if it must contain
(a) 3 men and 2 women, (b) 3 women and 2 men, (c) at least 1 woman?
24. In how many ways can a committee of 7 people be selected from 4 men and 6 women if the committee must have at least 4 women on it?

25. A group consists of 5 boys and 8 girls. In how many ways can a team of five be chosen if it is to contain
- (a) no girls, (b) no boys,
 (c) at least one boy, (d) at least one member of each sex?
26. A tennis club has to select 2 mixed double pairs from a group of 5 men and 4 women. In how many ways can this be done?
27. How many permutations are there of the letters of the word AARDVARK? In how many of these permutations are the A's separated?
28. How many permutations are there of the letters of the word VILLIFIED? In how many of these permutations are the I's separated?
29. How many permutations are there of the letters of the word NONILLION? In how many of these permutations are the N's separated?

7.4 Selections of any size from a group

The number of possible selections of any size that can be made from a group of unlike things deserves special consideration.

Example 23

How many different selections can be made from the five letters a, b, c, d, e?

First method

Number of selections of 1 letter = ${}^5C_1 = 5$

Number of selections of 2 letters = ${}^5C_2 = 10$

Number of selections of 3 letters = ${}^5C_3 = 10$

Number of selections of 4 letters = ${}^5C_4 = 5$

Number of selections of 5 letters = ${}^5C_5 = 1$

Total number of possible selections = $5 + 10 + 10 + 5 + 1 = 31$.

With a larger number of objects to select from, the above method is tedious.

Second method

In any given selection, the letter a is either included or not included, i.e. there are 2 ways of dealing with this letter.

Similarly the letter b is either included or not included; again there are 2 ways of dealing with this letter.

Extending this to all five letters, we see there are $2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2$ ways of dealing with the letters, but this includes the case in which none of the letters is included, and this is not a selection.

Thus, number of selections = $2^5 - 1$

= 31 as obtained in method 1.

In general there are $2^r - 1$ selections which can be made from r unlike items.

Group containing repeated items

It may be that the group from which the selections are to be made includes some repeated items. Suppose, for example that a group of letters includes 3 a's. These can be dealt with in 4 ways: either no a's, 1 a, 2 a's or 3 a's are included in a particular selection. The different letters can then be considered as before.

Example 24

How many different selections can be made from the letters of the word OSMOSIS?

There are 3 S's, 2 O's and 2 other different letters.

The S's can be dealt with in 4 ways.

The O's can be dealt with in 3 ways.

The M can be dealt with in 2 ways and the I can be dealt with in 2 ways.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Total number of selections} &= 4 \times 3 \times 2^2 - 1 \\ &= 47 \end{aligned}$$

7.5 Division into groups

We now consider examples in which a number of letters are divided into two or more groups of differing sizes.

Example 25

The letters a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h and i are to be divided into three groups containing 2, 3 and 4 letters respectively. In how many ways can this be done?

The 2 letters for the first group can be chosen in 9C_2 ways

The 3 letters for the second group can then be chosen in 7C_3 ways and the remaining 4 letters form the third group in 1 way

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Thus number of ways} &= {}^9C_2 \times {}^7C_3 \times 1 = \frac{9!}{2!7!} \times \frac{7!}{4!3!} \times 1 \\ &= \frac{9!}{2!3!4!} \\ &= 1260 \end{aligned}$$

In general, the number of ways of dividing $(p + q + r)$ unlike things into three groups containing p , q and r things respectively is

$$\frac{(p + q + r)!}{p! q! r!}.$$

It may be that the groups into which the things are to be divided are not of different sizes.

Example 26

Find the number of ways that 12 people can be arranged into groups if there are to be (a) 2 groups of 6 people, (b) 3 groups of 4 people.

- (a) The first group of 6 people can be selected in ${}^{12}C_6$ ways, but the second group of 6 people is then automatically made up of those not in the first group. So there is only 1 way of selecting the second group.

But these ${}^{12}C_6$ ways will include the case when $a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots, a_6$ are in the first group and a_7, a_8, \dots, a_{12} are in the second group and *vice versa*. So we must divide by the number of ways in which the 2 groups

can be permuted amongst themselves, i.e. $2!$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Number of ways of dividing into two groups of 6} &= \frac{{}^{12}C_6 \times 1}{2!} \\ &= 462 \end{aligned}$$

- (b) The first group of 4 people can be selected in ${}^{12}C_4$ ways.
 The second group of 4 people can then be selected in 8C_4 ways.
 The third group can then be selected in 1 way.
 The 3 groups can be permuted amongst themselves in $3!$ ways,
 thus number of ways of dividing into 3 groups $= \frac{{}^{12}C_4 \times {}^8C_4 \times 1}{3!}$
 $= \frac{12!}{(4!)^3 \times 3!} = 5775.$

Exercise 7D

1. A group of 15 children are to be divided into three groups of 4, 5 and 6 children. In how many ways can this be done?
2. A gardener makes a selection from 7 different shrubs he is shown at a nursery. In how many ways can he make his selection?
3. How many selections can be made from the letters a, b, c, d, e, f?
4. Of 11 girls, 4 are to play tennis and 7 are to play netball. How many ways are there of forming the two groups?
5. How many ways are there of dividing 12 people into three groups containing 2 people, 7 people and 3 people?
6. For a group of 13 people, whilst 3 people are swimming, 4 will be playing tennis and 6 will be spectating. Find in how many ways the 13 people can be organised.
7. A boy has one of each of the following coins: 1p, 2p, 5p, 10p, 20p and 50p. In how many different ways can he make a contribution to a charity?
8. How many different whole numbers are factors of the number $2 \times 3 \times 5 \times 7 \times 11 \times 13$?
9. How many different selections can be made from the letters $a_1, a_2, a_3, a_4, a_5, b, c, d$?
10. In question 9, how many selections are possible if the suffixes are removed from the a's?
11. How many different selections can be made from the letters of the word HEELED?
12. How many different selections can be made from the letters of the word INABILITY?
13. Find how many different selections can be made from the letters of the word POSSESS.
14. Obtain a formula for the number of different selections that can be made of one or more letters taken from n letters, p of one type, q of another and the remainder being different.
15. Find the number of ways that 9 children can be divided into
 - (a) a group of 5 and a group of 4 children,
 - (b) three groups of 3 children.
16. Find in how many ways 11 people can be divided into three groups containing 3, 4 and 4 people.

17. In how many ways can 15 people be divided into three groups of 5 people?
18. A group of 15 boys are to be divided into two teams of 7 and the remaining boy to act as referee. In how many ways can this be done?
19. Find how many different selections can be made from the letters of the word BANANA.

Exercise 7E Examination questions

1. How many different ways are there of selecting an executive committee of three from a general committee of eighteen members? (S.U.J.B.)
2. To mark a cub leader's retirement, ex-cubs were asked to send three photographs for inclusion in a scrapbook to be presented to the leader. How many different ways could an ex-cub who had 13 suitable photographs select 3? (S.U.J.B.)
3. When the scrapbook in question 2 was nearly complete the person compiling it had 9 photographs left but only room to include n of them. He calculated that there were 84 different ways of selecting the n from the 9. Find n , given that it is an even number. (S.U.J.B.)
4. Find how many four digit numbers can be formed from the six digits 2, 3, 5, 7, 8 and 9, without repeating any digit.
Also find how many of these numbers
(a) are less than 7000, (b) are odd. (London)
5. How many different 6 digit numbers greater than 500 000 can be formed by using the digits 1, 5, 7, 7, 7, 8? (Cambridge)
6. An athlete owns six pairs of running shoes. How many different ways are there of selecting
(a) 4 shoes from the 12; (b) 2 left shoes and 2 right shoes; (c) 2 pairs of shoes? (S.U.J.B.)
7. Seven students are eligible for selection to a delegation of four students from a school to attend a conference. Two of them will not attend together but each is prepared to attend in the absence of the other. In how many different ways can the delegation be chosen? (London)
8. Calculate the number of different 7-letter arrangements which can be made with the letters of the word MAXIMUM.
In how many of these do the 4 consonants all appear next to one another? (Cambridge)
9. How many different words of five letters can be formed from 7 different consonants and 4 different vowels if no two consonants or vowels can come together and no repetitions are allowed? How many can be formed if each letter could be repeated any number of times? (S.U.J.B.)
10. Given that a triangle can be formed by joining three non-collinear points, find the number of different triangles that can be formed using the points A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, if ABCDE and EFGHIJKL are two straight lines. (London)

11. Find the number of different permutations of the 8 letters of the word SYLLABUS.
Find the number of different selections of 5 letters which can be made from the letters of the word SYLLABUS. (London)
12. It is given that the number of different ways in which n people can be seated at a round table is $(n - 1)!$.
Two of the n people ($n > 3$) are to be kept separate in the seating arrangement. Find the number of different ways in which this can be done. (Cambridge)
13. I have six balls, three red, one blue, one brown and one green. In how many ways can I arrange them in a line?
In how many of these arrangements will no two red balls come together? (S.U.J.B.)
14. A small holiday hotel advertises for a manager and 7 other members of staff. There are 4 applicants for the position of manager and 10 other people apply for the other jobs at the hotel. Find the number of different ways of selecting a group of people for the 8 jobs.
The hotel has 4 single rooms, 6 double rooms and 5 family rooms. For a particular week, 4 individuals book single rooms, 3 couples book double rooms and 3 families book family rooms. Given that all the rooms are available for that week, find the number of different possible arrangements of bookings amongst the rooms.
One afternoon, 12 guests organise a game requiring 2 teams of 6. Find the number of different ways of selecting the teams.
Given that the 12 guests consist of 6 adults and 6 children and that each team must contain at least 2 adults, find the number of different ways of selecting the teams. (J.M.B.)
15. (a) A book club offers a choice of 20 books of which a member chooses six. Find the number of different ways in which a member may make his choice.
Given that 12 of the 20 books on offer are novels and that the other 8 are biographies, find the number of different ways in which a member chooses 6 so that
(i) he has 3 novels and 3 biographies,
(ii) he has at least 4 biographies.
- (b) A group of 6 boys and 5 girls are to be photographed together. The girls are to sit on 5 chairs placed in a row and the boys are to stand in a line behind them. Find the number of different possible arrangements.
For a second photograph, the boys and girls are to be arranged with 3 boys and 3 girls standing whilst 3 boys and 2 girls are seated on the chairs in front of them, and in each row the boys and girls are to occupy alternate places.
Find the number of different possible arrangements. (J.M.B.)

Series and the binomial theorem

A set of numbers, stated in a definite order, such that each number can be obtained from the previous number according to some rule, is a **sequence**.

Each number of the sequence is called a **term**.

Consider the following 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, ...

1, 4, 9, 16, 25, ...

1, 2, 4, 8, 16, ...

Each of these is a sequence.

The '...' at the end of each sequence show that each one could go on indefinitely, i.e. the sequence is **infinite**. However, if we wished to restrict our attention to a limited number of terms of a sequence, we could write 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, ... 47. The final single full stop shows that the sequence ends when the number 47 is reached. Such a sequence is said to be **finite**.

An expression for the n th term (written u_n) of a sequence is useful since any specific term of the sequence can be obtained from it. The n th term of the sequence 1, 4, 9, 16, 25, ... is n^2 .

Thus, for $n = 1$ we obtain the first term, written $u_1 = 1^2 = 1$

for $n = 2$ we obtain the second term $u_2 = 2^2 = 4$

for $n = 3$ we obtain the third term $u_3 = 3^2 = 9$ etc.

The sum of the terms of a sequence is called a **series**.

Thus $3 + 5 + 7 + 9 + 11 + \dots$

$1 + 4 + 9 + 16 + 25 + \dots$

and $1 + 2 + 4 + 8 + 16 + \dots$ are all examples of series.

8.1 Arithmetic progressions

Consider the series $3 + 5 + 7 + 9 + 11 + \dots$. The first term of the series is 3 and each subsequent term is obtained by adding a constant, 2, to the previous term. We say that the terms progress arithmetically and a series of this type is called an Arithmetic Progression or A.P. In the general case, if the first term is denoted by a and the constant (called the **common difference**) is d , the general arithmetic progression would be:

$$a + (a + d) + (a + 2d) + (a + 3d) + \dots + [a + (n - 1)d] + \dots$$

where $[a + (n - 1)d]$ is the expression for the n th term of the series.

It should be noted that the common difference d may be negative, in which case the terms of the progression would decrease, e.g. 15, 13, 12, 10, ...

Sum of the first n terms of an A.P.

Writing the sum of the first n terms of an A.P. as S_n , it follows that

$$S_n = a + (a + d) + (a + 2d) + \dots + [a + (n - 2)d] + [a + (n - 1)d] \quad [1]$$

Rewriting these terms in the reverse order

$$S_n = [a + (n - 1)d] + [a + (n - 2)d] \dots + (a + d) + a \quad [2]$$

Adding [1] and [3]

$$\begin{aligned} 2S_n &= [2a + (n-1)d] + [2a + (n-1)d] + \dots + [2a + (n-1)d] + [2a + (n-1)d] \\ &= n[2a + (n-1)d] \\ \therefore S_n &= \frac{n}{2}[2a + (n-1)d] \end{aligned}$$

The n th term, $[a + (n-1)d]$, is the last term involved in the sum to n terms. Writing this last term as l , we can write

$$S_n = \frac{n}{2}(a + l) \text{ as an alternative form for } S_n \text{ in which } l = [a + (n-1)d].$$

Summary

For the Arithmetic Progression $a + (a + d) + (a + 2d) + (a + 3d) + \dots$

the n th term is given by $u_n = a + (n-1)d$

the sum to n terms is given by $S_n = \frac{n}{2}[2a + (n-1)d]$ or $\frac{n}{2}(a + l)$

Example 1

Find u_{15} and S_8 of (a) the A.P. $2 + 5 + 8 + 11 + \dots$ (b) the A.P. in which the first term is 37 and the common difference is -4 .

(a) $a = 2$ $d = 5 - 2 = 3$

using $u_n = a + (n-1)d$
 $u_{15} = 2 + (15-1)3$
 $= 44$

using $S_n = \frac{n}{2}[2a + (n-1)d]$

$$S_8 = \frac{8}{2}[2(2) + (8-1)3]$$

$$= 100$$

(b) $a = 37$ $d = -4$

using $u_n = a + (n-1)d$
 $u_{15} = 37 + (15-1)(-4)$
 $= -19$

using $S_n = \frac{n}{2}[2a + (n-1)d]$

$$S_8 = \frac{8}{2}[2(37) + (8-1)(-4)]$$

$$= 184$$

Example 2

Find the sum of the Arithmetical Progression $8.5 + 12 + 15.5 + 19 + \dots + 103$.

The n th term is 103 $\therefore a + (n-1)d = 103$
 but $a = 8.5$ and $d = 3.5$
 $\therefore 8.5 + (n-1)(3.5) = 103$
 giving $n = 28$

using $S_n = \frac{n}{2}(a + l)$

$$S_{28} = \frac{28}{2}(8.5 + 103)$$

$$= 1561$$

or using $S_n = \frac{n}{2}[2a + (n-1)d]$

$$S_{28} = \frac{28}{2}[2(8.5) + (28-1)(3.5)]$$

$$= 1561$$

If sufficient information about a progression is given, it is possible to determine the first term a and the common difference d .

Example 3

The fifth term of an A.P. is 23 and the twelfth term is 37. Find the first term, the common difference and the sum of the first eleven terms.

$$\therefore a + 4d = 23 \quad \dots [1] \qquad \therefore a + 11d = 37 \quad \dots [2]$$

Solving equations [1] and [2] simultaneously gives $a = 15$ and $d = 2$.

$$\text{Using } S_n = \frac{n}{2}[2a + (n-1)d]$$

$$S_{11} = \frac{11}{2}[2(15) + (11-1)2] = 275$$

The first term is 15, the common difference is 2 and the sum of the first 11 terms is 275.

Example 4

In an A.P. $u_{10} = 3$ and $S_6 = 76.5$; find a , d and the smallest value of n such that $S_n < 0$.

$$\text{Using } u_n = a + (n-1)d \qquad \text{Using } S_n = \frac{n}{2}[2a + (n-1)d]$$

$$u_{10} = a + 9d \qquad S_6 = \frac{6}{2}[2a + 5d]$$

$$\text{Thus } 3 = a + 9d \qquad \text{and } 76.5 = 6a + 15d$$

Solving these equations simultaneously gives $a = 16.5$ and $d = -1.5$.

$$\text{Now suppose } S_n = 0 \text{ i.e. } \frac{n}{2}[2a + (n-1)d] = 0$$

$$\text{then } \frac{n}{2}[33 + (n-1)(-1.5)] = 0$$

$$\frac{n}{2}(34.5 - 1.5n) = 0$$

$$\text{or } \frac{3n}{4}(23 - n) = 0$$

Thus for $S_n = 0$, either $n = 0$ (clearly not the required solution in this case) or $n = 23$

Thus for $S_n < 0$ we require $n > 23$.

The first term is 16.5, the common difference is -1.5 and the smallest value of n for which S_n is negative is 24.

Exercise 8A

1. Write down the next two terms in each of the following sequences:

(a) $-8, -5, -2, 1, 4, 7, \dots$ (b) $1, 4, 9, 16, 25, 36, \dots$

(c) $0.1, 0.01, 0.001, 0.0001, \dots$ (d) $\frac{1}{2}, 1\frac{1}{2}, 2\frac{1}{2}, 3, 3\frac{1}{2}, 4\frac{1}{2}, \dots$

2. Write down the first term and the common difference for each of the following A.P.s.

(a) $8 + 11 + 14 + 17 + \dots$ (b) $23 + 25 + 27 + 29 + \dots$

(c) $19 + 16 + 13 + 10 + \dots$ (d) $13\frac{1}{2} + 15 + 16\frac{1}{2} + 18 + \dots$

(e) $-11.5 - 9 - 6.5 - 4 - \dots$ (f) $6\frac{1}{4} + 6\frac{1}{2} + 7\frac{1}{4} + 7\frac{1}{2} + \dots$

(g) $-8 - 7 - 6 - 5 - \dots$ (h) $6 + 3 + 0 - 3 - \dots$

3. Find the number of terms in each of the following A.P.s.

(a) $5 + 8 + 11 + 14 + \dots + 59 + 62$

(b) $1 + 6 + 11 + 16 + \dots + 501 + 506$

(c) $-193 - 189 - 185 - \dots - 21 - 17$

(d) $24 + 24\frac{1}{2} + 25 + \dots + 204 + 204\frac{1}{2}$

4. Find the 18th term of a series that has an n th term given by $(2 + 3n)$.
 5. Find the 31st term of a series that has an n th term given by $\frac{1}{2}(10 + 2n)$.
 6. Find the 50th term of a series that has an n th term given by $\frac{1}{3}(32 - n)$.
 7. Find the 6th and 7th terms of a series that has an n th term given by $(-1)^n(2n + 1)$.
 8. Find an expression for the n th term of each of the following A.P.s. and use your answer to write down the 100th term of each series.

(a) $5 + 8 + 11 + 14 + \dots$

(b) $5 + 2 - 1 - 4 - \dots$

(c) $12\frac{1}{2} + 16 + 19\frac{1}{2} + 23 + \dots$

9. For each of the following A.P.s, state which is the first term to exceed 1000.
 (a) $7 + 12 + 17 + 22 + 27 + \dots$ (b) $-24 - 21.5 - 19 - 16.5 - 14 - \dots$
 10. For each of the following A.P.s, state which is the first term to be negative.
 (a) $843 + 836 + 829 + 822 + \dots$ (b) $56.3 + 55.4 + 54.5 + 53.6 + \dots$

11. State the values of a and d in each of the following A.P.s, and find S_n as indicated.

(a) $2 + 6 + 10 + 14 + \dots, S_{12}$ (b) $10 + 8 + 6 + 4 + \dots, S_{15}$

(c) $4.5 + 6 + 7.5 + 9 + \dots, S_{19}$ (d) $15 + 13 + 11 + 9 + \dots, S_{16}$

(e) $7 + 3 - 1 - 5 - \dots, S_{20}$ (f) $-6\frac{1}{2} - 5 - 3\frac{1}{2} - 2 - \dots, S_{12}$

(g) $-9 - 7 - 5 - 3 - \dots, S_{16}$

12. Find the sum of each of the following A.P.s.

(a) $2 + 4 + 6 + 8 + 10 + \dots + 146$

(b) $100 + 95 + 90 + 85 + 80 + \dots - 20$

(c) $4 + 10 + 16 + 22 + 28 + \dots + 334$

(d) $5\frac{1}{2} + 4\frac{1}{2} + 3\frac{1}{2} + \dots - 3$

13. In an A.P. $u_3 = 8$ and $u_6 = 14$; find a , d and S_{10} .
 14. In an A.P. $u_3 = 7.5$ and $u_{10} = 11$; find a , d and S_8 .
 15. In an A.P. $u_4 = 15$ and $u_6 = 7$; find a , d and S_{12} .
 16. In an A.P. $u_2 = -4$ and $u_7 = 8$; find a , d and S_9 .
 17. In an A.P. $u_2 = -12$ and $S_{12} = 18$; find a , d and u_6 .
 18. In an A.P. $u_2 = -0.5$ and $S_7 = 21$; find a , d and u_9 .
 19. In an A.P. $u_{15} = 7$ and $S_6 = 18$; find a , d and u_{20} .
 20. The sum of the first ten terms of an A.P. is 120 and the sum of the first twenty terms is 840. Find the sum of the first thirty terms.
 21. An A.P. has a common difference d . If the sum to twenty terms is twenty-five times the first term, find in terms of d the sum to thirty terms.
 22. In an A.P. $a = -23$ and $d = 2.5$; find the least value of n such that $S_n > 0$.
 23. In an A.P. $a = -61$ and $d = 4$; find the least value of n such that $S_n > 0$.
 24. An A.P. has first term 10 and common difference 0.25. Find the least number of terms the A.P. can have, given that the sum of the terms exceeds 300.
 25. An A.P. has first term -5 and common difference 1.5. Find the greatest number of terms the A.P. can have, given that the sum of the terms does not exceed 450.

26. The sum to n terms of a particular series is given by $S_n = 17n - 3n^2$.
- Find an expression for the sum to $(n - 1)$ terms,
 - find an expression for the n th term of the series,
 - show that the series is an Arithmetic Progression and find the first term and the common difference.
27. Three consecutive terms of an A.P. have a sum of 36 and a product of 1428. Find the three terms.
28. A particular A.P. has a positive common difference and is such that for any three adjacent terms, three times the sum of their squares exceeds the square of their sum by 37.5. Find the common difference.
29. Find the common difference, the n th term and the sum to n terms of the following A.P.
- $$\log_3 3 + \log_3(3^2) + \log_3(3^3) + \log_3(3^4) + \dots$$
30. Find expressions for the n th term and the sum to n terms of the A.P.
- $$\log_2(ab) + \log_2(ab^2) + \log_2(ab^3) + \log_2(ab^4) + \dots$$

8.2 Geometric progressions

Consider the series $2 + 6 + 18 + 54 + 162 + \dots$

Each term of the series can be obtained by multiplying the previous term by 3.

In the general case, if the first term is denoted by a and the ratio of one term to the previous term is r (called the **common ratio**) the series can then be written

$$a + ar + ar^2 + ar^3 + \dots$$

It follows that the n th term u_n is ar^{n-1} .

A series of this type is called a Geometric Series or Geometric Progression, abbreviated to G.P.

It should be noted that the common ratio r may be positive, negative and/or fractional.

Sum of the first n terms of a G.P.

Writing the sum of the first n terms of a G.P. as S_n , it follows that

$$S_n = a + ar + ar^2 + \dots + ar^{n-2} + ar^{n-1}$$

hence $rS_n = ar + ar^2 + ar^3 + \dots + ar^{n-1} + ar^n$

subtracting

$$S_n - rS_n = a - ar^n$$

or $S_n(1 - r) = a(1 - r^n)$

i.e. $S_n = \frac{a(1 - r^n)}{(1 - r)}$ and this is the formula for the sum to n terms of a G.P. with first term a and common ratio r .

If the common ratio r is greater than 1, it is more convenient to use this

result in the alternative form: $S_n = \frac{a(r^n - 1)}{(r - 1)}$.

Example 5

Find u_5 and S_5 of (a) the G.P. $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} + 3 + \dots$

(b) the G.P. in which $a = 27$ and $r = \frac{1}{3}$.

(a) $a = \frac{1}{3}$ $r = \frac{1}{3} \div \frac{1}{3}$

using $u_n = ar^{n-1}$

$u_5 = \frac{1}{3}(\frac{1}{3})^4$

$\therefore u_5 = 18\frac{1}{3}$

using $S_n = \frac{a(r^n - 1)}{(r - 1)}$

$S_5 = \frac{1}{3} \left[\frac{(\frac{1}{3})^5 - 1}{\frac{1}{3} - 1} \right]$

$\therefore S_5 = 30.93$

Thus $u_5 = 18\frac{1}{3}$ and $S_5 = 30.93$.

(b) $a = 27$ $r = \frac{1}{3}$

using $u_n = ar^{n-1}$

$u_5 = 27(\frac{1}{3})^4$

$\therefore u_5 = 5\frac{1}{3}$

using $S_n = \frac{a(1 - r^n)}{(1 - r)}$

$S_5 = 27 \left[\frac{1 - (\frac{1}{3})^5}{1 - \frac{1}{3}} \right]$

$\therefore S_5 = 70\frac{1}{3}$

Thus $u_5 = 5\frac{1}{3}$ and $S_5 = 70\frac{1}{3}$.**Example 6**A geometric series has first term 27 and common ratio $\frac{1}{3}$. Find the least number of terms the series can have if its sum exceeds 550.

$a = 27$ $r = \frac{1}{3}$

Now suppose that $S_n = 550$ i.e. $\frac{a(r^n - 1)}{r - 1} = 550$

then $27 \frac{(\frac{1}{3})^n - 1}{\frac{1}{3} - 1} = 550$

$(\frac{1}{3})^n - 1 = \frac{550}{27}$

$(\frac{1}{3})^n = \frac{550}{27} + 1$

taking logs $n \log_e(\frac{1}{3}) = \log_e(\frac{550}{27} + 1)$

hence $n = \frac{\log_e(\frac{550}{27} + 1)}{\log_e(\frac{1}{3})} = 7.136$

Thus for $S_n > 550$, we require $n > 7.136$, i.e. $n = 8$.If sufficient information about a geometric progression is given, it is possible to determine the first term a and the common ratio r of the progression.**Example 7**In a G.P. $u_3 = 32$ and $u_6 = 4$; find a , r and the sum of the first eight terms of the G.P.

$u_3 = ar^2 = 32$ and $u_6 = ar^5 = 4$

$\therefore \frac{ar^5}{ar^2} = \frac{4}{32}$ i.e. $r^3 = \frac{1}{8}$ giving $r = \frac{1}{2}$

substituting for r in u_3 gives $a = 128$

using $S_n = \frac{a(1 - r^n)}{1 - r}$

$S_8 = 128 \frac{1 - (\frac{1}{2})^8}{1 - \frac{1}{2}}$
 $= 255$

Thus $a = 128$, $r = \frac{1}{2}$ and the sum of the first eight terms is 255.

Arithmetic mean and geometric mean

If some number x is inserted between a pair of numbers a and b such that a , x , b are in arithmetic progression, then x is said to be the **arithmetic mean** of a and b .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{It follows that } x - a &= b - x \\ \text{or } x &= \frac{a + b}{2}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus for any three consecutive terms of an A.P. the middle term is the arithmetic mean of the other two and is equal to half their sum.

If some number y is inserted between a pair of numbers p and q such that p , y , q are in geometric progression, then y is said to be the **geometric mean** of p and q .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{It follows that } \frac{x}{p} &= \frac{q}{y} \\ \text{or } y &= \sqrt{(pq)} \end{aligned}$$

Thus for any three consecutive terms of a G.P., the middle term is the geometric mean of the other two and is equal to the square root of their product.

Example 8

For the numbers 4 and 9, find (a) the arithmetic mean, (b) the geometric mean.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(a) Arithmetic mean} &= \frac{4 + 9}{2} & \text{(b) Geometric mean} &= \sqrt{(4 \times 9)} \\ &= 6\frac{1}{2} & &= 6 \\ \text{(i.e. 4, } 6\frac{1}{2}, 9 \text{ are in A.P.)} & & \text{(i.e. 4, 6, 9 are in G.P.)} & \end{aligned}$$

Sum to infinity of a G.P.

Consider the infinite geometric progression

$$18 + 1.8 + 0.18 + 0.018 + 0.0018 + 0.00018 + \dots$$

The first term a is 18 and the common ratio r is $\frac{1}{10}$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{For this G.P.} \quad S_2 &= 19.8 \\ S_3 &= 19.98 \\ S_4 &= 19.998 \\ S_5 &= 19.9998 \\ S_6 &= 19.99998 \\ S_7 &= 19.999998 \\ S_8 &= 19.9999998 \end{aligned}$$

Clearly the sum S_n approaches the value 20. By taking a sufficiently large value of n , we can make S_n as near to 20 as we wish, i.e. we can make $(20 - S_n)$ as small as we wish. We say that S_n tends towards a **limiting** value of 20 as n approaches infinity and this is written

$$S_n \rightarrow 20 \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty \text{ or } \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} S_n = 20$$

Consider the general infinite G.P.

$$a + ar + ar^2 + ar^3 + ar^4 + \dots$$

and suppose also that $-1 < r < 1$, i.e. $|r| < 1$.

Now $S_n = \frac{a(1-r^n)}{1-r}$ but with $|r| < 1$, r^n will approximate to zero for large values of n , i.e. $r^n \rightarrow 0$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$.

Thus $S_n \rightarrow \frac{a(1)}{1-r}$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$

or $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} S_n = \frac{a}{1-r}$

The expression $\frac{a}{1-r}$ gives the **sum to infinity** of a geometric series with first term a and common ratio r . It must be remembered that S_∞ only exists for infinite geometric series in which $|r| < 1$. The terms of the series will decrease in magnitude and the series is said to be **convergent**.

When $|r| \geq 1$ we have various possibilities:

if $r > 1$ then, as $n \rightarrow \infty$, $r^n \rightarrow \infty$ and $S_n \rightarrow +\infty$ or $-\infty$ dependent on the sign of a ,

if $r < -1$ then, as $n \rightarrow \infty$, S_n alternates between being large and positive and being large and negative,

if $r = 1$, the series becomes $a + a + a + a + \dots$ and $S_n = na$. Hence, as $n \rightarrow \infty$, $S_n \rightarrow +\infty$ or $-\infty$ dependent on the sign of a ,

if $r = -1$, the series becomes $a - a + a - a + a - \dots$ and $S_n = 0$ for even n , and $S_n = a$ for odd n .

Any series whose sum does not approach some finite limit as $n \rightarrow \infty$ is said to be **divergent**. Thus any geometric series for which $|r| \geq 1$ is divergent.

Example 9

Find the sum to infinity of the geometric series $16 + 12 + 9 + \dots$

$$a = 16, \quad r = \frac{12}{16} = \frac{3}{4}$$

Thus $|r| < 1$; hence the series is convergent and S_∞ will exist.

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore S_\infty &= \frac{a}{1-r} = \frac{16}{1-\frac{3}{4}} \\ &= 64 \end{aligned}$$

The sum to infinity of the series is 64.

Example 10

Express the recurring decimal $0.2\bar{35}$ as a fraction in its lowest terms.

$$\begin{aligned} 0.2\bar{35} &= 0.2353535 \dots = 0.2 + 0.035 + 0.00035 + 0.000035 + \dots \\ &= 0.2 + \text{an infinite geometric series with } a = 0.035 \text{ and } r = \frac{1}{100} \\ &= 0.2 + S_\infty \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{using } S_\infty &= \frac{a}{1-r} \\ S_\infty &= \frac{0.035}{1-\frac{1}{100}} \\ &= \frac{35}{1000} \times \frac{100}{99} = \frac{7}{198} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore 0.2\bar{35} &= 0.2 + \frac{7}{198} \\ &= \frac{1}{5} + \frac{7}{198} = \frac{49}{990}. \end{aligned}$$

Summary

For the geometric series $a + ar + ar^2 + ar^3 + \dots$

the n th term is given by $u_n = ar^{n-1}$,

the sum to n terms is given by $S_n = \frac{a(1-r^n)}{1-r}$ or $S_n = \frac{a(r^n-1)}{r-1}$,

and for $|r| < 1$ the series is convergent with $S_\infty = \frac{a}{1-r}$.

Exercise 8B

- For each of the following G.P.s, state the common ratio and the next two terms:
 - $4 + 20 + 100 + 500 + \dots$
 - $24 + 12 + 6 + \dots$
 - $45 + 15 + 5 + \dots$
- Using the formula $S_n = \frac{a(r^n-1)}{r-1}$, find S_{10} for the G.P. 2, 6, 18, 54, ...
- Using the formula $S_n = \frac{a(1-r^n)}{1-r}$, find S_3 and S_6 for the G.P. 18, -9, $4\frac{1}{2}$, ... and hence deduce the value of u_6 .
- Using the formula $S_n = \frac{a(r^n-1)}{r-1}$, find S_7 for the G.P. in which
 - $a = \frac{1}{2}$ and $r = 4$,
 - $a = \frac{1}{2}$ and $r = -4$.
- Find the value of the common ratio of the G.P. that has third term equal to 6 and eighth term equal to 1458.
- Find the value of the common ratio of the G.P. that has second term equal to 4 and fifth term equal to $-\frac{1}{8}$.
- In a G.P. the seventh term equals 8 and the ninth term equals 18; find the possible values of the common ratio.
- In a G.P. the fourth term equals 6 and the eighth term equals 96; find the possible values of the common ratio and the corresponding values of the first term.
- Find the sum of the first ten terms of a G.P. that has a sixth term of $\frac{3}{4}$ and a seventh term of $1\frac{3}{4}$.
- Find the sum of the first seven terms of a G.P. that has an eighth term of $\frac{1}{2}$ and a fifth term of 18.
- Find the arithmetic mean of each of the following pairs of numbers:
 - 8, 20
 - 5, -1
 - 2, 10
 - 3, 12.
- Find the geometric mean of each of the following pairs of numbers:
 - 4, 16
 - 8, 18
 - $1\frac{1}{2}$, 5
 - $1\frac{1}{2}$, 7.
- The geometric mean of two numbers a and b ($b > a$) is equal to four-fifths of the arithmetic mean of the two numbers. If $a = 6$, find the value of b .
- For each of the following series state whether they are convergent or divergent and, for those that are convergent, find the sum to infinity:
 - $1 + 4 + 7 + 10 + 13 + \dots$
 - $16 + 8 + 4 + 2 + 1 + \dots$
 - $84 - 42 + 21 - 10\frac{1}{2} + 5\frac{1}{2} - \dots$
 - $125 + 25 + 5 + 1 + \dots$
 - $8 + 12 + 18 + 27 + 40\frac{1}{2} + \dots$
 - $64 - 16 + 4 - 1 + \frac{1}{4} - \dots$

15. For each of the following geometric series, find the range of values of x for which the sum to infinity of the series exists:
- (a) $x + x^2 + x^3 + x^4 + \dots$ (b) $1 + \frac{x}{3} + \frac{x^2}{9} + \frac{x^3}{27} + \dots$
- (c) $1 + \frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{x^2} + \frac{1}{x^3} + \dots$ (d) $(x + \frac{1}{2}) + (x + \frac{1}{2})^2 + (x + \frac{1}{2})^3 + \dots$
16. Find the sum to infinity of the G.P. having a second term of -9 and a fifth term of $\frac{1}{3}$.
17. The fourth, eighth and fourteenth terms of an A.P., common difference 0.5 , are in geometric progression. Find the first term of the A.P. and the common ratio of the G.P.
18. The fourth, seventh and sixteenth terms of an A.P. are in geometric progression. If the first six terms of the A.P. have a sum of 12 , find the common difference of the A.P. and the common ratio of the G.P.
19. The third, fifth and seventeenth terms of an A.P. are in geometric progression. Find the common ratio of the G.P.
20. A mathematical child negotiates a new pocket money deal with her unsuspecting father in which she receives $1p$ on the first day of the month, $2p$ on the second day, $4p$ on the third day, $8p$ on the fourth day, $16p$ on the fifth day, ... until the end of the month. How much would the child receive during the course of a month of 30 days? (Give your answer to the nearest million pounds.)
21. Find the common ratio of a G.P. that has a first term of 5 and a sum to infinity of 15 .
22. Find the first term of a G.P. that has a common ratio of $\frac{1}{2}$ and a sum to infinity of 40 .
23. Find the third term of a G.P. that has a common ratio of $-\frac{1}{2}$ and a sum to infinity of 8 .
24. The sum of the first two terms of a G.P. is 9 and the sum to infinity of the G.P. is 25 . If the G.P. has a positive common ratio r , find r and the first term.
25. A geometric series has first term 2 and common ratio $\frac{1}{2}$. Find the greatest number of terms the series can have without its sum exceeding 125 .
26. A geometric series has first term 5 and common ratio 3 . Find the least number of terms the series can have if its sum exceeds 2000 .
27. Express the following recurring decimals as fractions in their lowest terms:
 (a) $0.\dot{7}$ (b) $0.\dot{5}0$ (c) $0.4\dot{5}2$ (d) $0.\dot{3}60$
28. Prove that the arithmetic mean of two different positive numbers exceeds the geometric mean of the same two numbers.

8.3 Summation of other series and proof by induction

The sums of certain finite series can be proved by the method of induction. This method can only be used to prove that a given expression is the required sum because the method does not produce the expression itself. The following example illustrates its use.

Example 11

Prove that the sum of the series $1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + \dots + n^2$

is $\frac{n}{6}(n+1)(2n+1)$.

To prove this result by induction, we proceed as follows.

(a) Show that the result is true for a particular value of n , say $n = 1$.

If $n = 1$, $1^2 = 1$ and $\frac{1}{6}(1+1)(2+1) = 1$

Hence the result is true for $n = 1$.

(b) Prove that, if the result is true for some general value of n , say $n = k$, it must also be true for the next value of n , i.e. $n = k + 1$.

Assume the result is true for $n = k$,

$$\text{i.e. } 1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + \dots + k^2 = \frac{k}{6}(k+1)(2k+1)$$

From this it follows that

$$\begin{aligned} 1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + \dots + k^2 + (k+1)^2 &= \frac{k}{6}(k+1)(2k+1) + (k+1)^2 \\ &= \frac{(k+1)}{6}[k(2k+1) + 6(k+1)] \\ &= \frac{(k+1)}{6}(2k^2 + 7k + 6) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore 1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + \dots + (k+1)^2 &= \frac{(k+1)}{6}(k+2)(2k+3) \\ &= \frac{n}{6}(n+1)(2n+1) \quad \text{with } n = k+1. \end{aligned}$$

Thus if the result is true for $n = k$, it must also be true for $n = k + 1$.

From (a) $1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + \dots + n^2 = \frac{n}{6}(n+1)(2n+1)$ is true for $n = 1$

and using (b), if it is true for $n = 1$, it must be true for $n = 2$. Using (b) again, if it is true for $n = 2$, it must be true for $n = 3$, and so on. Hence the result is true for all positive integral values of n , i.e. for every finite number of terms.

$$\text{Thus } 1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + \dots + n^2 = \frac{n}{6}(n+1)(2n+1).$$

A more concise way of writing the series $1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + \dots + n^2$ is to use the symbol Σ (a Greek letter pronounced 'sigma').

$\sum_{r=1}^n f(r)$ means the series with first term $f(1)$, second term $f(2)$, ... last term $f(n)$.

Thus, $1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + \dots + n^2 = \sum_{r=1}^n r^2$ and the result proved above can then be written:

$$\sum_{r=1}^n r^2 = \frac{n}{6}(n+1)(2n+1).$$

Example 12

Write down the series $\sum_{r=1}^{\infty} r(r+1)$ in full.

For $r = 5$ $r(r + 1) = 5 \times 6 = 30$,

for $r = 6$ $r(r + 1) = 6 \times 7 = 42$ and so on to $r = 10$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Thus } \sum_{r=5}^{10} r(r+1) &= 5 \times 6 + 6 \times 7 + 7 \times 8 + 8 \times 9 + 9 \times 10 + 10 \times 11 \\ &= 30 + 42 + 56 + 72 + 90 + 110. \end{aligned}$$

Example 13

Express the series $1 + 4 + 7 + 10 + 13 + \dots + 298$ in the form $\sum_{r=1}^n f(r)$.

In $\sum_{r=1}^n f(r)$, $f(r)$ is the expression for the r th term of the series.

By inspection, $1 + 4 + 7 + 10 + 13 + \dots + 298$ has r th term $(3r - 2)$.
Alternatively, had we not been able to state this by inspection, we could say:
 $1 + 4 + 7 + 10 + \dots$ is an arithmetic progression with $a = 1$ and $d = 3$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Thus the } r\text{th term is } a + (r - 1)d \\ &= 1 + (r - 1)3 \\ &= 3r - 2 \end{aligned}$$

As the final term is 298, the greatest value of r in this series is that for which $3r - 2 = 298$, i.e. $r = 100$.

$$\therefore 1 + 4 + 7 + 10 + 13 + \dots + 298 = \sum_{r=1}^{100} (3r - 2).$$

Example 14

Use the method of induction to prove that $\sum_{r=1}^n 2^{r-1} = 2^n - 1$.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{If } n = 1 \text{ L.H.S.} = \sum_{r=1}^1 2^{r-1} = 2^{1-1} & \text{R.H.S.} = 2^1 - 1 \\ & = 1 \qquad \qquad \qquad = 1 \end{array}$$

Thus the statement is true for $n = 1$.

Assume the statement is true for $n = k$, i.e. $\sum_{r=1}^k 2^{r-1} = 2^k - 1$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{then } \sum_{r=1}^{k+1} 2^{r-1} &= \sum_{r=1}^k 2^{r-1} + 2^{k+1-1} \\ &= 2^k - 1 + 2^k \\ &= 2(2^k) - 1 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \sum_{r=1}^{k+1} 2^{r-1} &= 2^{k+1} - 1 \\ &= 2^n - 1 \text{ with } n = k + 1 \end{aligned}$$

Thus if $\sum_{r=1}^n 2^{r-1} = 2^n - 1$ is true for $n = k$, it is also true for $n = k + 1$.

However it is true for $n = 1$, and so it must be true for $n = 2$ and also for $n = 3, 4, 5 \dots$

Thus $\sum_{r=1}^n 2^{r-1} = 2^n - 1$ for all positive integer values of n .

The following results hold for the sigma notation:

$$\sum_{r=1}^n af(r) = a \sum_{r=1}^n f(r) \quad \text{and} \quad \sum_{r=1}^n [f(r) + g(r)] = \sum_{r=1}^n f(r) + \sum_{r=1}^n g(r)$$

Proof: $\sum_{r=1}^n af(r)$ Proof: $\sum_{r=1}^n [f(r) + g(r)]$

$$= af(1) + af(2) + \dots + af(n)$$

$$= a[f(1) + f(2) + \dots + f(n)]$$

$$= a \sum_{r=1}^n f(r)$$

$$= f(1) + g(1) + \dots + f(n) + g(n)$$

$$= [f(1) + \dots + f(n)] + [g(1) + \dots + g(n)]$$

$$= \sum_{r=1}^n f(r) + \sum_{r=1}^n g(r)$$

Example 15

- (a) Using the standard result $\sum_{r=1}^n r^2 = \frac{n}{6}(n+1)(2n+1)$, obtain an expression for $\sum_{r=1}^n (2r^2 - 1)$, simplifying your answer as far as is possible.
- (b) Use your answer for part (a) to sum the series $1 + 7 + 17 + 31 + \dots + 799$.

(a) $\sum_{r=1}^n (2r^2 - 1) = 2 \sum_{r=1}^n r^2 - \sum_{r=1}^n 1$

$$= \frac{n}{3}(n+1)(2n+1) - n \quad [\text{Note: } \sum_{r=1}^n 1 = 1 + 1 + 1 \dots + 1 = n]$$

$$= \frac{n}{3}[(n+1)(2n+1) - 3]$$

$$= \frac{n}{3}(n+2)(2n-1)$$

(b) $1 + 7 + 17 + 31 + \dots + 799 = \sum_{r=1}^{20} (2r^2 - 1)$ since $u_{20} = 799$

$$= \frac{20}{3}(20+2)(40-1)$$

$$= 5720$$

Exercise 8C

1. Write each of the following series in full:

(a) $\sum_{r=1}^5 r$ (b) $\sum_{r=1}^5 r^2$ (c) $\sum_{r=1}^9 (2r-1)$ (d) $\sum_{r=3}^{10} \frac{2520}{r}$ (e) $\sum_{r=1}^5 (-1)^r$ (f) $\sum_{r=1}^5 (-1)^{r+1} r$

2. Express each of the following series in the form $\sum_{r=1}^n f(r)$

(a) $1 + 2 + 3 + 4 + \dots + 50$, (b) $1^3 + 2^3 + 3^3 + 4^3 + \dots + 50^3$,
 (c) $5 + 10 + 15 + 20 + 25 + 30$, (d) $3 + 5 + 7 + 9 + 11 + 13$,
 (e) $3 - 6 + 9 - 12 + 15 - 18$, (f) $-1 + 4 - 9 + 16 - 25 + 36 - \dots - 169$.

3. Prove each of the following statements by the method of induction.

(a) $1 + 2 + 3 + 4 + \dots + n = \frac{n}{2}(n+1)$
 (b) $1^3 + 2^3 + 3^3 + \dots + n^3 = \frac{n^2}{4}(n+1)^2$

$$(c) 1 \times 3 + 2 \times 4 + 3 \times 5 + \dots + n(n+2) = \frac{n}{6}(n+1)(2n+7)$$

$$(d) \frac{1}{1 \times 2} + \frac{1}{2 \times 3} + \frac{1}{3 \times 4} + \dots + \frac{1}{n(n+1)} = \frac{n}{n+1}$$

In the remaining questions of this exercise, the following standard results may be quoted and used without proof:

$$\sum_{r=1}^n r = \frac{n}{2}(n+1); \quad \sum_{r=1}^n r^2 = \frac{n}{6}(n+1)(2n+1); \quad \sum_{r=1}^n r^3 = \frac{n^2}{4}(n+1)^2$$

4. Write each of the following series in the form $\sum_{r=1}^n f(r)$ and, using the

standard results for $\sum r$, $\sum r^2$ and $\sum r^3$, evaluate each summation.

(a) $1 + 2 + 3 + 4 + \dots + 100$,

(b) $1 + 4 + 9 + 16 + 25 + \dots + 484$,

(c) $1 + 8 + 27 + 64 + 125 + \dots + 3375$,

(d) $1 + 3 + 5 + 7 + 9 + \dots + 101$,

(e) $1 \times 3 + 2 \times 4 + 3 \times 5 + 4 \times 6 + \dots + 20 \times 22$,

(f) $1 \times 1 + 2 \times 3 + 3 \times 5 + 4 \times 7 + 5 \times 9 + \dots + 13 \times 25$.

5. Using the standard result for $\sum_{r=1}^n r^3$ evaluate (a) $\sum_{r=1}^{24} r^3$, (b) $\sum_{r=1}^{15} r^3$, (c) $\sum_{r=16}^{24} r^3$.

6. (a) Using the standard results for $\sum r^2$ and $\sum r$, obtain an expression

for $\sum_{r=1}^n r(r+1)$ and simplify your answer as far as possible.

(b) Use your answer from part (a) to sum the series
 $1 \times 2 + 2 \times 3 + 3 \times 4 + 4 \times 5 + \dots + 28 \times 29$.

7. (a) Using the standard results for $\sum r^3$, $\sum r^2$ and $\sum r$, obtain an expression

for $\sum_{r=1}^n r(r+1)(r+2)$ and simplify your answer as far as possible.

(b) Use your answer from part (a) to sum the series
 $1 \times 2 \times 3 + 2 \times 3 \times 4 + 3 \times 4 \times 5 + \dots + 20 \times 21 \times 22$.

8. (a) Using the standard results for $\sum r^2$ and $\sum r$, obtain an expression for

$\sum_{r=1}^n (r+1)(2r+1)$ and simplify your answer as far as possible.

(b) Use your answer from part (a) to sum the series
 $2 \times 3 + 3 \times 5 + 4 \times 7 + \dots + 21 \times 41$.

9. Prove that $\sum_{r=1}^n r^2(r+1) = \frac{n}{12}(n+1)(n+2)(3n+1)$ by using

(a) the method of induction, (b) the standard results for $\sum r^3$ and $\sum r^2$.

10. Find expressions in terms of n for the sums of the following series, to the number of terms stated, simplifying your answers as far as is possible.

(a) $1 + 2 + 3 + 4 + \dots$ to $2n$ terms,

(b) $1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + 4^2 + \dots$ to $(n+1)$ terms,

(c) $1^3 + 2^3 + 3^3 + 4^3 + \dots$ to $2n$ terms,

(d) $7 + 9 + 11 + 13 + 15 + \dots$ to $2n$ terms,

(e) $2^3 + 4^3 + 6^3 + 8^3 + \dots$ to n terms,

(f) $2^3 + 4^3 + 6^3 + 8^3 + \dots$ to $2n$ terms,

shall see later, we may only require the first few terms of the expansion, or perhaps just one particular term and in such cases it is better to use the **binomial theorem**.

According to this theorem

$$(1+x)^n = \sum_{r=0}^n {}^nC_r x^r \quad \left(\text{remember that } {}^nC_r = \frac{n!}{(n-r)! r!} \right)$$

$$= {}^nC_0 x^0 + {}^nC_1 x^1 + {}^nC_2 x^2 + {}^nC_3 x^3 + \dots + {}^nC_n x^n$$

$$\therefore (1+x)^n = 1 + {}^nC_1 x + {}^nC_2 x^2 + {}^nC_3 x^3 + \dots + x^n$$

$$\text{or } (1+x)^n = 1 + \frac{nx}{1!} + \frac{n(n-1)x^2}{2!} + \frac{n(n-1)(n-2)x^3}{3!} + \dots + x^n$$

These are two forms of the binomial expansion of $(1+x)^n$ for positive integral values of n . The R.H.S. gives the series expansion of $(1+x)^n$ in ascending powers of x .

Proof of the binomial expansion of $(1+x)^n$

We know that $(1+x)^n = \underbrace{(1+x)(1+x)(1+x)\dots(1+x)}_{n \text{ brackets}}$

When expanding the R.H.S. the constant term is obtained by multiplying the n 1's together and it is therefore 1.

The term involving x is obtained by multiplying $(n-1)$ 1's and one x together. The x can be chosen from any one of the n brackets, so the coefficient of x is nC_1 .

The term involving x^2 is obtained by multiplying $(n-2)$ 1's and two x 's together. The x 's can be chosen from any two of the n brackets, so the coefficient of x^2 is nC_2 . We continue this process until eventually we multiply the n x 's together to get x^n .

$$\text{Thus } (1+x)^n = 1 + {}^nC_1 x + {}^nC_2 x^2 + \dots + x^n$$

The binomial theorem for $(1+x)^n$ can also be proved by using the method of induction. The proof uses the fact that ${}^nC_r + {}^nC_{r-1} = {}^{n+1}C_r$, proved below.

$$\begin{aligned} {}^nC_r + {}^nC_{r-1} &= \frac{n!}{(n-r)! r!} + \frac{n!}{(n-r+1)! (r-1)!} \\ &= \frac{(n-r+1)n!}{(n-r+1)! r!} + \frac{n! r}{(n-r+1)! r!} \\ &= \frac{n!}{(n-r+1)! r!} (n-r+1+r) \\ &= \frac{(n+1)n!}{(n+1-r)! r!} = {}^{n+1}C_r \end{aligned}$$

Proof of the binomial expansion by induction

To prove $(1+x)^n = {}^nC_0 + {}^nC_1x + {}^nC_2x^2 + {}^nC_3x^3 + \dots + {}^nC_{n-1}x^{n-1} + {}^nC_nx^n$.

$$\text{If } n = 1, \text{ L.H.S.} = (1+x)^1 \qquad \text{R.H.S.} = {}^1C_0 + {}^1C_1x \\ = 1+x \qquad \qquad \qquad = 1+x$$

Hence the result is true for $n = 1$.

Assume that the result is correct for $n = k$,

$$\text{i.e. } (1+x)^k = {}^kC_0 + {}^kC_1x + {}^kC_2x^2 + {}^kC_3x^3 + \dots + {}^kC_{k-1}x^{k-1} + {}^kC_kx^k$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{then } (1+x)^{k+1} &= (1+x)({}^kC_0 + {}^kC_1x + {}^kC_2x^2 + {}^kC_3x^3 + \dots + {}^kC_{k-1}x^{k-1} + {}^kC_kx^k) \\ &= {}^kC_0 + {}^kC_1x + {}^kC_2x^2 + {}^kC_3x^3 + \dots + {}^kC_{k-1}x^{k-1} + {}^kC_kx^k \\ &\quad + {}^kC_0x + {}^kC_1x^2 + {}^kC_2x^3 + {}^kC_3x^4 + \dots + {}^kC_{k-1}x^k + {}^kC_kx^{k+1} \\ &= 1 + ({}^kC_1 + {}^kC_0)x + ({}^kC_2 + {}^kC_1)x^2 + ({}^kC_3 + {}^kC_2)x^3 + \dots + ({}^kC_k + {}^kC_{k-1})x^k + {}^kC_kx^{k+1} \\ &= 1 + {}^{k+1}C_1x + {}^{k+1}C_2x^2 + {}^{k+1}C_3x^3 + \dots + {}^{k+1}C_kx^k + x^{k+1} \\ &= 1 + {}^nC_1x + {}^nC_2x^2 + {}^nC_3x^3 + \dots + x^n \text{ with } n = k + 1 \end{aligned}$$

Thus if the result is true for $n = k$, it is also true for $n = k + 1$. However, the result is true for $n = 1$ and is therefore true for $n = 2, 3, 4, \dots$ and so on. Thus the binomial expansion of $(1+x)^n$ is proved for positive integral values of n .

$$\text{Using } (1+x)^n = 1 + {}^nC_1x + {}^nC_2x^2 + {}^nC_3x^3 + \dots + x^n$$

$$\begin{aligned} (a+x)^n &= \left[a \left(1 + \frac{x}{a} \right) \right]^n \\ &= a^n \left(1 + \frac{x}{a} \right)^n = a^n \left[1 + {}^nC_1 \left(\frac{x}{a} \right) + {}^nC_2 \left(\frac{x}{a} \right)^2 + {}^nC_3 \left(\frac{x}{a} \right)^3 + \dots + \left(\frac{x}{a} \right)^n \right] \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Thus } (a+x)^n = a^n + {}^nC_1 a^{n-1}x + {}^nC_2 a^{n-2}x^2 + {}^nC_3 a^{n-3}x^3 + \dots + x^n$$

$$\text{or } (a+x)^n = a^n + \frac{n}{1!} a^{n-1}x + \frac{n(n-1)}{2!} a^{n-2}x^2 + \frac{n(n-1)(n-2)}{3!} a^{n-3}x^3 + \dots + x^n$$

This is the binomial expansion of $(a+x)^n$ for positive integral values of n .

Example 17

Use the binomial theorem to expand $(2+3x)^5$.

Using the binomial expansion of $(a+x)^n$ with $a = 2$, $n = 5$ and $3x$ substituted for x :

$$\begin{aligned} (2+3x)^5 &= 2^5 + {}^5C_1 2^4(3x)^1 + {}^5C_2 2^3(3x)^2 + {}^5C_3 2^2(3x)^3 + {}^5C_4 2^1(3x)^4 + (3x)^5 \\ &= 32 + 240x + 720x^2 + 1080x^3 + 810x^4 + 243x^5 \end{aligned}$$

Example 18

Use the binomial expansion to expand $(2-x)^{10}$ in ascending powers of x up to and including the term in x^3 .

Using the expansion of $(a + x)^n$ with $a = 2$, $n = 10$ and $(-x)$ substituted for x :

$$(2 - x)^{10} = 2^{10} + \frac{10}{1!}2^9(-x) + \frac{10 \times 9}{2!}2^8(-x)^2 + \frac{10 \times 9 \times 8}{3!}2^7(-x)^3 \\ + \text{terms of the order } x^4 \text{ and higher}$$

$\therefore (2 - x)^{10} = 1024 - 5120x + 11\,520x^2 - 15\,360x^3 \dots$ is the required expansion.

Example 19

Expand $(1 + x + x^2)(1 - x)^8$ in ascending powers of x up to and including the term in x^3 .

Using the expansion of $(1 + x)^n$ with $n = 8$ and $(-x)$ substituted for x :

$$(1 - x)^8 = 1 - 8x + 28x^2 - 56x^3 + \dots$$

$$\therefore (1 + x + x^2)(1 - x)^8 = (1 + x + x^2)(1 - 8x + 28x^2 - 56x^3 \dots)$$

Expanding and ignoring terms of order x^4 and above gives

$$(1 + x + x^2)(1 - x)^8 = 1 - 8x + 28x^2 - 56x^3 \dots \\ + x - 8x^2 + 28x^3 \dots \\ + x^2 - 8x^3 \dots$$

$$\therefore (1 + x + x^2)(1 - x)^8 = 1 - 7x + 21x^2 - 36x^3 \dots$$

Example 20

Expand $(1 + x - x^2)^7$ in ascending powers of x up to and including the term in x^3 .

Using the expansion of $(1 + x)^n$ with $n = 7$ and $(x - x^2)$ substituted for x :

$$(1 + x - x^2)^7 = 1 + 7 \times (x - x^2) + \frac{7 \times 6}{2!}(x - x^2)^2 + \frac{7 \times 6 \times 5}{3!}(x - x^2)^3 \dots$$

Expanding and ignoring terms of order x^4 and above gives

$$(1 + x - x^2)^7 = 1 + 7(x - x^2) + 21(x^2 - 2x^3) + 35(x^3) \dots \\ = 1 + 7x + 14x^2 - 7x^3 \dots$$

Approximate values

Example 21

Expand $(2 + x)^4$ and use your expansion to find (a) $(2 \cdot 1)^4$, (b) $(1 \cdot 9)^4$.

By using the binomial theorem, or Pascal's triangle, we obtain

$$(2 + x)^4 = 16 + 32x + 24x^2 + 8x^3 + x^4$$

$$(a) (2 \cdot 1)^4 = (2 + 0 \cdot 1)^4 = 16 + 32(0 \cdot 1) + 24(0 \cdot 1)^2 + 8(0 \cdot 1)^3 + (0 \cdot 1)^4 \\ = 16 + 3 \cdot 2 + 0 \cdot 24 + 0 \cdot 008 + 0 \cdot 0001$$

$$\therefore (2 \cdot 1)^4 = 19 \cdot 4481$$

$$(b) (1 \cdot 9)^4 = (2 - 0 \cdot 1)^4 = 16 + 32(-0 \cdot 1) + 24(-0 \cdot 1)^2 + 8(-0 \cdot 1)^3 + (-0 \cdot 1)^4 \\ = 13 \cdot 0321$$

$$\therefore (1 \cdot 9)^4 = 13 \cdot 0321$$

A similar procedure can be adopted for evaluating higher powers of numbers but this could involve a large number of terms. However, if we ensure that x is sufficiently small, the terms involving the higher powers of x will approximate to zero and can be neglected. The following example demonstrates this technique.

Example 22

Expand $(1 + 3x)^{10}$ in ascending powers of x , up to and including the term in x^3 . Hence evaluate $(1.003)^{10}$ correct to five places of decimals.

Using the binomial expansion of $(1 + x)^n$ with $n = 10$ and $3x$ substituted for x , we obtain

$$(1 + 3x)^{10} = 1 + 30x + 405x^2 + 3240x^3 + \dots$$

as the required expansion.

$$\begin{aligned} (1.003)^{10} &= [1 + 3(\frac{3}{1000})]^{10} \approx 1 + 30(\frac{3}{1000}) + 405(\frac{3}{1000})^2 + 3240(\frac{3}{1000})^3 \\ &= 1 + 0.03 + 0.000405 + 0.000003240 \\ &= 1.03041 \quad \text{correct to five decimal places.} \end{aligned}$$

Notice that to obtain an answer correct to five decimal places we need to know whether the figure in the sixth decimal place is less than 5 or not. In the last example the first four terms give a total of 1.03040824 which becomes 1.03041 when corrected to 5 places of decimals. From these first four terms we can see that the terms in x^4 and higher powers will not be large enough to alter the result and so our answer is indeed correct to five decimal places.

Example 23

Use the binomial expansion of $(1 + x)^8$ to find $(1.01)^8$ correct to five significant figures.

In this example we do not know how many terms of the expansion are required to give the necessary accuracy. In such cases, start by finding the first four terms and be prepared to find more if they are required later.

The binomial expansion gives $(1 + x)^8 = 1 + 8x + 28x^2 + 56x^3 + \dots$

$$\begin{aligned} (1.01)^8 &= (1 + \frac{1}{100})^8 = 1 + 8(\frac{1}{100}) + 28(\frac{1}{100})^2 + 56(\frac{1}{100})^3 + \dots \\ &= 1 + 0.08 + 0.0028 + 0.000056 + \dots \end{aligned}$$

We need to know whether the sixth significant figure is less than 5 or not. As the answer is clearly between 1 and 10, the sixth significant figure will be in the fifth decimal place. The first four terms give a total of 1.082856 which becomes 1.0829 when corrected to 5 significant figures. Clearly the terms in x^4 and higher will not alter this answer. Thus we have sufficient terms for the required accuracy and

$$\begin{aligned} (1.01)^8 &\approx 1.082856 \\ &= 1.0829 \quad \text{correct to five significant figures.} \end{aligned}$$

Exercise 8D

1. Expand the following using Pascal's triangle:

(a) $(3 + x)^3$, (b) $(5 + 2x)^3$, (c) $(2 + x)^4$, (d) $(2 - x)^4$,
 (e) $(2y + x)^5$, (f) $(2x - 3y)^5$, (g) $(x - \frac{1}{x})^4$, (h) $(x - \frac{2}{x})^3$.

2. Expand the following using the binomial theorem:

(a) $(1 + 3x)^4$, (b) $(2x + y)^4$, (c) $(2 - 3x)^4$, (d) $(2x + \frac{3}{x})^4$.

- Use the binomial theorem to expand $(1 + x)^{12}$ in ascending powers of x up to and including the term in x^3 .
- Use the binomial theorem to expand $(a + x)^{12}$ in ascending powers of x up to and including the term in x^3 .
- Find the first four terms in the series expansion of $(a - 3x)^{10}$ in ascending powers of x .
- If x is such that terms involving x^3 and higher powers can be neglected, find an approximate expansion of $\left(1 + \frac{x}{2}\right)^{20}$.
- Expand $(2 + x)^4$ and use your expansion to find (a) $(2 \cdot 1)^4$, (b) $(1 \cdot 9)^4$.
- Expand each of the following expressions in ascending powers of x , up to and including the term in x^2 :

(a) $(1 + 2x)(1 - x)^{10}$,	(b) $(1 - 3x)(1 + x)^6$,
(c) $(1 + x^2)(1 + 2x)^4$,	(d) $(1 - x + x^2)(1 + x)^4$,
(e) $(1 + 2x - x^2)(1 + 2x)^7$,	(f) $(1 + x + x^2)(1 - 3x)^3$.
- Expand each of the following expressions in ascending powers of x , up to and including the term in x^3 :

(a) $(1 + x + x^2)^6$,	(b) $(1 + 2x - x^2)^4$,	(c) $(1 - 2x + 4x^2)^8$.
-------------------------	--------------------------	---------------------------
- Expand $(1 - x)^{11}$ in ascending powers of x up to and including the term in x^4 . Hence evaluate $(0.98)^{11}$ correct to three places of decimals.
- Expand $(1 + x)^{15}$ in ascending powers of x up to and including the term in x^3 . Hence evaluate $(1.01)^{15}$ correct to three places of decimals.
- Expand $(1 + 2x)^{12}$ in ascending powers of x up to and including the term in x^2 . Hence evaluate $(1.02)^{12}$ correct to two significant figures.
- Expand $(2 + x)^7$ in ascending powers of x up to and including the term in x^3 . Hence evaluate $(2.01)^7$ correct to six significant figures.
- Use binomial expansions to evaluate the following to the stated degree of accuracy:

(a) $(1.01)^9$ correct to four decimal places,
(b) $(0.998)^7$ correct to seven decimal places,
(c) $(0.99)^{10}$ correct to four decimal places,
(d) $(1.99)^{10}$ correct to four significant figures.
- When $(1 + ax)^{10}$ is expanded in ascending powers of x , the series expansion is $A + Bx + Cx^2 + 15x^3 + \dots$; find the values of a , A , B and C .
- When $(1 + ax)^n$ is expanded in ascending powers of x , the series expansion is $1 + 2x + \frac{1}{4}x^2 + \dots$; find the values of n and a .
- If x is sufficiently small to allow any terms in x^3 or higher powers of x to be neglected, show that

$$(1 + x)^7(1 + 2x)^4 \approx 1 + 15x + 101x^2.$$
 Obtain a similar approximation for $(1 + x)^7(1 - 2x)^4$, again neglecting terms in x^3 or higher powers of x .
- If x is sufficiently small to allow any terms in x^3 or higher powers of x to be neglected, show that

$$(1 + x)^4(1 - 2x)^3 \approx 1 + 6x + 15x^2 - 105x^4.$$

Particular terms of a binomial expansion

By considering the general term of a binomial expansion, a term involving a particular power of x may be found.

Example 24

Find the term involving x^{12} in the expansion of $(3 + 2x)^{15}$.

Using the expansion $(a + x)^n = a^n + {}^n C_1 a^{n-1}x + \dots + {}^n C_r a^{n-r}x^r + \dots + x^n$, the general term u_{r+1} is given by ${}^n C_r a^{n-r}x^r$.

Substituting $a = 3$, $2x$ for x and $n = 15$, we have ${}^{15} C_r 3^{15-r}(2x)^r$.

To find the term involving x^{12} we need $r = 12$ (i.e. the 13th term).

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Thus the required term is } {}^{15} C_{12} 3^3 (2x)^{12} &= \frac{15!}{12! 3!} 3^3 2^{12} x^{12} \\ &= \frac{15!}{12!} 3^2 2^{11} x^{12}\end{aligned}$$

Example 25

Find the term independent of x in the binomial expansion of $\left(3x - \frac{2}{x^2}\right)^{18}$.

The general term u_{r+1} in the expansion of $(a + x)^n$ is given by ${}^n C_r a^{n-r}x^r$.

Substituting $3x$ for a , $\left(\frac{-2}{x^2}\right)$ for x and $n = 18$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}u_{r+1} &= {}^{18} C_r (3x)^{18-r} \left(\frac{-2}{x^2}\right)^r \\ &= {}^{18} C_r 3^{18-r} (-2)^r x^{18-3r}\end{aligned}$$

This term is independent of x if $18 - 3r = 0$, i.e. $r = 6$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Thus the required term is } u_7 &= {}^{18} C_6 3^{12} (-2)^6 \\ &= {}^{18} C_6 3^{12} 2^6\end{aligned}$$

Exercise 8E

- Find the term involving x^8 in the expansion of $(4 + x)^{13}$.
- Find the term involving x^5 in the expansion of $(3 + 2x)^8$.
- Find the 4th term when $(2 - x)^9$ is expanded in ascending powers of x .
- Find the coefficient of x^3 in the expansion of (a) $(5 + 3x)^8$, (b) $(7 - 2x)^7$.
- Find the term involving x^{10} in the expansion of $(3 + 2x^2)^7$.
- Find the term independent of x in the expansion of each of the following:

$$\text{(a) } \left(3x + \frac{1}{x}\right)^{10}, \quad \text{(b) } \left(2x^2 + \frac{4}{x}\right)^{12}, \quad \text{(c) } \left(\frac{3}{x^2} - 2x\right)^8, \quad \text{(d) } (1 + x^2)\left(2x + \frac{1}{x}\right)^{10}$$

8.5 The binomial theorem for any rational index

It can be shown that the binomial expansion of $(1 + x)^n$ for positive integral values of n (stated on page 223) is also true for negative and/or fractional values of n . However, for these values of n the term ${}^n C_r$ is meaningless as the factorial notation has no meaning when applied to negative numbers and fractions. However, from our definition

$${}^nC_r = \frac{n!}{(n-r)!r!} \quad \dots [1]$$

$$= \frac{n(n-1)(n-2)\dots(n-r+1)}{r!} \quad \dots [2]$$

The second form does have meaning for negative and fractional values of n .

Thus we use the notation $\binom{n}{r}$ to mean $\frac{n(n-1)(n-2)\dots(n-r+1)}{r!}$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Thus } (1+x)^n &= 1 + \binom{n}{1}x + \binom{n}{2}x^2 + \binom{n}{3}x^3 + \dots \\ &= 1 + nx + \frac{n(n-1)}{2!}x^2 + \frac{n(n-1)(n-2)}{3!}x^3 + \dots \quad \text{for all } n \in \mathbb{R} \\ &\quad \text{provided } -1 < x < 1, \text{ i.e. } |x| < 1 \end{aligned}$$

Note that the condition $|x| < 1$ is necessary because with n fractional or negative, the series is infinite and the condition $|x| < 1$ ensures that this infinite series converges.

Example 26

Expand $(1+3x)^{-2}$ in ascending powers of x stating the first four terms and the range of values of x for which the expansion is valid.

Using the expansion

$$(1+x)^n = 1 + \frac{nx}{1!} + \frac{n(n-1)}{2!}x^2 + \frac{n(n-1)(n-2)}{3!}x^3 + \dots$$

we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} (1+3x)^{-2} &= 1 + \frac{(-2)}{1!}(3x) + \frac{(-2)(-3)}{2!}(3x)^2 + \frac{(-2)(-3)(-4)}{3!}(3x)^3 + \dots \\ &= 1 - 15x + 135x^2 - 945x^3 + \dots \end{aligned}$$

The expansion is valid for $|3x| < 1$, i.e. $|x| < \frac{1}{3}$.

Example 27

Expand $\frac{(1+2x)^2}{(2-x)^2}$ in ascending powers of x up to and including the term in x^3 , and state the values of x for which the expansion is valid.

$\frac{(1+2x)^2}{(2-x)^2} = (1+2x)^2(2-x)^{-2}$. However, we cannot expand $(2-x)^{-2}$ in this form as the binomial expansion for negative and/or fractional n only applies to $(1+x)^n$, not $(a+x)^n$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{However, } (2-x)^{-2} &= \left[2\left(1-\frac{x}{2}\right)\right]^{-2} \\ &= 2^{-2}\left(1-\frac{x}{2}\right)^{-2} \\ &= \frac{1}{2}\left(1-\frac{x}{2}\right)^{-2} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore \frac{(1+2x)^2}{(2-x)} &= (1+2x)^2 \times \frac{1}{2} \left(1 - \frac{x}{2}\right)^{-1} \\
 &= (1+4x+4x^2) \frac{1}{2} \left[1 + (-1) \left(-\frac{x}{2}\right) + \frac{(-1)(-2)}{2!} \left(-\frac{x}{2}\right)^2 + \frac{(-1)(-2)(-3)}{3!} \left(-\frac{x}{2}\right)^3 + \dots \right] \\
 &= (1+4x+4x^2) \left(\frac{1}{2} + \frac{x}{4} + \frac{x^2}{8} + \frac{x^3}{16} + \dots \right) \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} + \frac{9x}{4} + \frac{25x^2}{8} + \frac{25x^3}{16} + \dots
 \end{aligned}$$

The expansion is valid for $\left| -\frac{x}{2} \right| < 1$ i.e. $|x| < 2$.

Example 28

Using the binomial theorem, find $\sqrt[3]{9-18}$ correct to five places of decimals.

$$\sqrt[3]{9-18} = \sqrt[3]{9(1+0-02)} = 3(1 + \frac{-2}{180})^{1/3}$$

The expression $(1 + \frac{-2}{180})^{1/3}$ can be expanded using the binomial theorem as $|\frac{-2}{180}| < 1$ as required.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore \sqrt[3]{9-18} &= 3 \left[1 + \left(\frac{1}{3}\right) \left(\frac{-2}{180}\right) + \frac{\left(\frac{1}{3}\right) \left(\frac{-2}{180}\right) \left(\frac{-2}{180}\right)}{2!} + \frac{\left(\frac{1}{3}\right) \left(\frac{-2}{180}\right) \left(\frac{-2}{180}\right) \left(\frac{-2}{180}\right)}{3!} + \dots \right] \\
 &= 3 + 0.03 - 0.00015 + 0.000015 \dots \\
 \sqrt[3]{9-18} &\approx 3.02985
 \end{aligned}$$

If x is such that $|x| > 1$, the expression $(1+x)^n$ can be expanded by the binomial theorem using the rearrangement $(1+x)^n = x^n \left(1 + \frac{1}{x}\right)^n$ as $\left|\frac{1}{x}\right| < 1$ if $|x| > 1$.

The expansion obtained will then be in ascending powers of $\frac{1}{x}$.

Example 29

Expand $(3+x)^{-2}$ in ascending powers of $\frac{1}{x}$, stating the first four terms only and the values of x for which the expansion is valid.

$$\begin{aligned}
 (3+x)^{-2} &= \left[x \left(\frac{3}{x} + 1 \right) \right]^{-2} \\
 &= \frac{1}{x^2} \left(1 + \frac{3}{x} \right)^{-2} \\
 &= \frac{1}{x^2} \left[1 + (-2) \left(\frac{3}{x} \right) + \frac{(-2)(-3)}{2!} \left(\frac{3}{x} \right)^2 + \frac{(-2)(-3)(-4)}{3!} \left(\frac{3}{x} \right)^3 + \dots \right] \\
 &= \frac{1}{x^2} \left[1 - \frac{6}{x} + \frac{27}{x^2} - \frac{108}{x^3} + \dots \right] \\
 &= \frac{1}{x^2} - \frac{6}{x^3} + \frac{27}{x^4} - \frac{108}{x^5} + \dots
 \end{aligned}$$

The expansion is valid for $\left| \frac{3}{x} \right| < 1$ i.e. $|x| > 3$.

Exercise 8F

- For each of the following, state the values of x for which a binomial expansion of the given expression in ascending powers of x , is valid.
 - $(1 + 2x)^{-3}$
 - $(1 - 2x)^{12}$
 - $\frac{1}{(1 - 2x)}$
 - $\frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + \frac{1}{2}x}}$
- Expand each of the following in ascending powers of x , up to and including the term in x^3 , and state the values of x for which the expansion is valid.
 - $\frac{1}{1+x}$
 - $\sqrt[3]{1+x}$
 - $\frac{1}{\sqrt{1+2x}}$
 - $\frac{1}{(1-2x)^2}$
 - $\frac{1}{(1+3x)^2}$
 - $\sqrt{[1+2x]^3}$
 - $\sqrt{4+x}$
 - $\frac{1}{\sqrt{100-50x}}$
- Expand $\frac{1-x}{(1+2x)^2}$ in ascending powers of x , up to and including the term in x^4 , and state the values of x for which the expansion is valid.
- When the terms in x^4 and higher powers of x are neglected, the series expansion of $\frac{2+3x-x^2}{(1+2x)^3}$ in ascending powers of x gives $a + bx + cx^2 + dx^3$. Find the values of a , b , c and d .
- Expand the expression $(1+x-6x^2)^{-1}$ in ascending powers of x up to and including the term in x^3 .
- Expand $(1+x)^{1/2}$ in ascending powers of x , up to and including the term in x^3 , and state the values of x for which the expansion is valid. Hence calculate $\sqrt{1.08}$ correct to four places of decimals.
- Expand each of the following in ascending powers of $\frac{1}{x}$, stating the first 4 non-zero terms and the value of x for which the expansion is valid.
 - $(2-x)^{-3}$
 - $(1+2x)^{-1}$
 - $(4-3x)^{-2}$
- Use binomial expansions to evaluate the following to the stated degree of accuracy:
 - $\sqrt{0.96}$ correct to five decimal places,
 - $\sqrt{104}$ correct to six significant figures,
 - $\sqrt[4]{4.08}$ correct to four decimal places,
 - $\sqrt[3]{1.08}$ correct to five places of decimals,
 - $\sqrt[5]{8.72}$ correct to five places of decimals.
- Expand $\sqrt{\left(\frac{1-x}{1+2x}\right)}$ in ascending powers of x , up to and including the term in x^3 . State the values of x for which the expansion is valid.
- Expand $\sqrt{\left(\frac{1+x}{1-x}\right)}$ in ascending powers of x , up to and including the term in x^3 . State the values of x for which the expansion is valid and by substituting $x = 0.2$, find an approximation for $\sqrt{1.5}$.
- When $(1+ax)^{1/2}$ is expanded in ascending powers of x , the first four terms are $A + Bx + \frac{1}{2}x^2 + Cx^3$. Find the values of a , A , B and C .
- When $(1+bx)^n$ is expanded in ascending powers of x , the first three terms of the expansion are $1 - \frac{1}{3}x - \frac{1}{10}x^2$. Find the values of n and b .

Exercise 8G Examination questions

- The sum of the first six terms of an arithmetic progression is 72 and the second term is seven times the fifth term.
Find the first term and the common difference.
Find the sum of the first ten terms. (A.E.B.)
- The sum of the first two terms of a geometric progression is 9, and the sum of the first four terms is 45. Calculate the two possible values of the fifth term in the progression. (A.E.B.)
- Find a number x which, when added to each of the numbers, 21, 27 and 29, produces three numbers whose squares are in arithmetic progression.
 - Find a number y which, when added to each of the numbers, 21, 27 and 29, produces three numbers which are in geometric progression. (Oxford)
- The first term of an arithmetic progression is 7, the last term is 43 and the sum of the terms of the progression is 250. Find the number of terms and the common difference.
 - The sum of the first and second terms of a geometric progression is 12, and the sum of the third and fourth terms is 48. Find the two possible values of the common ratio and the corresponding values of the first term. Find also the sum to ten terms of each of the series. (Oxford)
- The first term of an arithmetic progression is 2 and the common difference is 3. Find the sum to n terms of this progression.
Find the value of n for which the sum of the progression is 610.
Find, also, the least value of n for which the sum exceeds 1000.
 - Find $S_n = \sum_{r=0}^{n-1} 3^r$.
Find also the least value of n such that $S_n > 10\,000$. (London)
- The first three terms of an arithmetic series are $-3\frac{1}{2}$, $-1\frac{1}{2}$, $-\frac{1}{2}$. Find the sum of the first 70 terms of this series.
 - The first three terms of a geometric series are 2, $-\frac{1}{2}$, $\frac{1}{4}$. Find the sum to infinity of this series.
Find also the least value of n for which the sum of the first n terms of this series differs from the sum to infinity by less than 10^{-3} . (Cambridge)
- The population of a colony of insects increases in such a way that if it is N at the beginning of a week, then at the end of the week it is $a + bN$, where a and b are constants and $0 < b < 1$.
Starting from the beginning of the week when the population is N , write down an expression for the population at the end of 2 weeks. Show that at the end of c consecutive weeks the population is

$$a\left(\frac{1-b^c}{1-b}\right) + b^c N.$$

When $a = 2000$ and $b = 0.2$, it is known that the population takes

about 4 weeks to increase from N to $2N$. Estimate a value for N from this information. (A.E.B.)

8. Prove that $\sum_{r=1}^n r(r+1) = \frac{1}{3}n(n+1)(n+2)$.

Evaluate $\sum_{r=1}^{20} r(r-1)$. (London)

9. (a) For all positive integral values of n , the sum of the first n terms of a series is $3n^2 + 2n$. Find the n th term in its simplest form.
 (b) Show that, for all positive integral values of n , $7^n + 2^{2n+1}$ is divisible by 3.
 (c) Prove, by induction or otherwise, that
 $(1)(4)(7) + (2)(5)(8) + \dots + n(n+3)(n+6)$
 $= \frac{1}{4}n(n+1)(n+6)(n+7)$. (J.M.B.)

10. Expand $(2-x)^3$ in ascending powers of x up to and including the term in x^2 . Use these terms to find the value of 2.01^3 , giving your answer to three decimal places. (S.U.J.B.)

11. Find, in ascending powers of x , the first three terms in the expansion of $(2-3x)^8$. Use the expansion to find the value of $(1.997)^8$ correct to the nearest whole number. (Cambridge)

12. Obtain the term independent of x in the expansion of $\left(2x^3 - \frac{1}{x}\right)^{20}$
 You may leave the answer in terms of factorials. (S.U.J.B.)

13. Find the non-zero value of b if the coefficient of x^2 in the expansion of $(b+2x)^6$ is equal to the coefficient of x^3 in the expansion of $(2+bx)^6$. (A.E.B.)

14. The first four terms in the expansion of $(1-x)^n$ are $1 - 6x + px^2 + qx^3$. Show that $p = 15$ and obtain the value of q . (S.U.J.B.)

15. (a) Find the first four terms in the expansion of $(1+3x)^{1/2}$ in ascending powers of x and state the range of values of x for which the expansion is valid. Use the expansion to determine $\sqrt[3]{8.24}$ to five decimal places.

(b) The coefficient of x^2 in the expansion of $(1-2x)^n$ is 24. Calculate the two possible values of n . (S.U.J.B.)

16. Obtain the binomial expansion of $(1+2x)^{-1/2}$ in ascending powers of x as far as the term in x^3 , assuming the value of x to be such that the expansion is valid. Simplify the coefficients. Hence, or otherwise, write down the first four terms in the binomial expansion of $(1-2x)^{-1/2}$.

Use your expansion to evaluate $\frac{1}{\sqrt{0.998}}$ to 7 decimal places. (A.E.B.)

17. (a) In the expansion of $(1+ax)^n$, the first three terms are $1 - \frac{1}{2}x + \frac{3}{2}x^2$.

Find n and a , and state the range of values of x for which the expansion is valid.

(b) Expand $(1+x)^{1/2}$ in ascending powers of x as far as the term in x^2 , and hence find an approximation for $\sqrt{1.08}$. Deduce that $\sqrt{12} \approx 3.464$. (S.U.J.B.)

18. Find the values of the constants a and b for which the expansions, in ascending powers of x , of the two expressions $(1 + 2x)^{1/2}$ and $\frac{1 + ax}{1 + bx}$, up to and including the term in x^2 , are the same.

With these values of a and b , use the result $(1 + 2x)^{1/2} \approx \frac{1 + ax}{1 + bx}$, with $x = -\frac{1}{10}$, to obtain an approximate value for $\sqrt{2}$ in the form p/q , where p and q are positive integers. (Cambridge)

Probability

9.1 Simple probability

Suppose an unbiased coin is tossed. The result is equally likely to be a head as a tail. The total number of possible outcomes of a single toss is 2, i.e. a head or a tail. We say that the probability of obtaining a head is $\frac{1}{2}$, or more briefly $P(\text{head}) = \frac{1}{2}$.

The probability of a particular outcome of a trial (i.e. an attempt at something) is expressed as a fraction $\frac{a}{b}$, where a is the number of ways in which the particular outcome can occur and b is the total number of possible outcomes of the trial.

Suppose a six-sided die is thrown. There are six possible outcomes of this trial (or throw) and they are all equally likely. Only one of these outcomes is that of obtaining a three.

The probability of obtaining a three is therefore $\frac{1}{6}$. Thus $P(3) = \frac{1}{6}$.

In a similar way the probability of obtaining a number greater than 4 with one throw of a die is $\frac{2}{6}$ i.e. $\frac{1}{3}$, because there are a total of 6 possible outcomes of which two (5 and 6) satisfy our requirement.

Example 1

A six-sided die is to be thrown. Calculate the probability that the result will be (a) an odd number, (b) a number less than 3, (c) a multiple of 3.

- (a) For one trial, total number of outcomes = 6
 number of odd outcomes = 3 (i.e. 1, 3 or 5)
 $P(\text{odd number}) = \frac{3}{6} = \frac{1}{2}$
- (b) For one trial, total number of outcomes = 6
 number of scores less than 3 = 2 (i.e. 1 or 2)
 $P(\text{less than 3}) = \frac{2}{6} = \frac{1}{3}$
- (c) For one trial, total number of outcomes = 6
 number of multiples of 3 = 2 (i.e. 3 or 6)
 $P(\text{multiple of 3}) = \frac{2}{6} = \frac{1}{3}$

Example 2

One card is to be drawn from a pack of 52 cards. Calculate the probability that the card will be (a) a diamond, (b) a court card, (c) a black card, (i.e. a club or a spade).

A pack of cards consists of 52 cards; 4 suits of 13 cards with each suit having 3 court cards (king, queen and jack).

Number of possible outcomes = 52

- (a) number of diamonds = 13
 $P(\text{diamond}) = \frac{13}{52} = \frac{1}{4}$
- (b) number of court cards = $4 \times 3 = 12$
 $P(\text{court card}) = \frac{12}{52} = \frac{3}{13}$
- (c) number of black cards = 26
 $P(\text{black card}) = \frac{26}{52} = \frac{1}{2}$

Example 3

A bag contains 8 discs of which 4 are red, 3 are blue and 1 is yellow.

Calculate the probability that when one disc is drawn from the bag it will be (a) red, (b) yellow, (c) blue, (d) not blue.

There are 8 discs altogether so the total number of possible outcomes is 8.

- (a) number of red discs = 4
 $P(\text{red}) = \frac{4}{8} = \frac{1}{2}$
- (b) number of yellow discs = 1
 $P(\text{yellow}) = \frac{1}{8}$
- (c) number of blue discs = 3
 $P(\text{blue}) = \frac{3}{8}$
- (d) number of discs not blue = 5
 $P(\text{not blue}) = \frac{5}{8}$

A probability of 1 means that the event is certain to occur and a probability of zero means that the event cannot occur.

In example 3, the probability of obtaining a disc that is either red, blue or yellow would be 1 because all eight discs meet the requirements i.e.

$$P(\text{either red, blue or yellow}) = \frac{8}{8} = 1$$

On the other hand the probability of obtaining a green disc would be zero as there are no discs that meet this requirement i.e.

$$P(\text{green}) = \frac{0}{8} = 0$$

Notice also that in example 3, $P(\text{not blue}) = \frac{5}{8}$

$$\text{and } P(\text{blue}) = \frac{3}{8}.$$

This is a particular illustration of the rule: If the probability of an event occurring is p , then the probability of it not occurring is $(1 - p)$.

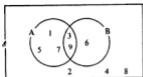
Set notation

Set notation can be useful when considering a number of different events that may occur in a given trial. Consider one number selected from the set of numbers {1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9}. Considering this set as our universal set, \mathcal{U} , it clearly contains a number of subsets.

For example, the subset of odd numbers = {1, 3, 5, 7, 9}

the subset of multiples of three = {3, 6, 9}

If A is the event of the selected number being odd and B is the event of the selected number being a multiple of three, we can show the sets of outcomes as a Venn diagram:



Using the notation $n(X)$ for the number of elements in set X , and X' as the complement of set X , we see that

$$P(A) = \frac{n(A)}{n(S)} = \frac{5}{9} \quad \text{i.e. } P(\text{odd number}) = \frac{5}{9}$$

$$P(B) = \frac{n(B)}{n(S)} = \frac{3}{9} = \frac{1}{3} \quad \text{i.e. } P(\text{multiple of 3}) = \frac{1}{3}$$

$$P(A \cap B) = \frac{n(A \cap B)}{n(S)} = \frac{2}{9} \quad \text{i.e. } P(\text{odd number and multiple of 3}) = \frac{2}{9}$$

$$P(B') = \frac{n(B')}{n(S)} = \frac{6}{9} = \frac{2}{3} \quad \text{i.e. } P(\text{not a multiple of 3}) = \frac{2}{3}$$

$$P(A \cup B) = \frac{n(A \cup B)}{n(S)} = \frac{6}{9} = \frac{2}{3} \quad \text{i.e. } P(\text{multiple of 3 or odd number or both}) = \frac{2}{3}$$

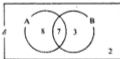
Example 4

One element is randomly selected from a universal set of 20 elements. Sets A and B are subsets of the universal set and $n(A) = 15$, $n(B) = 10$ and $n(A \cap B) = 7$. If $P(A)$ is the probability of the selected element belonging to set A , find (a) $P(A)$, (b) $P(A \cap B)$, (c) $P(A')$, (d) $P(A \cup B)$.

First draw a Venn diagram, showing the number of elements in each subset: (hint: consider $n(A \cap B)$ first)

From the Venn diagram:

- (a) $P(A) = \frac{15}{20} = \frac{3}{4}$
 (b) $P(A \cap B) = \frac{7}{20}$
 (c) $P(A') = \frac{5}{20} = \frac{1}{4}$
 (d) $P(A \cup B) = \frac{18}{20} = \frac{9}{10}$



Exercise 9A

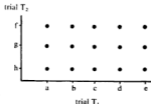
- What is the probability of obtaining a tail when a fair coin is tossed once?
- A six-sided die is thrown once. What is the probability that the result will be
 - an even number,
 - a number less than 6,
 - a number greater than 2?
- A bag contains ten coloured discs of which 4 are blue, 3 are green, 2 red and 1 yellow. Find the probability that when one disc is randomly selected from the bag it will be
 - red,
 - blue,
 - yellow,
 - not red.
- Twenty cards are numbered from 1 to 20. One card is then taken at random. What is the probability that the number on the card will be
 - a multiple of 4,
 - even,
 - greater than 15,
 - divisible by 5,
 - not a multiple of 6?

5. A letter is chosen at random from the letters a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h.
Calculate the probability that the letter chosen will be
(a) a consonant, (b) a vowel, (c) not f, g or h.
6. One girl is chosen at random, from 4 girls Anne, Bonny, Linda and Dawn. Calculate the probability that the girl chosen will be
(a) Anne, (b) either Linda or Dawn.
7. Of 12 beads, 7 are coloured green, 3 are orange and 2 are black.
Calculate the probability that when one bead is selected at random, it will
(a) be orange, (b) not be green.
8. What is the probability of drawing a court card from the 26 black cards of a pack?
9. One card is drawn from a pack of 52 cards. Find the probability that the card drawn will (a) be a club, (b) be an ace, (c) be a red card, (d) not be a spade.
10. A universal set has 24 elements and A and B are subsets of the universal set such that $n(A) = 14$, $n(B) = 9$ and $n(A \cap B) = 6$. If P(A) is the probability of selecting an element belonging to set A, calculate
(a) P(A), (b) $P(A \cap B)$, (c) $P(B^c)$, (d) $P(A \cup B)^c$.
11. One element is selected at random from a universal set of 15 elements. R and Q are subsets of the universal set and $n(R) = 6$, $n(Q) = 8$ and $n(R \cap Q) = 2$. Calculate
(a) P(Q), (b) $P(R \cup Q)$, (c) $P(R^c)$, (d) $P(R \cap Q)$.
12. A and B are subsets of the universal set and $n(A) = 25$, $n(B) = 20$, $[n(A \cup B)]^c = 20$ and there are 50 elements in the universal set. When one element is selected at random, calculate
(a) P(A), (b) $P(A \cup B)$, (c) $P(B^c)$, (d) $P(A \cap B)$.

9.2 Sum and product laws

Possibility space

Suppose that a trial T_1 has possible outcomes a, b, c, d or e. We say that the set a, b, c, d, e is the possibility space, or sample space, for the trial T_1 . Now suppose that two trials are carried out, trial T_1 possibility space {a, b, c, d, e} and trial T_2 possibility space {f, g, h}. The pairs of outcomes for the two trials can be shown as points on a possibility space diagram. Each dot represents a pair of outcomes.



Example 5

Suppose that a coin is tossed and a die is thrown. Draw a possibility space diagram and use it to find the probability of obtaining both a head on the coin and an even number on the die.

The possibility space diagram is:

There are twelve possible outcomes of which only three (circled in the diagram) satisfy the requirements.

Thus $P(\text{head and an even number}) = \frac{3}{12} = \frac{1}{4}$



Independent events

Two events are said to be independent if the outcome of one event has no bearing upon the outcome of the other. In the last example the appearance of say, a head, on the coin does not affect the result of throwing the die.

Thus the events are independent.

For two independent events A and B

$P(A \text{ and } B) = P(A) \times P(B)$ or, in set notation,

$P(A \cap B) = P(A) \times P(B)$

(Conversely, we can say that two events A and B are independent if)

$$P(A \cap B) = P(A) \times P(B)$$

Thus in example 5, $P(\text{head}) = \frac{1}{2}$ $P(\text{even number}) = \frac{2}{6} = \frac{1}{3}$

$\therefore P(\text{head and even number}) = \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{3} = \frac{1}{6}$ as required.

Example 6

A card is to be selected from a pack of cards and a die is to be thrown. Find the probability that the outcome will be (a) a spade and an even number on the die, (b) a red card and a number less than 3 on the die.

The selection of the card and the throwing of the die are independent events.

- (a) $P(\text{a spade}) = \frac{13}{52}$
 $P(\text{even number on die}) = \frac{3}{6}$ (either 2, 4 or 6)
 $P(\text{a spade and an even number}) = P(\text{a spade}) \times P(\text{an even number on die})$
 $= \frac{13}{52} \times \frac{3}{6}$
 $= \frac{1}{4}$
- (b) $P(\text{a red card}) = \frac{26}{52}$
 $P(1 \text{ or } 2 \text{ on die}) = \frac{2}{6}$
 $P(\text{a red card and a 1 or 2 on die}) = P(\text{a red card}) \times P(\text{a 1 or 2 on die})$
 $= \frac{26}{52} \times \frac{2}{6}$
 $= \frac{1}{6}$

Mutually exclusive events

As was seen on page 191 two events are said to be mutually exclusive if the occurrence of one automatically excludes the possibility of the other occurring. In tossing a coin, if the outcome is a head this excludes the possibility of obtaining a tail on that trial, so the appearance of a head and the appearance of a tail are mutually exclusive events.

Note that, if two events are mutually exclusive, the set of events A and the set of events B would be shown as disjoint sets on a Venn diagram.



Either – Or

If the probability of an event A occurring is p_1 and the probability of a second mutually exclusive event B occurring is p_2 , then the probability of either A or B occurring will be $(p_1 + p_2)$

$$\text{i.e. } P(A \text{ or } B) = P(A) + P(B)$$

or, using set notation $P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B)$ for mutually exclusive events.

Conversely, we can say that two events are mutually exclusive

$$\text{if } P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B).$$

Example 7

One card is selected from a pack of cards. What is the probability that the card selected will be either a diamond or a black ace?

Number of cards in pack = 52

$$P(\text{a diamond}) = \frac{13}{52}$$

$$P(\text{a black ace}) = \frac{2}{52}$$

But these are mutually exclusive events since the occurrence of one excludes the other (i.e. the card selected cannot be a black ace and a diamond);

thus $P(\text{a diamond or a black ace}) = P(\text{a diamond}) + P(\text{a black ace})$

$$= \frac{13}{52} + \frac{2}{52} = \frac{15}{52}$$

Events that are not mutually exclusive

Suppose we want the probability of one card selected from a pack being either a heart or a queen. These events are not mutually exclusive as the card could be both a heart and a queen, i.e. it could be the queen of hearts. We consider the possibility-space diagram:

	A	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	J	Q	K
♠	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	ⓧ	x
♠	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	ⓧ	x
♥	ⓧ	ⓧ	ⓧ	ⓧ	ⓧ	ⓧ	ⓧ	ⓧ	ⓧ	ⓧ	ⓧ	ⓧ	ⓧ
♠	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	ⓧ	x

Thus $P(\heartsuit) = \frac{13}{52} = \frac{1}{4}$, $P(Q) = \frac{4}{52} = \frac{1}{13}$, and counting the circled entries in the diagram $P(\heartsuit \text{ or } Q) = \frac{17}{52} = \frac{1}{3}$.

Therefore $P(\heartsuit \text{ or } Q) \neq P(\heartsuit) + P(Q)$ because, as we can see from the diagram, the right-hand side of such a calculation would include the queen of hearts twice.

In general, for two events A and B

$$P(A \text{ or } B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \text{ and } B)$$

or using set notation

$$P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \cap B)$$

The reader should notice that for mutually exclusive events $P(A \cap B) = 0$ and the above rule reduces to $P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B)$ as required.

Example 8

A coin is tossed and a die is thrown. Find the probability that the outcome will be a head or a number greater than 4, or both.

These events are clearly not mutually exclusive.

Also, $P(\text{head}) = \frac{1}{2}$ and $P(>4) = \frac{1}{3}$

thus, $P(\text{head and a number greater than } 4) = P(\text{head}) \times P(\text{number } > 4)$
 $= \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{3} = \frac{1}{6}$

Using the result $P(A \text{ or } B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \text{ and } B)$

thus, $P(\text{Head or number } > 4) = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} - \frac{1}{6}$
 $= \frac{2}{3}$

Alternatively, we could say

$P(\text{neither a head nor a number } > 4) = P(\text{tail}) \times P(\text{number } \leq 4)$
 $= \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{2}{3} = \frac{1}{3}$

$\therefore P(\text{head or number } > 4) = 1 - \frac{1}{3}$
 $= \frac{2}{3}$

Example 9

If A and B are two events such that $P(A) = \frac{1}{2}$, $P(B) = \frac{1}{3}$ and $P(A \cap B) = \frac{1}{6}$ find (a) $P(A \cup B)$, (b) $P[(A \cup B)^c]$.

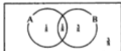
METHOD 1 (by calculation)

(a) $P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \cap B)$
 $= \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} - \frac{1}{6}$
 $= \frac{2}{3}$

(b) $P[(A \cup B)^c] = 1 - P(A \cup B)$
 $= 1 - \frac{2}{3}$
 $= \frac{1}{3}$

METHOD 2 (by Venn diagram)

Show the probabilities on a Venn diagram, (fill in $P(A \cap B)$ first):



(a) $P(A \cup B) = \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{6} = \frac{2}{3}$

(b) $P[(A \cup B)^c] = \frac{1}{3}$

Successive trials

Suppose that A and B are outcomes of a particular trial. If the trial is repeated and the outcome of the first trial does not affect the outcome of the second trial (i.e. the outcomes of trial 2 are independent of the outcomes of trial 1) then

$P(\text{A on 1st trial followed by B on 2nd trial}) = P(A) \times P(B)$
 i.e. $P(A, B) = P(A) \times P(B)$

However, in some cases the outcome of trial 1 will affect the outcome of trial 2, i.e. the outcomes are *dependent* or *conditional events*. For example, if the successive trials involve the selection of one object from a group of objects the card, coloured disc or number etc. that is drawn on the first trial may, or may not, be replaced before the second trial takes place. If it is not

replaced, then the probabilities of the various outcomes of the second trial will clearly be different from those of the first trial. It is usual therefore to refer to *replacement* or *non-replacement* problems.

Tree diagrams

A tree diagram can be used to show the probabilities of certain outcomes occurring when two or more trials take place in succession. The outcome is written at the end of the branch and the fraction on the branch gives the probability of the outcome occurring.

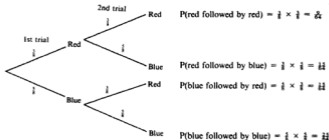
For each trial the number of branches is equal to the number of possible outcomes of that trial. In the diagram there are two possible outcomes, A and B, of each trial.



Example 10

A bag contains 8 marbles of which 3 are red and 5 are blue. One marble is drawn at random, its colour noted and the marble replaced in the bag. A marble is again drawn from the bag and its colour noted. Find the probability that the marbles drawn will be (a) red followed by blue, (b) red and blue in any order, (c) of the same colour.

Draw a tree diagram showing the probabilities of each outcome of the two trials.



(a) $P(\text{red followed by blue}) = \frac{15}{64}$

(b) $P(\text{red and blue in any order}) = \frac{15}{64} + \frac{15}{64} = \frac{15}{32}$

(c) $P(\text{both of same colour}) = \frac{9}{64} + \frac{25}{64} = \frac{17}{32}$

Alternatively, these results can be calculated without the use of a tree diagram. The two trials are independent events, and for each trial $P(\text{red}) = \frac{2}{7}$ and $P(\text{blue}) = \frac{5}{7}$.

- (a) $P(\text{red followed by blue}) = P(\text{red}) \times P(\text{blue})$
 $= \frac{2}{7} \times \frac{5}{7} = \frac{10}{49}$
- (b) $P(\text{red and blue in any order}) = P(\text{red then blue}) + P(\text{blue then red})$
 $= P(\text{red}) \times P(\text{blue}) + P(\text{blue}) \times P(\text{red})$
 $= \frac{2}{7} \times \frac{5}{7} + \frac{5}{7} \times \frac{2}{7}$
 $= \frac{20}{49}$
- (c) $P(\text{both of same colour}) = P(\text{red then red}) + P(\text{blue then blue})$
 $= P(\text{red}) \times P(\text{red}) + P(\text{blue}) \times P(\text{blue})$
 $= \frac{2}{7} \times \frac{2}{7} + \frac{5}{7} \times \frac{5}{7}$
 $= \frac{33}{49}$

Example 11

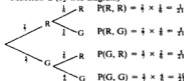
A bag contains 7 discs, 2 of which are red and 5 are green. Two discs are removed at random and their colours noted. The first disc is not replaced before the second is selected. Find the probability that the discs will be (a) both red, (b) of different colours, (c) the same colour.

METHOD 1 (by calculation)

After the first disc is removed only 6 discs remain in the bag and the number of each colour will depend upon the result of the first trial.

- (a) 1st trial $P(R) = \frac{2}{7}$
 2nd trial $P(R) = \frac{1}{6}$
 thus $P(R, R) = \frac{2}{7} \times \frac{1}{6} = \frac{1}{21}$
- (b) $P(\text{different}) = P(G, R) + P(R, G)$
 $= \frac{2}{7} \times \frac{5}{6} + \frac{5}{7} \times \frac{2}{6}$
 $= \frac{10}{21}$
- (c) $P(\text{same colour}) = 1 - P(\text{different})$
 $= \frac{11}{21}$

METHOD 2 (by tree diagram)



- (a) $P(R, R) = \frac{1}{21}$
- (b) $P(\text{different}) = P(R, G) + P(G, R)$
 $= \frac{5}{21} + \frac{5}{21}$
 $= \frac{10}{21}$
- (c) $P(\text{same}) = P(R, R) + P(G, G)$
 $= \frac{1}{21} + \frac{10}{21}$
 $= \frac{11}{21}$

Example 11 shows the use of the general rule that, for two dependent events, A and B,

$$P(A \text{ and } B) = P(A) \times P(B|A) \text{ or } P(A \cap B) = P(A) \times P(B|A)$$

where $P(B|A)$ represents the probability of event B occurring given that event A has occurred.

Summary

The sum and product laws of probability are:

- i $P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \cap B)$ which, for mutually exclusive events reduces to
 $P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B)$.
- ii $P(A \cap B) = P(A) \times P(B)$ for independent events
 and $P(A \cap B) = P(A) \times P(B|A)$ for dependent (or conditional) events.

Exercise 9B

- If $P(A) = \frac{1}{2}$ and $P(B) = \frac{1}{3}$, find
 - $P(A \cup B)$ if A and B are mutually exclusive events,
 - $P(A \cap B)$ if A and B are independent events.
- Given that $P(A) = \frac{1}{2}$, $P(B) = \frac{1}{3}$, $P(A \cap B) = \frac{1}{6}$ and $P(A \cup B) = \frac{2}{3}$ state whether each of the following are true or false:
 - A and B are mutually exclusive events,
 - A and B are independent events.
- If $P(A) = \frac{1}{2}$, $P(B) = \frac{1}{3}$ and $P(C) = \frac{1}{4}$ find
 - $P(A \cap B)$, if A and B are independent events,
 - $P(A \cup C)$, if A and C are mutually exclusive events.
- If A and B are independent events such that $P(A) = \frac{1}{2}$ and $P(B) = \frac{1}{3}$, find (a) $P(A \cap B)$, (b) $P(A \cup B)$.
- If A and B are independent events such that $P(A) = \frac{1}{2}$ and $P(A \cap B) = \frac{1}{6}$, find (a) $P(B)$, (b) $P(A \cup B)$.
- Events A and B are such that $P(A) = \frac{1}{2}$, $P(B) = \frac{1}{3}$ and $P(A \cap B) = \frac{1}{6}$. State whether A and B are (a) mutually exclusive, (b) independent.
- Events A and B are such that $P(A) = \frac{1}{2}$, $P(B) = \frac{1}{3}$ and $P[(A \cup B)^c] = \frac{1}{6}$. State whether A and B are (a) mutually exclusive, (b) independent.
- Find the probability of drawing either a black ace or a red court card in one draw from a pack of cards.
- The numbers 1, 2, 4, 6, 10, 12, 13, 16, 17 and 20 are written on ten pieces of card and one is drawn at random. Find the probability that the number on the card drawn will be either an odd number or a multiple of 3.
- Find the probability that when a die is thrown and a card is drawn from a pack, the outcome will be a black card and an odd number on the die.
- A card is drawn from a pack and then replaced. A second card is then drawn. Find the probability that both cards will be diamonds.
- A coin is tossed twice. Find the probability that the outcome of the two trials will be (a) two heads, (b) two tails.
- A die is thrown and a card is drawn from a pack. Find the probability that the outcome is an even number on the die and a black court card.
- A card is drawn from a pack and a die is thrown. Find the probability that the card is not a club and the number on the die is greater than 4.
- To start a game a player has to throw a 6 with a die. Find the probability that a player starts at
 - his first throw, (b) his second throw, (c) either his first or his second throw.
- Two dice are thrown and the scores added together. Illustrate the